This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

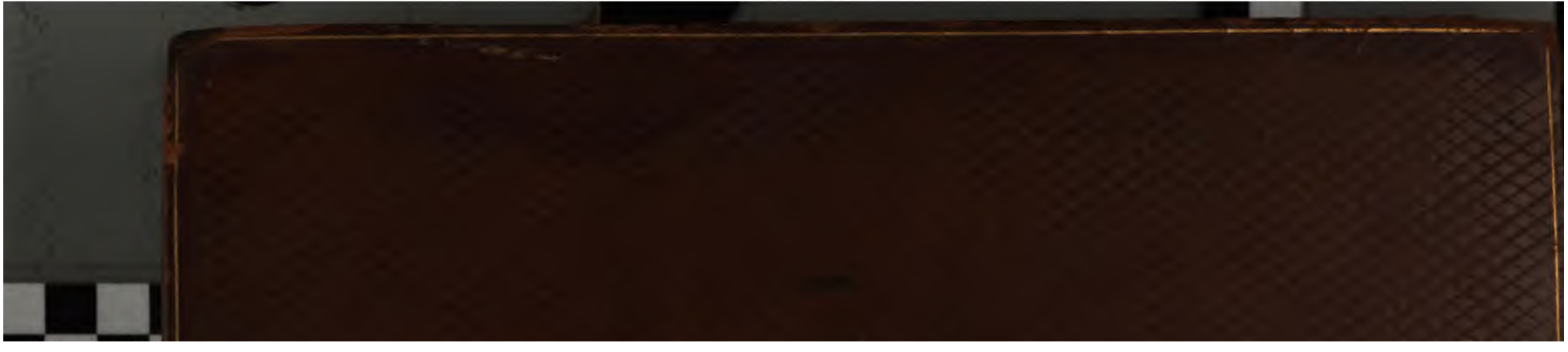
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

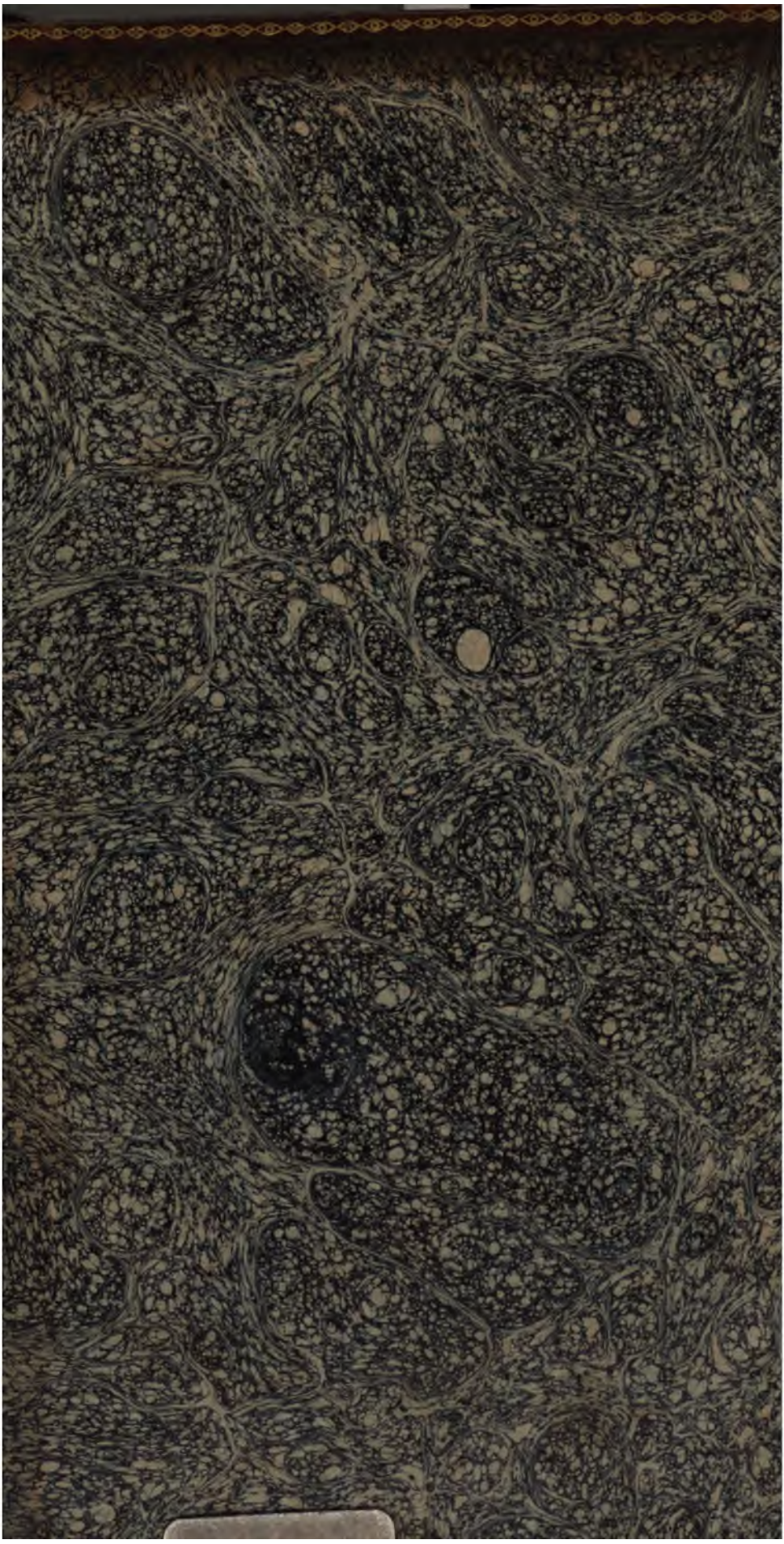
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`





600019069V

M. adds. 51 d. 43
6

THE

PLAYS

OF

WILLIAM SHAKSPEARE.

S. and R. Robinson, Printers,
[illegible]

Fuseli del. *T. Webb Sculp.*

Mrs Quickly. *So a bade me lay more Clothes on his feet: I put my hand into the bed & felt them, and they were as cold as any stone.*

Publish'd by C. & E. Rivington London Dec. 31. 1803.

THE

PLAYS

OF

WILLIAM SHAKSPEARE,

Accurately printed from the Text of the corrected Copy left by the late

GEORGE STEEVENS, Esq.

WITH

A SERIES OF ENGRAVINGS,

FROM ORIGINAL DESIGNS OF

HENRY FUSELI, Esq. R.A. Professor of Painting:

AND A SELECTION

OF EXPLANATORY AND HISTORICAL NOTES,

From the most eminent Commentators;

A History of the Stage, a Life of Shakspeare, &c.

BY ALEXANDER CHALMERS, A. M.

IN TEN VOLUMES.

VOLUME VI.

CONTAINING

KING HENRY V.
KING HENRY VI. PART I.
KING HENRY VI. PART II.
KING HENRY VI. PART III.

LONDON:

Printed for F. C. and J. Rivington; J. Johnson; R. Baldwin; H. L. Gardner; W. J. and J. Richardson; J. Nichols and Son; T. Payne; R. Faulder; G. and J. Robinson; W. Lowndes; G. Wilkie; Scatcherd and Letterman; T. Egerton; J. Walker; W. Clarke and Son; J. Barker and Son; D. Ogilvy and Son; Cuthell and Martin; R. Lea; P. Macqueen; Lackington, Allen and Co.; T. Kay; J. Deighton; J. White; W. Miller; Vernor and Hood; D. Walker; C. Law; B. Crosby and Co.; R. Pheney; Longman, Hurst, Rees, and Orme; Cadell and Davies; J. Harding; R. H. Evans; S. Bagster; J. Mawman; Blacks and Parry; J. Badcock; J. Asperne; and T. Ostell.

1805.

KING HENRY V.*

* KING HENRY V.] This play was writ (as appears from a passage in the chorus to the fifth Act) at the time of the Earl of Essex's commanding the forces in Ireland in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, and not till after *Henry the Sixth* had been played, as may be seen by the conclusion of this play. POPE.

The transactions comprised in this historical play commence about the latter end of the first, and terminate in the eighth year of this king's reign: when he married Katharine princess of France, and closed up the differences betwixt England and that crown. THEOBALD.

This play, in the quarto edition, 1608, is styled *The Chronicle History of Henry*, &c. which seems to have been the title anciently appropriated to all Shakspeare's historical dramas. So, in *The Antipodes*, a comedy, by R. Brome, 1638:

"These lads can act the emperors' lives all over,
"And Shakspeare's *Chronicled Histories* to boot."

The players likewise, in the folio edition, 1623, rank these pieces under the title of *Histories*.

It is evident that a play on this subject had been performed before the year 1592. Nash, in *Pierce Penniless his Supplication to the Devil*, dated 1592, says: "—what a glorious thing it is to have *Henry the Fift* represented on the stage, leading the French king prisoner, and forcing both him and the Dolphin to sweare fealtie."

Perhaps this is the same play as was thus entered in the books of the Stationers' company: "Tho. Strode] May 2, 1594. A booke intituled *The famous Victories of Henry the Fift, containing the honorable Battle of Agincourt.*" There are two more entries of a play of *Henry V.* viz. between 1596 and 1615, and one August 14th, 1600. I have two copies of it in my possession; one without date, (which seems much the elder of the two,) and another, (apparently printed from it,) dated 1617, though printed by Bernard Alsop, (who was printer of the other edition,) and sold by the same person, and at the same place. Alsop appears to have been a printer before the year 1600, and was afterwards one of the twenty appointed by decree of the Star-chamber to print for this kingdom. I believe, however, this piece to have been prior to that of Shakspeare for several reasons. First, because it is highly probable that it is the very "displeasing play" alluded to in the epilogue to *The Second Part of King Henry IV.—for Oldcastle died a martyr.* Oldcastle is the Falstaff of the piece, which is despicable, and full of ribaldry and impiety from the first scene to the last —Secondly, because Shakspeare seems to have taken not a few hints from it; for it comprehends, in some measure, the story of the two Parts of *Henry IV.* as well as of *Henry V:* and no ignorance, I think, could debase the gold of Shakspeare into such dross; though no chemistry but that of Shakspeare could exalt

The piece to which Nash alludes is the old anonymous play of *King Henry V.* which had been exhibited before the year 1589. Tarlton, the comedian, who performed in it both the parts of the Chief Justice and the Clown, having died in that year. It was entered on the Stationers' books in 1594, and, I believe, printed in that year, though I have not met with a copy of that date. An edition of it, printed in 1598, was in the valuable collection of Dr. Wright.

The play before us appears to have been written in the middle of the year 1599.

The old *King Henry V.* may be found among *Six old Plays on which Shakspeare founded,* &c. printed by S. Leacroft, 1778.

MALONE.

PERSONS REPRESENTED.

King Henry the Fifth.
Duke of Gloster. Brothers to the King.
Duke of Bedford.
Duke of Exeter. Uncle to the King.
Duke of York. Cousin to the King.
Earls of Salisbury, Westmoreland, and Warwick.
Archbishop of Canterbury.
Bishop of Ely.
Earl of Cambridge.
Lord Scroop. Conspirators against the King.
Sir Thomas Grey.
Sir Thomas Erpingham. Gower. Fluellen, Macmorris. Jamy. Officers in King Henry's Army.
Bates. Court. Williams. Soldiers in the same.
Nym. Bardolph. Pistol. Formerly Servants to Falstaff, now Soldiers in the same.
Boy. Servant to them. A Herald. Chorus.

Charles the Sixth, King of France.
Lewis the Dauphin.
Dukes of Burgundy, Orleans, and Bourbon.
The Constable of France.
Rambures and Grandpree. French Lords.
Governor of Harfleur. Montjoy, a French Herald.
Ambassadors to the King of England.

Isabel, Queen of France.
Katharine, Daughter of Charles and Isabel.
Alice, a Lady attending on the Princess Katharine.
Quickly, Pistol's Wife, an Hostess.

Lords, Ladies, Officers, French and English Soldiers, Messengers, and Attendants.

The SCENE, at the Beginning of the Play, lies in England; *but afterwards wholly in* France.

Enter CHORUS.

O, for a muse of fire, that would ascend
The brightest heaven of invention![1]
A kingdom for a stage, princes to act,
And monarchs to behold[2] the swelling scene!
Then should the warlike Harry, like himself,
Assume the port of Mars; and, at his heels,
Leash'd in like hounds, should famine, sword, and fire,
Crouch for employment. But pardon, gentles all,
The flat unraised spirit, that hath dar'd,
On this unworthy scaffold, to bring forth
So great an object: Can this cockpit hold
The vasty fields of France? or may we cram
Within this wooden O,[3] the very casques,[4]
That did affright the air at Agincourt?
O, pardon! since a crooked figure may
Attest, in little place, a million;
And let us, ciphers to this great accompt,
On your imaginary forces[5] work:
Suppose, within the girdle of these walls

[1] *O, for a muse of fire,* &c.] This goes, says Warburton, upon the notion of the Peripatetic system, which imagines several heavens one above another; the last and highest of which was one of fire. It alludes likewise to the aspiring nature of fire, which, by its levity, at the separation of the chaos, took the highest seat of all the elements. JOHNSON.

[2] —— *princes to act,*
And monarchs to behold —] Shakspeare does not seem to set distance enough between the performers and spectators.

[3] *Within this wooden* O,] An allusion to the theatre where this history was exhibited, being, from its *circular* form, called *The Globe.*

[4] —— *the very* casques,] The helmets.

[5] —— *imaginary* forces —] *Imaginary* for *imaginative,* or your powers of fancy. Active and passive words are by this author frequently confounded. JOHNSON.

Are now confin'd two mighty monarchies,
Whose high upreared and abutting fronts
The perilous, narrow ocean parts asunder.
Piece out our imperfections with your thoughts;
Into a thousand parts divide one man,
And make imaginary puissance:[6]
Think, when we talk of horses, that you see them
Printing their proud hoofs i' the receiving earth:
For 'tis your thoughts that now must deck our kings,
Carry them here and there; jumping o'er times;
Turning the accomplishment of many years
Into an hour-glass; For the which supply,
Admit me chorus to this history;
Who, prologue-like, your humble patience pray,
Gently to hear, kindly to judge, our play.

[6] *And make imaginary puissance:*] This shows that Shakspeare was fully sensible of the absurdity of showing battles on the theatre, which, indeed, is never done, but tragedy becomes farce. Nothing can be represented to the eye, but by something like it, and *within a wooden O* nothing very like a battle can be exhibited.

KING HENRY V.

ACT I.

SCENE I. London. *An Ante-chamber in the King's Palace.*

Enter the Archbishop of Canterbury,[7] *and Bishop of* Ely.[8]

Cant. My lord, I'll tell you,—that self bill is urg'd,
Which, in the eleventh year o' the last king's reign
Was like, and had indeed against us pass'd,
But that the scambling and unquiet time
Did push it out of further question.
Ely. But how, my lord, shall we resist it now?
Cant. It must be thought on. If it pass against us,
We lose the better half of our possession:
For all the temporal lands, which men devout
By testament have given to the church,
Would they strip from us; being valued thus,—
As much as would maintain, to the king's honour,
Full fifteen earls, and fifteen hundred knights;
Six thousand and two hundred good esquires;
And, to relief of lazars, and weak age,
Of indigent faint souls, past corporal toil,

[7] —— *of* Canterbury,] Henry Chicheley, a Carthusian monk, recently promoted to the see of Canterbury.
[8] —— *Ely.*] John Fordham, consecrated 1388; died 1426.

A hundred alms-houses, right well supplied;
And to the coffers of the king beside,
A thousand pounds by the year: Thus runs the bill.
Ely. This would drink deep.
Cant. 'Twould drink the cup and all.
Ely. But what prevention?
Cant. The king is full of grace, and fair regard.
Ely. And a true lover of the holy church.
Cant. The courses of his youth promis'd it not.
The breath no sooner left his father's body,
But that his wildness, mortified in him,
Seem'd to die too: yea, at that very moment,
Consideration like an angel came,
And whipp'd the offending Adam out of him;
Leaving his body as a paradise,
To envelop and contain celestial spirits.
Never was such a sudden scholar made:
Never came reformation in a flood,[9]
With such a heady current, scouring faults;
Nor never Hydra-headed wilfulness
So soon did lose his seat, and all at once,
As in this king.
Ely. We are blessed in the change.
Cant. Hear him but reason in divinity,
And, all-admiring, with an inward wish
You would desire, the king were made a prelate:
Hear him debate of commonwealth affairs,
You would say,—it hath been all-in-all his study:
List his discourse of war, and you shall hear
A fearful battle render'd you in musick:
Turn him to any cause of policy,
The Gordian knot of it he will unloose,
Familiar as his garter; that, when he speaks,

[9] *Never came reformation in a flood,*] Alluding to the method by which Hercules cleansed the famous stables, when he turned a river through them. Hercules still is in our author's head, when he mentions the Hydra. JOHNSON.

The air, a charter'd libertine, is still,[1]
And the mute wonder lurketh in men's ears,
To steal his sweet and honeyed sentences;
So that the art and practick part of life[2]
Must be the mistress to this theorick:
Which is a wonder, how his grace should glean it,
Since his addiction was to courses vain:
His companies[3] unletter'd, rude, and shallow;
His hours fill'd up with riots, banquets, sports;
And never noted in him any study,
Any retirement, any sequestration
From open haunts and popularity.[4]

Ely. The strawberry grows underneath the nettle;
And wholesome berries thrive and ripen best,
Neighbour'd by fruit of baser quality:
And so the prince obscur'd his contemplation
Under the veil of wildness; which, no doubt,
Grew like the summer grass, fastest by night,
Unseen, yet crescive in his faculty.[5]

Cant. It must be so: for miracles are ceas'd;
And therefore we must needs admit the means,
How things are perfected.

Ely. But, my good lord,
How now for mitigation of this bill
Urg'd by the commons? Doth his majesty

[1] *The air,* &c.] This line is exquisitely beautiful.

[2] *So that the* art *and* practick *part of life* —] He discourses with so much skill on all subjects, that *the art and practice of life must be the mistress or teacher of his theorick;* that is, *that his theory must have been taught by art and practice;* which, *says he,* is strange, since he could see little of the true art or practice among his loose companions, nor ever retired to digest his practice into theory. *Art* is used by the author for *practice,* as distinguished from *science* or *theory.* JOHNSON.

[3] —— *companies* —] is here used for *companions.* It is used by other authors of Shakspeare's age in the same sense.

[4] —— *popularity.*] i. e. plebeian intercourse; an unusual sense of the word.

[5] —— *crescive in his faculty.*] Increasing in its proper power.

Incline to it, or no?
Cant. He seems indifferent;
Or, rather, swaying more upon our part,
Than cherishing the exhibiters against us:
For I have made an offer to his majesty,—
Upon our spiritual convocation;
And in regard of causes now in hand,
Which I have open'd to his grace at large,
As touching France,—to give a greater sum
Than ever at one time the clergy yet
Did to his predecessors part withal.
Ely. How did this offer seem receiv'd, my lord?
Cant. With good acceptance of his majesty;
Save, that there was not time enough to hear
(As, I perceiv'd, his grace would fain have done,)
The severals, and unhidden passages,[6]
Of his true titles to some certain dukedoms;
And, generally, to the crown and seat of France,
Deriv'd from Edward, his great grandfather.
Ely. What was the impediment that broke this off?
Cant. The French ambassador, upon that instant,
Crav'd audience: and the hour, I think, is come,
To give him hearing: Is it four o'clock?
Ely. It is.
Cant. Then go we in, to know his embassy;
Which I could, with a ready guess, declare,
Before the Frenchman speak a word of it.
Ely. I'll wait upon you; and I long to hear it.
[*Exeunt.*

[6] *The* severals, *and* unhidden passages,] This line I suspect of corruption, though it may be fairly enough explained: the *passages* of his *titles* are the *lines* of *succession* by which his claims descend. *Unhidden* is *open, clear.* JOHNSON.

SCENE II.

The same. A Room of State in the same.

Enter King HENRY, GLOSTER, BEDFORD, EXETER, WARWICK, WESTMORELAND, *and Attendants.*

K. Hen. Where is my gracious lord of Canterbury?
Exe. Not here in presence.
K. Hen. Send for him, good uncle.
West. Shall we call in the ambassador, my liege?
K. Hen. Not yet, my cousin; we would be resolv'd,
Before we hear him, of some things of weight,
That task[7] our thoughts concerning us and France.

Enter the Archbishop of Canterbury, *and Bishop of* Ely.

Cant. God, and his angels, guard your sacred throne,
And make you long become it!
K. Hen. Sure, we thank you,
My learned lord, we pray you to proceed;
And justly and religiously unfold,
Why the law Salique, that they have in France,
Or should, or should not, bar us in our claim.
And God forbid, my dear and faithful lord,
That you should fashion, wrest, or bow your reading,
Or nicely charge your understanding soul[8]

[7] —— *task* —] Keep busied with scruples and laborious disquisitions.

[8] *Or nicely charge your understanding soul* —] Take heed, lest by nice and subtle sophistry you burthen your knowing soul, or

With opening titles miscreate,[9] whose right
Suits not in native colours with the truth;
For God doth know, how many, now in health,
Shall drop their blood in approbation[1]
Of what your reverence shall incite us to:
Therefore take heed how you impawn our person,
How you awake the sleeping sword of war;
We charge you in the name of God, take heed:
For never two such kingdoms did contend,
Without much fall of blood; whose guiltless drops
Are every one a woe, a sore complaint,
'Gainst him, whose wrongs give edge unto the swords
That make such waste in brief mortality.
Under this conjuration, speak, my lord:
And we will hear, note, and believe in heart,
That what you speak is in your conscience wash'd
As pure as sin with baptism.

Cant. Then hear me, gracious sovereign,—and you peers,
That owe your lives, your faith, and services,
To this imperial throne;—There is no bar
To make against your highness' claim to France,
But this, which they produce from Pharamond,—
In terram Salicam mulieres nè succedant,
No woman shall succeed in Salique land:
Which Salique land the French unjustly gloze,[2]
To be the realm of France, and Pharamond
The founder of this law and female bar.
Yet their own authors faithfully affirm,

knowingly burthen your soul, with the guilt of advancing a false title, or of maintaining, by specious fallacies, a claim which, if shown in its native and true colours, would appear to be false.

[9] —— *miscreate,*] Ill-begotten, illegitimate, spurious.

[1] —— *in* approbation —] i. e. in proving and supporting that title which shall be now set up.

[2] —— *gloze,*] Expound, explain, and sometimes comment upon.

That the land Salique lies in Germany,
Between the floods of Sala and of Elbe:
Where Charles the great, having subdued the Saxons,
There left behind and settled certain French;
Who, holding in disdain the German women,
For some dishonest manners of their life,
Establish'd there this law,—to wit, no female
Should be inheritrix in Salique land;
Which Salique, as I said, 'twixt Elbe and Sala,
Is at this day in Germany call'd—Meisen.
Thus doth it well appear, the Salique law
Was not devised for the realm of France:
Nor did the French possess the Salique land
Until four hundred one and twenty years
After defunction of king Pharamond,
Idly suppos'd the founder of this law;
Who died within the year of our redemption
Four hundred twenty-six; and Charles the great
Subdued the Saxons, and did seat the French
Beyond the river Sala, in the year
Eight hundred five. Besides, their writers say,
King Pepin, which deposed Childerick,
Did, as heir general, being descended
Of Blithild, which was daughter to king Clothair,
Make claim and title to the crown of France.
Hugh Capet also,—that usurp'd the crown
Of Charles the duke of Lorain, sole heir male
Of the true line and stock of Charles the great,—
To fine his title with some show of truth,[3]
(Though, in pure truth, it was corrupt and naught,)
Convey'd himself[4] as heir to the lady Lingare,
Daughter to Charlemain, who was the son
To Lewis the emperor, and Lewis the son

[3] *To* fine *his title,* &c.] To *fine* his title, is to make it *showy* or *specious* by some appearance of justice. STEEVENS.

[4] Convey'd *himself*—] Derived his title.

Of Charles the great. Also king Lewis the tenth,
Who was sole heir to the usurper Capet,
Could not keep quiet in his conscience,
Wearing the crown of France, till satisfied
That fair queen Isabel, his grandmother,
Was lineal of the lady Ermengare,
Daughter to Charles the foresaid duke of Lorain:
By the which marriage, the line of Charles the great
Was re-united to the crown of France.
So that, as clear as is the summer's sun,
King Pepin's title, and Hugh Capet's claim,
King Lewis his satisfaction, all appear
To hold in right and title of the female:
So do the kings of France unto this day;
Howbeit they would hold up this Salique law,
To bar your highness claiming from the female;
And rather choose to hide them in a net,
Than amply to imbare their crooked titles[5]
Usurp'd from you and your progenitors.

K. Hen. May I, with right and conscience, make this claim?

Cant. The sin upon my head, dread sovereign!
For in the book of Numbers is it writ,—
When the son dies, let the inheritance
Descend unto the daughter. Gracious lord,
Stand for your own; unwind your bloody flag;
Look back unto your mighty ancestors:
Go, my dread lord, to your great grandsire's tomb,
From whom you claim; invoke his warlike spirit,
And your great uncle's, Edward the black prince;
Who on the French ground play'd a tragedy,
Making defeat on the full power of France;
Whiles his most mighty father on a hill

[5] —— imbare *their crooked titles*—] i. e. to lay open, to display to view.

Stood smiling, to behold his lion's whelp
Forage in blood of French nobility.
O noble English, that could entertain
With half their forces the full pride of France;
And let another half stand laughing by,
All out of work, and cold for action!

Ely. Awake remembrance of these valiant dead,
And with your puissant arm renew their feats:
You are their heir, you sit upon their throne;
The blood and courage, that renowned them,
Runs in your veins; and my thrice-puissant liege
Is in the very May-morn of his youth,
Ripe for exploits and mighty enterprizes.

Exe. Your brother kings and monarchs of the earth
Do all expect that you should rouse yourself,
As did the former lions of your blood.

West. They know, your grace hath cause, and means, and might;
So hath your highness; never king of England
Had nobles richer, and more loyal subjects;
Whose hearts have left their bodies here in England,
And lie pavilion'd in the fields of France.

Cant. O, let their bodies follow, my dear liege,
With blood, and sword, and fire, to win your right:
In aid whereof, we of the spiritualty
Will raise your highness such a mighty sum,
As never did the clergy at one time
Bring in to any of your ancestors.

K. Hen. We must not only arm to invade the French;
But lay down our proportions to defend
Against the Scot, who will make road upon us
With all advantages.

Cant. They of those marches,[6] gracious sovereign,

[6] *They of those* marches,] The *marches* are the borders, the limits, the confines. Hence the *Lords Marchers*, i. e. the lords presidents of the *marches*, &c.

Shall be a wall sufficient to defend
Our inland from the pilfering borderers.
K. Hen. We do not mean the coursing snatchers only,
But fear the main intendment[7] of the Scot,
Who hath been still a giddy neighbour to us;
For you shall read, that my great grandfather
Never went with his forces into France,
But that the Scot on his unfurnish'd kingdom
Came pouring, like the tide into a breach,
With ample and brim fulness of his force;
Galling the gleaned land with hot essays;
Girding with grievous siege, castles and towns;
That England, being empty of defence,
Hath shook, and trembled at the ill neighbourhood.
Cant. She hath been then more fear'd[8] than harm'd, my liege:
For hear her but exampled by herself,—
When all her chivalry hath been in France,
And she a mourning widow of her nobles,
She hath herself not only well defended,
But taken, and impounded as a stray,
The king of Scots; whom she did send to France,
To fill king Edward's fame with prisoner kings;
And make your chronicle as rich with praise,
As is the ooze and bottom of the sea
With sunken wreck and sumless treasuries.
West. But there's a saying, very old and true,—
If that you will France win,
Then with Scotland first begin:
For once the eagle England being in prey,
To her unguarded nest the weasel Scot

[7] —— *the main* intendment—] *Intendment* is here perhaps used for *intention*, which, in our author's time, signified *extreme exertion*. The *main intendment* may, however, mean, the *general disposition*.

[8] —— *fear'd* —] i. e. frightened.

Comes sneaking, and so sucks her princely eggs;
Playing the mouse, in absence of the cat,
To spoil and havock more than she can eat.

Exe. It follows then, the cat must stay at home:
Yet that is but a curs'd necessity;
Since we have locks to safeguard necessaries,
And pretty traps to catch the petty thieves.
While that the armed hand doth fight abroad,
The advised head defends itself at home:
For government, though high, and low, and lower,
Put into parts, doth keep in one concent;[9]
Congruing in a full and natural close,
Like musick.

Cant. True: therefore doth heaven divide
The state of man in divers functions,
Setting endeavour in continual motion;
To which is fixed, as an aim or butt,
Obedience:[1] for so work the honey bees;
Creatures, that, by a rule in nature, teach
The act of order to a peopled kingdom.
They have a king, and officers of sorts:[2]
Where some, like magistrates, correct at home;
Others, like merchants, venture trade abroad;
Others, like soldiers, armed in their stings,

[9] —— *in one* concent;] I learn from Dr. Burney, that *consent* is connected harmony, in general, and not confined to any specific consonance. Thus, (says the same elegant and well-informed writer,) *concentio* and *concentus* are both used by Cicero for the union of voices or instruments in what we should now call a chorus, or concert. STEEVENS.

[1] *Setting endeavour in continual motion;*
To which is fixed, as an aim or butt,
Obedience:] Neither the sense nor the construction of this passage is very obvious. The construction is, *endeavour,—as an aim or butt to which endeavour, obedience is fixed.* The sense is, that all endeavour is to terminate in obedience, to be subordinate to the publick good and general design of government.

[2] —— *and officers of* sorts:] Officers of *sorts* means officers of different degrees.

Make boot upon the summer's velvet buds;
Which pillage they with merry march bring home
To the tent-royal of their emperor:
Who, busied in his majesty, surveys
The singing masons building roofs of gold;
The civil[3] citizens kneading up the honey;
The poor mechanick porters crouding in
Their heavy burdens at his narrow gate;
The sad-ey'd justice, with his surly hum,
Delivering o'er to éxecutors[4] pale
The lazy yawning drone. I this infer,—
That many things, having full reference
To one concent, may work contrariously;
As many arrows, loosed several ways,
Fly to one mark;
As many several ways meet in one town;
As many fresh streams run in one self sea;
As many lines close in the dial's center;
So may a thousand actions, once afoot,
End in one purpose, and be all well borne
Without defeat. Therefore to France, my liege.
Divide your happy England into four;
Whereof take you one quarter into France,
And you withal shall make all Gallia shake.
If we, with thrice that power left at home,
Cannot defend our own door from the dog,
Let us be worried; and our nation lose
The name of hardiness, and policy.

K. Hen. Call in the messengers sent from the Dauphin.

[*Exit an* Attendant. *The* King *ascends his Throne.*

Now are we well resolv'd: and,—by God's help;
And yours, the noble sinews of our power,—
France being ours, we'll bend it to our awe,

[3] ——*civil*—] i. e. sober, grave.
[4] ——*to* éxecutors—] *Executors* is here used for *executioners*.

Or break it all to pieces: Or there we'll sit,
Ruling, in large and ample empery,[5]
O'er France, and all her almost kingly dukedoms;
Or lay these bones in an unworthy urn,
Tombless, with no remembrance over them:
Either our history shall, with full mouth,
Speak freely of our acts; or else our grave,
Like Turkish mute, shall have a tongueless mouth,
Not worship'd with a waxen epitaph.

Enter Ambassadors *of* France.

Now are we well prepar'd to know the pleasure
Of our fair cousin Dauphin; for, we hear,
Your greeting is from him, not from the king.

Amb. May it please your majesty, to give us leave
Freely to render what we have in charge;
Or shall we sparingly show you far off
The Dauphin's meaning, and our embassy?

K. Hen. We are no tyrant, but a Christian king;
Unto whose grace our passion is as subject,
As are our wretches fetter'd in our prisons:
Therefore, with frank and with uncurbed plainness
Tell us the Dauphin's mind.

Amb. Thus then, in few.
Your highness, lately sending into France,
Did claim some certain dukedoms, in the right
Of your great predecessor, king Edward the third.
In answer of which claim, the prince our master
Says,—that you savour too much of your youth;
And bids you be advis'd, there's nought in France,
That can be with a nimble galliard won;[6]
You cannot revel into dukedoms there:

[5] —— *empery,*] This word, which signifies *dominion,* is now obsolete, though formerly in general use.

[6] —— *a nimble* galliard *won;*] A *galliard* was an ancient dance, now obsolete.

He therefore sends you, meeter for your spirit,
This tun of treasure; and, in lieu of this,
Desires you, let the dukedoms, that you claim,
Hear no more of you. This the Dauphin speaks.

K. Hen. What treasure, uncle?

Exe. Tennis-balls, my liege.

K. Hen. We are glad, the Dauphin is so pleasant with us;
His present, and your pains, we thank you for:
When we have match'd our rackets to these balls,
We will, in France, by God's grace, play a set,
Shall strike his father's crown into the hazard:
Tell him, he hath made a match with such wrangler,
That all the courts of France will be disturb'd
With chaces.[7] And we understand him well,
How he comes o'er us with our wilder days,
Not measuring what use we made of them.
We never valu'd this poor seat of England;[8]
And therefore, living hence,[9] did give ourself
To barbarous license; As 'tis ever common,
That men are merriest when they are from home.
But tell the Dauphin,—I will keep my state;
Be like a king, and show my sail of greatness,
When I do rouse me in my throne of France:
For that I have laid by[1] my majesty,
And plodded like a man for working-days;
But I will rise there with so full a glory,
That I will dazzle all the eyes of France,
Yea, strike the Dauphin blind to look on us.

[7] —— *chaces.*] *Chace* is a term at tennis.

[8] —— *this poor* seat *of England;*] By the *seat* of England, the King means the throne.

[9] *And therefore, living* hence,] *Living hence* means, withdrawing from the court, the place in which he is now speaking.

[1] *For* that *I have laid by*—] To qualify myself for this undertaking, I have descended from my station, and studied the arts of life in a lower character. JOHNSON.

And tell the pleasant prince,—this mock of his
Hath turn'd his balls to gun-stones;[2] and his soul
Shall stand sore charged for the wasteful vengeance
That shall fly with them: for many a thousand widows
Shall this his mock mock out of their dear husbands;
Mock mothers from their sons, mock castles down;
And some are yet ungotten, and unborn,
That shall have cause to curse the Dauphin's scorn.
But this lies all within the will of God,
To whom I do appeal; And in whose name,
Tell you the Dauphin, I am coming on,
To venge me as I may, and to put forth
My rightful hand in a well-hallow'd cause.
So, get you hence in peace; and tell the Dauphin,
His jest will savour but of shallow wit,
When thousands weep, more than did laugh at it.—
Convey them with safe conduct.—Fare you well.

[*Exeunt* Ambassadors.

Exe. This was a merry message.

K. Hen. We hope to make the sender blush at it.

[*Descends from his Throne.*

Therefore, my lords, omit no happy hour,
That may give furtherance to our expedition:
For we have now no thought in us but France;
Save those to God, that run before our business.
Therefore, let our proportions for these wars
Be soon collected; and all things thought upon,
That may, with reasonable swiftness, add
More feathers to our wings; for, God before,
We'll chide this Dauphin at his father's door.
Therefore, let every man now task his thought,
That this fair action may on foot be brought.

[*Exeunt.*

[2] —— *his balls to* gun-stones;] When ordnance was first used, they discharged balls, not of iron, but of stone.

ACT II.

Enter CHORUS.

Chor. Now all the youth of England are on fire,
And silken dalliance in the wardrobe lies;
Now thrive the armourers, and honour's thought
Reigns solely in the breast of every man:
They sell the pasture now, to buy the horse;
Following the mirror of all Christian kings,
With winged heels, as English Mercuries.
For now sits Expectation in the air;
And hides a sword, from hilts unto the point,
With crowns imperial, crowns, and coronets,
Promis'd to Harry, and his followers.
The French, advis'd by good intelligence
Of this most dreadful preparation,
Shake in their fear; and with pale policy
Seek to divert the English purposes.
O England!—model to thy inward greatness,
Like little body with a mighty heart,—
What might'st thou do, that honour would thee do,
Were all thy children kind and natural!
But see thy fault! France hath in thee found out
A nest of hollow bosoms, which he fills
With treacherous crowns: and three corrupted men,—
One, Richard earl of Cambridge; and the second,
Henry lord Scroop of Marsham; and the third,
Sir Thomas Grey knight of Northumberland,—
Have, for the gilt of France,[3] (O guilt, indeed!)
Confirm'd conspiracy with fearful France;

[3] —— *the* gilt *of France,*] *Gilt,* which, in our author, generally signifies *a display of gold,* in the present instance, means *golden money.*

And by their hands this grace of kings must die,
(If hell and treason hold their promises,)
Ere he take ship for France, and in Southampton.
Linger your patience on; and well digest
The abuse of distance, while we force a play.[4]
The sum is paid; the traitors are agreed;
The king is set from London; and the scene
Is now transported, gentles, to Southampton:
There is the playhouse now, there must you sit:
And thence to France shall we convey you safe,
And bring you back, charming the narrow seas
To give you gentle pass; for, if we may,
We'll not offend one stomach with our play.
But, till the king come forth, and not till then,
Unto Southampton do we shift our scene. [*Exit.*

SCENE I.

The same. Eastcheap.

Enter NYM *and* BARDOLPH.

Bard. Well met, corporal Nym.

Nym. Good morrow, lieutenant Bardolph.

Bard. What, are ancient Pistol and you friends yet?

Nym. For my part, I care not: I say little; but when time shall serve, there shall be smiles;—but that shall be as it may. I dare not fight; but I will wink, and hold out mine iron: It is a simple one; but what though? it will toast cheese; and it will endure cold as another man's sword will: and there's the humour of it.

Bard. I will bestow a breakfast, to make you

[4] —— *while we* force a play.] To *force a play*, is to produce a play by compelling many circumstances into a narrow compass.

friends; and we'll be all three sworn brothers to France;[5] let it be so, good corporal Nym.

Nym. 'Faith, I will live so long as I may, that's the certain of it; and when I cannot live any longer, I will do as I may: that is my rest, that is the rendezvous of it.

Bard. It is certain, corporal, that he is married to Nell Quickly: and, certainly, she did you wrong; for you were troth-plight to her.

Nym. I cannot tell; things must be as they may: men may sleep, and they may have their throats about them at that time; and, some say, knives have edges. It must be as it may: though patience be a tired mare, yet she will plod. There must be conclusions. Well, I cannot tell.

Enter PISTOL *and Mrs.* QUICKLY.

Bard. Here comes ancient Pistol, and his wife:—good corporal, be patient here.—How now, mine host Pistol?

Pist. Base tike, call'st thou me—host?
Now, by this hand I swear, I scorn the term;
Nor shall my Nell keep lodgers.

Quick. No, by my troth, not long: for we cannot lodge and board a dozen or fourteen gentlewomen, that live honestly by the prick of their needles, but it will be thought we keep a bawdy-house straight. [NYM *draws his sword.*] O well-a-day, Lady, if he be not drawn now! O Lord!

[5] —— *and we'll be all three* sworn brothers *to France;*] The humour of *sworn brothers* should be opened a little. In the time of adventure, it was usual for two chiefs to bind themselves to share in each other's fortune, and divide their acquisitions between them. So, in the Conqueror's expedition, Robert de Oily, and Roger de Ivery, were *fratres jurati;* and Robert gave one of the honours he received to his *sworn brother* Roger. So these three scoundrels set out for France, as if they were going to make a conquest of the kingdom.

here's corporal Nym's—now shall we have wilful adultery and murder committed. Good lieutenant Bardolph,—good corporal, offer nothing here.

Nym. Pish!

Pist. Pish for thee, Iceland dog! thou prick-eared cur of Iceland.

Quick. Good corporal Nym, show the valour of a man, and put up thy sword.

Nym. Will you shog off? I would have you *solus*.
[*Sheathing his sword.*

Pist. *Solus*, egregious dog? O viper vile!
The *solus* in thy most marvellous face;
The *solus* in thy teeth, and in thy throat,
And in thy hateful lungs, yea, in thy maw, perdy;
And, which is worse, within thy nasty mouth!
I do retort the *solus* in thy bowels:
For I can take, and Pistol's cock is up,
And flashing fire will follow.

Nym. I am not Barbason,[6] you cannot conjure me. I have an humour to knock you indifferently well: If you grow foul with me, Pistol, I will scour you with my rapier, as I may, in fair terms: if you would walk off, I would prick your guts a little, in good terms, as I may; and that's the humour of it.

Pist. O braggard vile, and damned furious wight!
The grave doth gape, and doting death is near;
Therefore exhale.[7] [Pistol *and* Nym *draw*.

Bard. Hear me, hear me what I say:—he that

[6] *I am not* Barbason;] *Barbason* is the name of a dæmon mentioned in *The Merry Wives of Windsor*. The unmeaning tumour of Pistol's speech very naturally reminds Nym of the sounding nonsense uttered by *conjurors*.

[7] *Therefore* exhale.] *Exhale*, perhaps here signifies *draw*, or, in Pistol's language, *hale*, or *lug out*: but more probably it means—*therefore breathe your last, or die*, a threat common enough among dramatick heroes of a higher rank than Pistol, who only expresses this idea in the fantastick language peculiar to his character.

strikes the first stroke, I'll run him up to the hilts, as I am a soldier. [*Draws.*

Pist. An oath of mickle might; and fury shall abate.
Give me thy fist, thy fore-foot to me give;
Thy spirits are most tall.

Nym. I will cut thy throat, one time or other in fair terms; that is the humour of it.

Pist. *Coupe le gorge,* that's the word?—I thee defy again.
O hound of Crete, think'st thou my spouse to get?
No; to the spital go,
And from the powdering tub of infamy
Fetch forth the lazar kite of Cressid's kind,
Doll Tear-sheet she by name, and her espouse:
I have, and I will hold, the *quondam* Quickly
For the only she; and—*Pauca,* there's enough.

Enter the Boy.

Boy. Mine host Pistol, you must come to my master,—and you, hostess;—he is very sick, and would to bed.—Good Bardolph, put thy nose between his sheets, and do the office of a warming-pan: 'faith, he's very ill.

Bard. Away, you rogue.

Quick. By my troth, he'll yield the crow a pudding one of these days: the king has killed his heart.—Good husband, come home presently.

[*Exeunt Mrs.* Quickly *and* Boy.

Bard. Come, shall I make you two friends? We must to France together; Why, the devil, should we keep knives to cut one another's throats?

Pist. Let floods o'erswell, and fiends for food howl on!

Nym. You'll pay me the eight shillings I won of you at betting?

Pist. Base is the slave that pays.

Nym. That now I will have; that's the humour of it.

Pist. As manhood shall compound; Push home.

Bard. By this sword, he that makes the first thrust, I'll kill him; by this sword, I will.

Pist. Sword is an oath, and oaths must have their course.

Bard. Corporal Nym, an thou wilt be friends, be friends: an thou wilt not, why then be enemies with me too. Pr'ythee, put up.

Nym. I shall have my eight shillings, I won of you at betting?

Pist. A noble shalt thou have, and present pay;
And liquor likewise will I give to thee,
And friendship shall combine, and brotherhood:
I'll live by Nym, and Nym shall live by me;—
Is not this just?—for I shall sutler be
Unto the camp, and profits will accrue.
Give me thy hand.

Nym. I shall have my noble?

Pist. In cash most justly paid.

Nym. Well then, that's the humour of it.

Re-enter Mrs. QUICKLY.

Quick. As ever you came of women, come in quickly to sir John: Ah, poor heart! he is so shaked of a burning quotidian tertian, that it is most lamentable to behold. Sweet men, come to him.

Nym. The king hath run bad humours on the knight, that's the even of it.

Pist. Nym, thou hast spoke the right;
His heart is fracted and corroborate.

Nym. The king is a good king: but it must be as it may; he passes some humours, and careers.

Pist. Let us condole the knight; for, lambkins, we will live. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE II.

Southampton. *A Council-Chamber.*

Enter EXETER, BEDFORD, *and* WESTMORELAND.

Bed. 'Fore God, his grace is bold, to trust these traitors.

Exe. They shall be apprehended by and by.

West. How smooth and even they do bear themselves!

As if allegiance in their bosoms sat,
Crowned with faith, and constant loyalty.

Bed. The king hath note of all that they intend,
By interception which they dream not of.

Exe. Nay, but the man that was his bedfellow,
Whom he hath cloy'd and grac'd with princely favours,—
That he should, for a foreign purse, so sell
His sovereign's life to death and treachery!

Trumpet sounds. Enter King HENRY, SCROOP, CAMBRIDGE, GREY, *Lords, and Attendants.*

K. Hen. Now sits the wind fair, and we will aboard.
My lord of Cambridge,—and my kind lord of Masham,—
And you, my gentle knight,——give me your thoughts:
Think you not, that the powers we bear with us,
Will cut their passage through the force of France;
Doing the execution, and the act,

For which we have in head assembled them?[8]

Scroop. No doubt, my liege, if each man do his best.

K. Hen. I doubt not that: since we are well persuaded,
We carry not a heart with us from hence,
That grows not in a fair consent with ours;
Nor leave not one behind, that doth not wish
Success and conquest to attend on us.

Cam. Never was monarch better fear'd, and lov'd,
Than is your majesty; there's not, I think, a subject,
That sits in heart-grief and uneasiness
Under the sweet shade of your government.

Grey. Even those, that were your father's enemies,
Have steep'd their galls in honey; and do serve you
With hearts create[9] of duty and of zeal.

K. Hen. We therefore have great cause of thankfulness;
And shall forget the office of our hand,
Sooner than quittance of desert and merit,
According to the weight and worthiness.

Scroop. So service shall with steeled sinews toil;
And labour shall refresh itself with hope,
To do your grace incessant services.

K. Hen. We judge no less.—Uncle of Exeter,
Enlarge the man committed yesterday,
That rail'd against our person: we consider,
It was excess of wine that set him on;
And, on his more advice,[1] we pardon him.

Scroop. That's mercy, but too much security:
Let him be punish'd, sovereign; lest example

[8] *For which we have* in head *assembled them?*] *In head* seems synonymous with the modern military term *in force.*

[9] —— *hearts* create —] Hearts *compounded* or *made up* of duty and zeal.

[1] —— *more advice,*] On his return to more *coolness of mind.*

Breed, by his sufferance, more of such a kind.
K. Hen. O, let us yet be merciful.
Cam. So may your highness, and yet punish too.
Grey. Sir, you show great mercy, if you give him life,
After the taste of much correction.
K. Hen. Alas, your too much love and care of me
Are heavy orisons 'gainst this poor wretch.
If little faults, proceeding on distemper,[2]
Shall not be wink'd at, how shall we stretch our eye,[3]
When capital crimes, chew'd, swallow'd, and digested,
Appear before us?—We'll yet enlarge that man,
Though Cambridge, Scroop, and Grey,—in their dear care,
And tender preservation of our person,—
Would have him punish'd. And now to our French causes;
Who are the late commissioners?[4]
Cam. I one, my lord;
Your highness bade me ask for it to-day.
Scroop. So did you me, my liege.
Grey. And me, my royal sovereign.
K. Hen. Then, Richard, earl of Cambridge, there is yours;—
There yours, lord Scroop of Masham;—and, sir knight,
Grey of Northumberland, this same is yours:—
Read them; and know, I know your worthiness.—
My lord of Westmoreland,—and uncle Exeter,—

[2] —— *proceeding on* distemper,] It has been just said by the king, that *it was excess of wine that set him on*, and *distemper* may therefore mean *intoxication*. *Distemper'd in liquor* is still a common expression.

[3] —— *how shall we stretch our eye,*] If we may not *wink* at small faults, *how wide must we open our eyes* at great?

[4] *Who are the late commissioners?*] That is, as appears from the sequel, who are the persons lately appointed commissioners?

We will aboard to-night.—Why, how now, gentlemen?
What see you in those papers, that you lose
So much complexion?—look ye, how they change!
Their cheeks are paper.—Why, what read you there,
That hath so cowarded and chas'd your blood
Out of appearance?
Cam. I do confess my fault;
And do submit me to your highness' mercy.
Grey. Scroop. To which we all appeal.
K. Hen. The mercy, that was quick[5] in us but late,
By your own counsel is suppress'd and kill'd:
You must not dare, for shame, to talk of mercy;
For your own reasons turn into your bosoms,
As dogs upon their masters, worrying them.—
See you, my princes, and my noble peers,
These English monsters! My lord of Cambridge here,—
You know, how apt our love was, to accord
To furnish him with all appertinents
Belonging to his honour; and this man
Hath, for a few light crowns, lightly conspir'd,
And sworn unto the practices of France,
To kill us here in Hampton: to the which,
This knight, no less for bounty bound to us
Than Cambridge is,—hath likewise sworn.—But O!
What shall I say to thee, lord Scroop; thou cruel,
Ingrateful, savage, and inhuman creature!
Thou, that did'st bear the key of all my counsels,
That knew'st the very bottom of my soul,
That almost might'st have coin'd me into gold,
Would'st thou have practis'd on me for thy use?
May it be possible, that foreign hire

[5] —— *quick* —] That is, *living*.

I arrest thee of high treason, by the name of Thomas Grey, knight of Northumberland.

Scroop. Our purposes God justly hath discover'd;
And I repent my fault, more than my death;
Which I beseech your highness to forgive,
Although my body pay the price of it.

Cam. For me,—the gold of France did not seduce;
Although I did admit it as a motive,
The sooner to effect what I intended:
But God be thanked for prevention;
Which I in sufferance heartily will rejoice,[5]
Beseeching God, and you, to pardon me.

Grey. Never did faithful subject more rejoice
At the discovery of most dangerous treason,
Than I do at this hour joy o'er myself,
Prevented from a damned enterprize:
My fault, but not my body, pardon, sovereign.

K. Hen. God quit you in his mercy! Hear your sentence.
You have conspir'd against our royal person,
Join'd with an enemy proclaim'd, and from his coffers
Receiv'd the golden earnest of our death;
Wherein you would have sold your king to slaughter,
His princes and his peers to servitude,
His subjects to oppression and contempt,
And his whole kingdom unto desolation.
Touching our person, seek we no revenge;
But we our kingdom's safety must so tender,
Whose ruin you three sought, that to her laws
We do deliver you. Get you therefore hence,

[5] *Which I in sufferance heartily will rejoice,*] Cambridge means to say, *at* which prevention, or, which intended scheme that it was prevented, I shall rejoice. Shakspeare has many such elliptical expressions. The intended scheme that he alludes to, was the taking off Henry, to make room for his brother-in-law.

Poor miserable wretches, to your death:
The taste whereof, God, of his mercy, give you
Patience to endure, and true repentance
Of all your dear offences!—Bear them hence.
[*Exeunt Conspirators, guarded.*
Now, Lords, for France; the enterprize whereof
Shall be to you, as us, like glorious.
We doubt not of a fair and lucky war;
Since God so graciously hath brought to light
This dangerous treason, lurking in our way,
To hinder our beginnings, we doubt not now,
But every rub is smoothed on our way.
Then, forth, dear countrymen; let us deliver
Our puissance into the hand of God,
Putting it straight in expedition.
Cheerly to sea; the signs of war advance:
No king of England, if not king of France.
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE III.

London. *Mrs.* Quickly's *House in* Eastcheap.

Enter PISTOL, *Mrs.* QUICKLY, NYM, BARDOLPH, *and* Boy.

Quick. Pr'ythee, honey-sweet husband, let me bring thee to Staines.[6]

Pist. No; for my manly heart doth yearn.—
Bardolph, be blithe;—Nym, rouse thy vaunting veins;
Boy, bristle thy courage up; for Falstaff he is dead,
And we must yearn therefore.

Bard. 'Would, I were with him, wheresome'er he is, either in heaven or in hell!

[6] —— *let me* bring *thee to Staines.*] i. e. let me attend, or accompany thee.

Quick. Nay, sure, he's not in hell; he's in Arthur's bosom, if ever man went to Arthur's bosom. 'A made a finer end, and went away, an it had been any christom child;[7] 'a parted even just between twelve and one, e'en at turning o' the tide:[8] for after I saw him fumble with the sheets, and play with flowers, and smile upon his fingers' ends, I knew there was but one way; for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and 'a babbled of green fields. How now, sir John? quoth I: what, man! be of good cheer. So 'a cried out—God, God, God! three or four times: now I, to comfort him, bid him, 'a should not think of God; I hoped, there was no need to trouble himself with any such thoughts yet: So, 'a bade me lay more clothes on his feet: I put my hand into the bed, and felt them, and they were as cold as any stone; then I felt to his knees, and so upward, and upward, and all was as cold as any stone.[9]

[7] —— *an it had been any* christom *child;*] i. e. child that has wore the *chrysom*, or white cloth put on a new baptised child.

[8] —— *turning o' the tide:*] It has been a very old opinion, which Mead, *de imperio solis*, quotes, as if he believed it, that nobody dies but in the time of ebb: half the deaths in London confute the notion; but we find that it was common among the women of the poet's time. JOHNSON.

[9] —— *cold as any stone.*] Such is the end of Falstaff, from whom Shakspeare had promised us, in his epilogue to *King Henry IV.* that we should receive more entertainment. It happened to Shakspeare, as to other writers, to have his imagination crowded with a tumultuary confusion of images, which, while they were yet unsorted and unexamined, seemed sufficient to furnish a long train of incidents, and a new variety of merriment: but which, when he was to produce them to view, shrunk suddenly from him, or could not be accommodated to his general design. That he once designed to have brought Falstaff on the scene again, we know from himself; but whether he could contrive no train of adventures suitable to his character, or could match him with no companions likely to quicken his humour, or could open no new vein of pleasantry, and was afraid to continue the same strain lest it should not find the same reception, he has here for ever discarded him, and made haste to despatch him, perhaps for the same reason for

Nym. They say, he cried out of sack.

Quick. Ay, that 'a did.

Bard. And of women.

Quick. Nay, that 'a did not.

Boy. Yes, that 'a did; and said, they were devils incarnate.

Quick. 'A could never abide carnation; 'twas a colour he never liked.

Boy. 'A said once, the devil would have him about women.

Quick. 'A did in some sort, indeed, handle women: but then he was rheumatick;[1] and talked of the whore of Babylon.

Boy. Do you not remember, 'a saw a flea stick upon Bardolph's nose; and 'a said, it was a black soul burning in hell-fire?

Bard. Well, the fuel is gone, that maintained that fire: that's all the riches I got in his service.

Nym. Shall we shog off? the king will be gone from Southampton.

Pist. Come, let's away.—My love, give me thy lips.
Look to my chattels, and my moveables:
Let senses rule; the word is, *Pitch and pay*;
Trust none;
For oaths are straws, men's faiths are wafer-cakes,
And hold-fast is the only dog, my duck;

which Addison killed Sir Roger, that no other hand might attempt to exhibit him.

Let meaner authors learn from this example, that it is dangerou to sell the bear which is yet not hunted; to promise to the publick what they have not written.

This disappointment probably inclined Queen Elizabeth to command the poet to produce him once again, and to show him in love or courtship. This was, indeed, a new source of humour, and produced a new play from the former characters. JOHNSON.

[1] —— *rheumatick;*] This word is elsewhere used by our author for peevish, or splenetick, as *scorbutico* is in Italian. Mrs. Quickly however probably means *lunatick*.

Therefore, *caveto* be thy counsellor.
Go, clear thy chrystals.[9]—Yoke-fellows in arms,
Let us to France! like horse-leeches, my boys;
To suck, to suck, the very blood to suck!

Boy. And that is but unwholesome food, they say.

Pist. Touch her soft mouth, and march.

Bard. Farewell, hostess. [*Kissing her.*

Nym. I cannot kiss, that is the humour of it; but adieu.

Pist. Let housewifery appear; keep close, I thee command.

Quick. Farewell; adieu. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE IV.

France. *A Room in the* French *King's Palace.*

Enter the French King *attended*; *the* Dauphin, *the Duke of* Burgundy, *the* Constable, *and Others.*

Fr. King. Thus come the English with full power upon us;
And more than carefully it us concerns,
To answer royally in our defences.
Therefore the dukes of Berry, and of Bretagne,
Of Brabant, and of Orleans, shall make forth,—
And you, prince Dauphin,—with all swift despatch,
To line, and new repair, our towns of war,
With men of courage, and with means defendant:
For England his approaches makes as fierce,
As waters to the sucking of a gulph.
It fits us then, to be as provident
As fear may teach us, out of late examples
Left by the fatal and neglected English
Upon our fields.

[9] —— *clear thy* chrystals.] Dry thine eyes.

Dau. My most redoubted father,
It is most meet we arm us 'gainst the foe:
For peace itself should not so dull a kingdom,[3]
(Though war, nor no known quarrel, were in question,)
But that defences, musters, preparations,
Should be maintain'd, assembled, and collected,
As were a war in expectation.
Therefore, I say, 'tis meet we all go forth,
To view the sick and feeble parts of France:
And let us do it with no show of fear;
No, with no more, than if we heard that England
Were busied with a Whitsun morris-dance:
For, my good liege, she is so idly king'd,
Her scepter so fantastically borne
By a vain, giddy, shallow, humorous youth,
That fear attends her not.

Con. O peace, prince Dauphin!
You are too much mistaken in this king:
Question your grace the late ambassadors,—
With what great state he heard their embassy,
How well supplied with noble counsellors,
How modest in exception,[4] and, withal,
How terrible in constant resolution,—
And you shall find, his vanities fore-spent
Were but the outside of the Roman Brutus,
Covering discretion with a coat of folly;
As gardeners do with ordure hide those roots
That shall first spring, and be most delicate.

Dau. Well, 'tis not so, my lord high constable,
But though we think it so, it is no matter:
In cases of defence, 'tis best to weigh
The enemy more mighty than he seems,
So the proportions of defence are fill'd;

[3] —— *so* dull *a kingdom,*] i. e. render it callous, insensible.
[4] *How modest in exception,*] How diffident and decent in making objections.

Which, of a weak and niggardly projection,
Doth, like a miser, spoil his coat, with scanting
A little cloth.

Fr. King. Think we king Harry strong;
And, princes, look, you strongly arm to meet him.
The kindred of him hath been flesh'd upon us;
And he is bred out of that bloody strain,[5]
That haunted us[6] in our familiar paths:
Witness our too much memorable shame,
When Cressy battle fatally was struck,
And all our princes captiv'd, by the hand
Of that black name, Edward black prince of Wales;
Whiles that his mountain sire,—on mountain standing,
Up in the air, crown'd with the golden sun,—
Saw his heroical seed, and smil'd to see him
Mangle the work of nature, and deface
The patterns that by God and by French fathers
Had twenty years been made. This is a stem
Of that victorious stock; and let us fear
The native mightiness and fate of him.[7]

Enter a Messenger.

Mess. Ambassadors from Henry King of England
Do crave admittance to your majesty.

Fr. King. We'll give them present audience. Go, and bring them.

[*Exeunt* Mess. *and certain* Lords.

You see, this chase is hotly follow'd, friends.

Dau. Turn head, and stop pursuit: for coward dogs

[5] —— *strain,*] *lineage.*

[6] *That* haunted *us*—] To *haunt* is a word of the utmost horror, which shows that they dreaded the English as goblins and spirits.

[7] —— fate *of him.*] His *fate* is what is allotted him by destiny or what he is fated to perform.

Most spend their mouths,[8] when what they seem to threaten,
Runs far before them. Good my sovereign,
Take up the English short; and let them know
Of what a monarchy you are the head:
Self-love, my liege, is not so vile a sin
As self-neglecting.

Re-enter Lords, *with* EXETER *and Train.*

Fr. King. From our brother England?
Exe. From him; and thus he greets your majesty.
He wills you, in the name of God Almighty,
That you divest yourself, and lay apart
The borrow'd glories, that, by gift of heaven,
By law of nature, and of nations, 'long
To him, and to his heirs; namely, the crown,
And all wide-stretched honours that pertain,
By custom and the ordinance of times,
Unto the crown of France. That you may know,
'Tis no sinister, nor no aukward claim,
Pick'd from the worm-holes of long-vanish'd days,
Nor from the dust of old oblivion rak'd,
He sends you this most memorable line,[9]
[*Gives a paper.*
In every branch truly demonstrative;
Willing you, overlook this pedigree:
And, when you find him evenly deriv'd
From his most fam'd of famous ancestors,
Edward the Third, he bids you then resign
Your crown and kingdom, indirectly held
From him the native and true challenger.

[8] —— *spend their mouths,*] That is, bark; the sportsman's term.

[9] —— *memorable* line,] This genealogy; this deduction of his *lineage.*

Fr. King. Or else what follows?

Exe. Bloody constraint; for if you hide the crown
Even in your hearts, there will he rake for it:
And therefore in fierce tempest is he coming,
In thunder, and in earthquake, like a Jove;
(That, if requiring fail, he will compel;)
And bids you, in the bowels of the Lord,
Deliver up the crown; and to take mercy
On the poor souls, for whom this hungry war
Opens his vasty jaws: and on your head
Turns he the widows' tears, the orphans' cries,
The dead men's blood, the pining maidens' groans,
For husbands, fathers, and betrothed lovers,
That shall be swallow'd in this controversy.
This is his claim, his threat'ning, and my message;
Unless the Dauphin be in presence here,
To whom expressly I bring greeting too.

Fr. King. For us, we will consider of this further:
To-morrow shall you bear our full intent
Back to our brother England.

Dau. For the Dauphin,
I stand here for him; What to him from England?

Exe. Scorn, and defiance; slight regard, contempt,
And any thing that may not misbecome
The mighty sender, doth he prize you at.
Thus says my king: and, if your father's highness
Do not, in grant of all demands at large,
Sweeten the bitter mock you sent his majesty,
He'll call you to so hot an answer for it,
That caves and womby vaultages of France
Shall chide your trespass,[1] and return your mock
In second accent of his ordnance.

Dau. Say, if my father render fair reply,
It is against my will: for I desire

[1] *Shall* chide *your trespass,*] To *chide* is to *resound,* to *echo.*

Nothing but odds with England; to that end,
As matching to his youth and vanity,
I did present him with those Paris balls.

Exe. He'll make your Paris Louvre shake for it,
Were it the mistress court of mighty Europe:
And, be assur'd, you'll find a difference,
(As we, his subjects, have in wonder found,)
Between the promise of his greener days,
And these he masters now; now he weighs time,
Even to the utmost grain; which you shall read
In your own losses, if he stay in France.

Fr. King. To-morrow shall you know our mind at full.

Exe. Despatch us with all speed, lest that our king
Come here himself to question our delay;
For he is footed in this land already.

Fr. King. You shall be soon despatch'd, with fair conditions:
A night is but small breath, and little pause,
To answer matters of this consequence. [*Exeunt.*

ACT III.

Enter CHORUS.

Chor. Thus with imagin'd wing our swift scene flies,
In motion of no less celerity
Than that of thought. Suppose, that you have seen
The well-appointed king at Hampton pier
Embark his royalty; and his brave fleet
With silken streamers the young Phœbus fanning.
Play with your fancies; and in them behold,
Upon the hempen tackle, ship-boys climbing:
Hear the shrill whistle, which doth order give

To sounds confus'd: behold the threaden sails,
Borne with the invisible and creeping wind,
Draw the huge bottoms through the furrow'd sea,
Breasting the lofty surge: O, do but think,
You stand upon the rivage,[2] and behold
A city on the inconstant billows dancing;
For so appears this fleet majestical,
Holding due course to Harfleur. Follow, follow!
Grapple your minds to sternage of this navy;[3]
And leave your England, as dead midnight, still,
Guarded with grandsires, babies, and old women,
Either past, or not arriv'd to, pith and puissance:
For who is he, whose chin is but enrich'd
With one appearing hair, that will not follow
These cull'd and choice-drawn cavaliers to France?
Work, work, your thoughts, and therein see a siege:
Behold the ordnance on their carriages,
With fatal mouths gaping on girded Harfleur.
Suppose, the ambassador from the French comes back;
Tells Harry—that the king doth offer him
Katharine his daughter; and with her, to dowry,
Some petty and unprofitable dukedoms.
The offer likes not: and the nimble gunner
With linstock[4] now the devilish cannon touches,
[*Alarum*; *and Chambers go off.*
And down goes all before them. Still be kind,
And eke out our performance with your mind.
[*Exit.*

[2] —— *rivage,*] The *bank* or shore.

[3] —— *to* sternage *of this navy;*] The stern being the hinder part of the ship, the meaning is, let your minds follow close after the navy. *Stern*, however, appears to have been anciently synonymous to *rudder*.

[4] —— *linstock*—] The staff to which the match is fixed when ordnance is fired.

SCENE I.

The same. Before Harfleur.

Alarums. Enter King HENRY, EXETER, BEDFORD, GLOSTER, *and Soldiers, with Scaling Ladders.*

K. Hen. Once more unto the breach, dear friends, once more;
Or close the wall up with our English dead!
In peace, there's nothing so becomes a man,
As modest stillness, and humility:
But when the blast of war blows in our ears,
Then imitate the action of the tiger;
Stiffen the sinews, summon up the blood,
Disguise fair nature with hard-favour'd rage:
Then lend the eye a terrible aspect;
Let it pry through the portage of the head,
Like the brass cannon; let the brow o'erwhelm it,
As fearfully, as doth a galled rock
O'erhang and jutty[5] his confounded base,[6]
Swill'd with the wild and wasteful ocean.
Now set the teeth, and stretch the nostril wide;
Hold hard the breath, and bend up every spirit
To his full height!—On, on, you noblest English,
Whose blood is fet from fathers of war-proof!
Fathers, that, like so many Alexanders,
Have, in these parts, from morn till even fought,

[5] ——*jutty*—] The force of the verb to *jutty*, when applied to a rock projecting into the sea, is not felt by those who are unaware that this word anciently signified a mole raised to withstand the encroachment of the tide. *Jutty*-heads, in sea language, are platforms standing on piles, near the docks, and projecting without the wharfs, for the more convenient docking and undocking ships.

[6] —— *his* confounded *base*,] His *worn* or *wasted* base.

And sheath'd their swords for lack of argument.[7]
Dishonour not your mothers; now attest,
That those, whom you call'd fathers, did beget you!
Be copy now to men of grosser blood,
And teach them how to war!—And you, good yeomen,
Whose limbs were made in England, show us here
The mettle of your pasture; let us swear
That you are worth your breeding: which I doubt not;
For there is none of you so mean and base,
That hath not noble lustre in your eyes.
I see you stand like greyhounds in the slips,[8]
Straining upon the start. The game's afoot;
Follow your spirit: and, upon this charge,
Cry—God for Harry! England! and Saint George!
[*Exeunt. Alarum, and Chambers go off.*

SCENE II.

The same.

Forces pass over; then enter NYM, BARDOLPH, PISTOL, *and* Boy.

Bard. On, on, on, on, on! to the breach, to the breach!

Nym. 'Pray thee, corporal, stay; the knocks are too hot; and, for mine own part, I have not a case of lives: the humour of it is too hot, that is the very plain-song of it.

Pist. The plain-song is most just; for humours do abound;

[7] —— *argument.*] Is *matter*, or *subject*.

[8] —— *like greyhounds in the* slips,] *Slips* are a contrivance of leather, to start two dogs at the same time.

Knocks go and come; God's vassals drop and die
And sword and shield,
In bloody field,
Doth win immortal fame.

Boy. 'Would I were in an alehouse in London! I would give all my fame for a pot of ale, and safety.

Pist. And I:
If wishes would prevail with me,
My purpose should not fail with me,
But thither would I hie.

Boy. As duly, but not as truly, as bird doth sing on bough.

Enter FLUELLEN.[9]

Flu. Got's plood!—Up to the preaches, you rascals! will you not up to the preaches?

[*Driving them forward.*

Pist. Be merciful, great duke, to men of mould![1]
Abate thy rage, abate thy manly rage!
Abate thy rage, great duke!
Good bawcock, bate thy rage! use lenity, sweet chuck!

Nym. These be good humours!—your honour wins bad humours.

[*Exeunt* NYM, PISTOL, *and* BARDOLPH, *followed by* FLUELLEN.

Boy. As young as I am, I have observed these three swashers. I am boy to them all three: but all they three, though they would serve me, could not be man to me; for, indeed, three such anticks do not amount to a man. For Bardolph,—he is white-livered, and red-faced; by the means whereof,

[9] —— *Fluellen.*] This is only the Welsh pronunciation of *Llvellyn.* Thus also *Flloyd* instead of *Lloyd.*

[1] —— *to men of* mould!] To men of *earth,* to poor mortal men.

'a faces it out, but fights not. For Pistol,—he hath a killing tongue, and a quiet sword; by the means whereof 'a breaks words, and keeps whole weapons. For Nym,—he hath heard, that men of few words are the best men;[2] and therefore he scorns to say his prayers, lest 'a should be thought a coward: but his few bad words are match'd with as few good deeds; for 'a never broke any man's head but his own; and that was against a post, when he was drunk. They will steal any thing, and call it,—purchase. Bardolph stole a lute-case; bore it twelve leagues, and sold it for three halfpence. Nym, and Bardolph, are sworn brothers in filching; and in Calais they stole a fire-shovel: I knew, by that piece of service, the men would carry coals.[3] They would have me as familiar with men's pockets, as their gloves or their handkerchiefs: which makes much against my manhood, if I should take from another's pocket, to put into mine; for it is plain pocketing up of wrongs. I must leave them, and seek some better service: their villainy goes against my weak stomach, and therefore I must cast it up.

[*Exit* Boy.

Re-enter FLUELLEN, GOWER *following*.

Gow. Captain Fluellen, you must come presently to the mines; the duke of Gloster would speak with you.

Flu. To the mines! tell you the duke, it is not so good to come to the mines: For, look you, the mines is not according to the disciplines of the war; the concavities of it is not sufficient; for, look you,

[2] —— best *men*;] That is, *bravest;* so in the next lines, *good deeds* are *brave actions.*

[3] —— *the men would carry coals.*] It appears that, in Shakspeare's age, *to carry coals*, was, I know not why, *to endure affronts.*

th' athversary (you may discuss unto the duke, look you,) is dight himself four yards under the countermines:[4] by Cheshu, I think, 'a will plow up all,[5] if there is not better directions.

Gow. The duke of Gloster, to whom the order of the siege is given, is altogether directed by an Irishman; a very valiant gentleman, i'faith.

Flu. It is captain Macmorris, is it not?

Gow. I think, it be.

Flu. By Cheshu, he is an ass, as in the 'orld: I will verify as much in his peard: he has no more directions in the true disciplines of the wars, look you, of the Roman disciplines, than is a puppy-dog.

Enter MACMORRIS *and* JAMY, *at a distance.*

Gow. Here 'a comes; and the Scots captain, captain Jamy, with him.

Flu. Captain Jamy is a marvellous falorous gentleman, that is certain; and of great expedition, and knowledge, in the ancient wars, upon my particular knowledge of his directions: by Cheshu, he will maintain his argument as well as any military man in the 'orld, in the disciplines of the pristine wars of the Romans.

Jamy. I say, gud-day, captain Fluellen.

Flu. God-den to your worship, goot captain Jamy.

Gow. How now, captain Macmorris? have you quit the mines? have the pioneers given o'er?

Mac. By Chrish la, tish ill done: the work ish give over, the trumpet sound the retreat. By my hand, I swear, and by my father's soul, the work ish

[4] ——*is dight himself four yards under the* countermines:] Fluellen means, that the enemy had digged himself *countermines* four yards under the *mines.*

[5] —— *will* plow *up all,*] That is, he will *blow* up all.

ill done; it ish give over: I would have blowed up the town, so Chrish save me, la, in an hour. O, tish ill done, tish ill done; by my hand, tish ill done!

Flu. Captain Macmorris, I peseech you now, will you voutsafe me, look you, a few disputations with you, as partly touching or concerning the disciplines of the war, the Roman wars, in the way of argument, look you, and friendly communication; partly, to satisfy my opinion, and partly, for the satisfaction, look you, of my mind, as touching the direction of the military discipline; that is the point.

Jamy. It sall be very gud, gud feith, gud captains bath: and I sall quit you[6] with gud leve, as I may pick occasion; that sall I, marry.

Mac. It is no time to discourse, so Chrish save me, the day is hot, and the weather, and the wars, and the king, and the dukes; it is no time to discourse. The town is beseeched, and the trumpet calls us to the breach; and we talk, and, by Chrish, do nothing; 'tis shame for us all: so God sa' me, 'tis shame to stand still; it is shame, by my hand: and there is throats to be cut, and works to be done; and there ish nothing done, so Chrish sa' me, la.

Jamy. By the mess, ere theise eyes of mine take themselves to slumber, aile do gude service, or aile ligge i'the grund for it; ay, or go to death; and aile pay it as valorously as I may, that sal I surely do, that is the breff and the long: Mary, I wad full fain heard some question 'tween you 'tway.

Flu. Captain Macmorris, I think, look you,

[6] ——*I sall* quit *you*—] That is, I shall, with your permission, *requite you*, that is, *answer you*, or interpose with my arguments, as I shall find opportunity.

under your correction, there is not many of your nation——

Mac. Of my nation? What ish my nation? ish a villain, and a bastard, and a knave, and a rascal? What ish my nation? Who talks of my nation?

Flu. Look you, if you take the matter otherwise than is meant, captain Macmorris, peradventure, I shall think you do not use me with that affability as in discretion you ought to use me, look you; being as goot a man as yourself, both in the disciplines of wars, and in the derivation of my birth, and in other particularities.

Mac. I do not know you so good a man as myself: so Chrish save me, I will cut off your head.

Gow. Gentlemen both, you will mistake each other.

Jamy. Au! that's a foul fault.

[*A Parley sounded.*

Gow. The town sounds a parley.

Flu. Captain Macmorris, when there is more better opportunity to be required, look you, I will be so bold as to tell you, I know the disciplines of war; and there is an end.[7] [*Exeunt.*

SCENE III.

The same. Before the Gates of Harfleur.

The Governour *and some Citizens on the Walls; the* English *Forces below. Enter King* Henry *and his Train.*

K. Hen. How yet resolves the governour of the town?

[7] ——*there is an end.*] It were to be wished, that the poor merriment of this dialogue had not been purchased with so much profaneness. Johnson.

This is the latest parle we will admit:
Therefore, to our best mercy give yourselves;
Or, like to men proud of destruction,
Defy us to our worst: for, as I am a soldier,
(A name, that, in my thoughts, becomes me best,)
If I begin the battery once again,
I will not leave the half-achieved Harfleur,
Till in her ashes she lie buried.
The gates of mercy shall be all shut up;
And the flesh'd soldier,—rough and hard of heart,—
In liberty of bloody hand, shall range
With conscience wide as hell; mowing like grass
Your fresh-fair virgins, and your flowering infants.
What is it then to me, if impious war,—
Array'd in flames, like to the prince of fiends,—
Do, with his smirch'd complexion, all fell feats
Enlink'd to waste and desolation?[8]
What is't to me, when you yourselves are cause,
If your pure maidens fall into the hand
Of hot and forcing violation?
What rein can hold licentious wickedness,
When down the hill he holds his fierce career?
We may as bootless spend our vain command
Upon the enraged soldiers in their spoil,
As send precepts to the Leviathan
To come ashore. Therefore, you men of Harfleur,
Take pity of your town, and of your people,
Whiles yet my soldiers are in my command;
Whiles yet the cool and temperate wind of grace
O'erblows the filthy and contagious clouds[9]
Of deadly murder, spoil, and villainy.

[8] ——— *fell feats*
Enlink'd to waste and desolation?] All the savage practices naturally concomitant to the sack of cities.

[9] *Whiles yet the cool and temperate wind of grace*
O'erblows the filthy and contagious clouds—] This is a very harsh metaphor. To *overblow* is to *drive away*, or to *keep off*.

If not, why, in a moment, look to see
The blind and bloody soldier with foul hand
Defile the locks of your shrill-shrieking daughters;
Your fathers taken by the silver beards,
And their most reverend heads dash'd to the walls;
Your naked infants spitted upon pikes;
Whiles the mad mothers with their howls confus'd
Do break the clouds, as did the wives of Jewry
At Herod's bloody-hunting slaughtermen.
What say you? will you yield, and this avoid?
Or, guilty in defence, be thus destroy'd?

Gov. Our expectation hath this day an end:
The Dauphin, whom of succour we entreated,
Returns us—that his powers are not yet ready
To raise so great a siege. Therefore, dread king,
We yield our town, and lives, to thy soft mercy:
Enter our gates; dispose of us, and ours;
For we no longer are defensible.

K. Hen. Open your gates.—Come, uncle Exeter,
Go you and enter Harfleur; there remain,
And fortify it strongly 'gainst the French:
Use mercy to them all. For us, dear uncle,—
The winter coming on, and sickness growing
Upon our soldiers,—we'll retire to Calais.
To-night in Harfleur will we be your guest;
To-morrow for the march are we addrest.[1]

[*Flourish. The* King, *&c. enter the Town.*

[1] —— *are we* addrest.] i. e. prepared.

SCENE IV.[2]

Roüen. *A Room in the Palace.*

Enter KATHARINE *and* ALICE.

Kath. *Alice, tu as esté en Angleterre, et tu parles bien le language.*

Alice. *Un peu, madame.*

Kath. *Je te prie, m'enseignez; il faut que j'apprenne à parler. Comment appellez vous la main, en Anglois?*

Alice. *La main? elle est appellée,* de hand

Kath. De hand. *Et les doigts?*

Alice. *Les doigts? ma foy, je oublie les doigts; mais je me souviendray. Les doigts? je pense, qu'ils sont appellé* de fingres; *ouy,* de fingres.

Kath. *La main,* de hand; *les doigts,* de fingres. *Je pense, que je suis le bon escolier. J'ay gagné deux mots d'Anglois vistement. Comment appellez vous les ongles?*

Alice. *Les ongles? les appellons,* de nails.

Kath. De nails. *Escoutez; dites moy, si je parle bien:* de hand, de fingres, de nails.

Alice. *C'est bien dit, madame; il est fort bon Anglois.*

Kath. *Dites moy en Anglois, le bras.*

Alice. De arm, *madame.*

[2] *Scene IV.*] This scene is mean enough, when it is read; but the grimaces of two French women, and the odd accent with which they uttered the English, made it divert upon the stage. It may be observed, that there is in it not only the French language, but the French spirit. Alice compliments the princess upon her knowledge of four words, and tells her that she pronounces like the English themselves. The Princess suspects no deficiency in her instructress, nor the instructress in herself. Throughout the whole scene there may be found French servility, and French vanity. JOHNSON.

Kath. *Et le coude.*

Alice. De elbow.

Kath. De elbow. *Je m'en faitz la repetition de tous les mots, que vous m'avez appris dès a present.*

Alice. *Il est trop difficile, madame, comme je pense.*

Kath. *Excusez moy, Alice; escoutez:* De hand, de fingre, de nails, de arm, de bilbow.

Alice. De elbow, *madame.*

Kath. *O Seigneur Dieu! je m'en oublie;* De elbow. *Comment appellez vous le col?*

Alice. De neck, *madame.*

Kath. De neck: *Et le menton?*

Alice. De chin.

Kath. De sin. *Le col,* de neck: *le menton,* de sin.

Alice. *Ouy. Sauf vostre honneur; en verité, vous prononces les mots aussi droict que les natifs d'Angleterre.*

Kath. *Je ne doute point d'apprendre par la grace de Dieu; et en peu de temps.*

Alice. *N'avez vous pas deja oublié ce que je vous ay enseignée?*

Kath. *Non, je reciteray à vous promptement.* De hand, de fingre, de mails,—

Alice. De nails, *madame.*

Kath. De nails, de arme, de ilbow.

Alice. *Sauf vostre honneur,* de elbow.

Kath. *Ainsi dis je;* de elbow, de neck, *et* de sin: *Comment appellez vous le pieds et la robe?*

Alice. De foot, *madame;* *et* de con.

Kath. De foot, *et* de con? *O Seigneur Dieu! ces sont mots de son mouvais, corruptible, grosse, et impudique, et non pour les dames d'honneur d'user: Je ne voudrois prononcer ces mots devant les Seigneurs de France, pour tout le monde. Il faut* de foot, & de con, *neant-moins. Je reciterai une autre fois ma leçon ensemble:* De hand, de fingre, de nails, de arm, de elbow, de neck, de sin, de foot, de con.

Alice. *Excellent, madame!*

Kath. *C'est assez pour une fois; allons nous a disner.* [Exeunt.

SCENE V.

The same. Another Room in the same.

Enter the French King, *the* Dauphin, *Duke of* Bourbon, *the* Constable *of* France, *and Others.*

Fr. King. 'Tis certain, he hath pass'd the river Some.

Con. And if he be not fought withal, my lord,
Let us not live in France; let us quit all,
And give our vineyards to a barbarous people.

Dau. *O Dieu vivant!* shall a few sprays of us,—
The emptying of our fathers' luxury,[3]
Our scions, put in wild and savage[4] stock,
Spurt up so suddenly into the clouds,
And overlook their grafters?

Bour. Normans, but bastard Normans, Norman bastards!
Mort de ma vie! if they march along
Unfought withal, but I will sell my dukedom,
To buy a slobbery and a dirty farm
In that nook-shotten[5] isle of Albion.

Con. *Dieu de battailes!* where have they this mettle?
Is not their climate foggy, raw, and dull?

[3] —— *our fathers'* luxury,] In this place, as in others, *luxury* means *lust.*

[4] —— *savage*—] is here used in the French original sense, for *silvan, uncultivated,* the same with *wild.*

[5] *In that* nook-shotten *isle of Albion.*] *Shotten* signifies any thing *projected:* so *nook-shotten isle,* is an isle that shoots out into capes, promontories, and necks of land, the very figure of Great Britain.

On whom, as in despite, the sun looks pale,
Killing their fruit with frowns? Can sodden water,
A drench for sur-rein'd jades,[6] their barley broth,
Decoct their cold blood to such valiant heat?
And shall our quick blood, spirited with wine,
Seem frosty? O, for honour of our land,
Let us not hang like roping icicles
Upon our houses' thatch, whiles a more frosty people
Sweat drops of gallant youth in our rich fields;
Poor—we may call them, in their native lords.

Dau. By faith and honour,
Our madams mock at us; and plainly say,
Our mettle is bred out; and they will give
Their bodies to the lust of English youth,
To new-store France with bastard warriors.

Bour. They bid us—to the English dancing-schools,
And teach lavoltas high,[7] and swift corantos;
Saying, our grace is only in our heels,
And that we are most lofty runaways.

Fr. King. Where is Montjóy, the herald? speed him hence;
Let him greet England with our sharp defiance.—
Up, princes; and, with spirit of honour edg'd,
More sharper than your swords, hie to the field:
Charles De-la-bret, high constable of France;
You dukes of Orleans, Bourbon, and of Berry,
Alençon, Brabant, Bar, and Burgundy;
Jaques, Chatillion, Rambures, Vaudemont,
Beaumont, Grandpré, Roussi, and Fauconberg,
Foix, Lestrale, Bouciqualt, and Charolois;
High dukes, great princes, barons, lords, and knights,

[6] *A drench for* sur-rein'd *jades,*] *sur-rein'd* means over *worked,* or *ridden;* and is perhaps derived from the *reins* of the *back.*

[7] —— *lavoltas high,*] A dance in which there was much turning, and much capering.

For your great seats, now quit you of great shames.
Bar Harry England, that sweeps through our land
With pennons[8] painted in the blood of Harfleur:
Rush on his host, as doth the melted snow[9]
Upon the vallies; whose low vassal seat
The Alps doth spit and void his rheum upon:
Go down upon him,—you have power enough,—
And in a captive chariot, into Roüen
Bring him our prisoner.

Con. This becomes the great.
Sorry am I, his numbers are so few,
His soldiers sick, and famish'd in their march;
For, I am sure, when he shall see our army,
He'll drop his heart into the sink of fear,
And, for achievement, offer us his ransome.

Fr. King. Therefore, lord constable, haste on Montjóy;
And let him say to England, that we send
To know what willing ransome he will give.—
Prince Dauphin, you shall stay with us in Roüen.

Dau. Not so, I do beseech your majesty.

Fr. King. Be patient, for you shall remain with us.—
Now, forth, lord constable, and princes all;
And quickly bring us word of England's fall.

[*Exeunt.*

[8] *With* pennons —] *Pennons* armorial were small flags, on which the arms, device, and motto of a knight were painted.

[9] —— *melted snow* —] The poet has here defeated himself by passing too soon from one image to another. To bid the French rush upon the English as the torrents formed from melted snow stream from the Alps, was at once vehement and proper, but its force is destroyed by the grossness of the thought in the next line.

SCENE VI.

The English *Camp in* Picardy.

Enter GOWER *and* FLUELLEN.

Gow. How now, captain Fluellen? come you from the bridge?

Flu. I assure you, there is very excellent service committed at the pridge.

Gow. Is the duke of Exeter safe?

Flu. The duke of Exeter is as magnanimous as Agamemnon; and a man that I love and honour with my soul, and my heart, and my duty, and my life, and my livings, and my uttermost powers: he is not, (God be praised and plessed!) any hurt in the 'orld; but keeps the pridge most valiantly, with excellent discipline. There is an ensign there at the pridge,—I think, in my very conscience, he is as valiant as Mark Antony; and he is a man of no estimation in the 'orld: but I did see him do gallant service.

Gow. What do you call him?

Flu. He is called—ancient Pistol.

Gow. I know him not.

Enter PISTOL.

Flu. Do you not know him? Here comes the man.

Pist. Captain, I thee beseech to do me favours: The duke of Exeter doth love thee well.

Flu. Ay, I praise Got; and I have merited some love at his hands.

Pist. Bardolph, a soldier, firm and sound of heart,

Of buxom valour,[1] hath,—by cruel fate,
And giddy fortune's furious fickle wheel,
That goddess blind,
That stands upon the rolling restless stone,—

Flu. By your patience, ancient Pistol. Fortune is painted plind, with a muffler before her eyes, to signify to you that fortune is plind: And she is painted also with a wheel; to signify to you, which is the moral of it, that she is turning, and inconstant, and variations, and mutabilities: and her foot, look you, is fixed upon a spherical stone, which rolls, and rolls, and rolls;—In good truth, the poet is make a most excellent description of fortune: fortune, look you, is an excellent moral.

Pist. Fortune is Bardolph's foe, and frowns on him;
For he hath stol'n a *pix*,[2] and hanged must 'a be.
A damned death!
Let gallows gape for dog, let man go free,
And let not hemp his wind-pipe suffocate:
But Exeter hath given the doom of death,
For *pix* of little price.
Therefore, go speak, the duke will hear thy voice;
And let not Bardolph's vital thread be cut
With edge of penny cord, and vile reproach:
Speak, captain, for his life, and I will thee requite.

Flu. Ancient Pistol, I do partly understand your meaning.

Pist. Why then rejoice therefore.

Flu. Certainly, ancient, it is not a thing to rejoice at: for if, look you, he were my brother, I would desire the duke to use his goot pleasure, and

[1] *Of* buxom *valour,*] i. e. valour under good command, obedient to its superiors.

[2] *For he hath stol'n a* pix,] A *pix*, or little chest, (from the Latin word *pixis*, a box,) in which the consecrated *host* was used to be kept.

put him to executions; for disciplines ought to be used.

Pist. Die and be damn'd; and *figo* for thy friendship!

Flu. It is well.

Pist. The fig of Spain![3] [*Exit* PISTOL.

Flu. Very good.

Gow. Why, this is an arrant counterfeit rascal; I remember him now; a bawd; a cutpurse.

Flu. I'll assure you, 'a utter'd as prave 'ords at the pridge, as you shall see in a summer's day: But it is very well; what he has spoke to me, that is well, I warrant you, when time is serve.

Gow. Why, 'tis a gull, a fool, a rogue; that now and then goes to the wars, to grace himself, at his return into London, under the form of a soldier. And such fellows are perfect in great commanders' names: and they will learn you by rote, where services were done;—at such and such a sconce,[4] at such a breach, at such a convoy; who came off bravely, who was shot, who disgraced, what terms the enemy stood on; and this they con perfectly in the phrase of war, which they trick up with new-tuned oaths: And what a beard of the general's cut,[5]

[3] *The* fig *of* Spain!] Mr. Steevens thinks this is an allusion to the custom of giving poisoned figs to those who were the objects either of Spanish or Italian revenge.

[4] —— *a sconce,*] Appears to have been some hasty, rude, inconsiderable kind of fortification.

[5] —— *a beard of the* general's cut,] It appears from an old ballad inserted in a Miscellany, entitled *Le Prince d'Amour,* 8vo. 1660, that our ancestors were very curious in the fashion of their beards, and that a certain *cut* or form was appropriated to the soldier, the bishop, the judge, the clown, &c. The *spade*-beard, and perhaps the *stiletto*-beard also, was appropriated to the first of these characters. It is observable that our author's patron, Henry Earl of Southampton, who spent much of his time in camps, is drawn with the latter of these beards; and his unfortunate friend, Lord Essex, is constantly represented with the former.

and a horrid suit of the camp, will do among foaming bottles, and ale-washed wits, is wonderful to be thought on! but you must learn to know such slanders of the age, or else you may be marvellous mistook.

Flu. I tell you what, captain Gower;—I do perceive, he is not the man that he would gladly make show to the 'orld he is; if I find a hole in his coat, I will tell him my mind. [*Drum heard.*] Hark you, the king is coming; and I must speak with him from the pridge.

Enter King HENRY, GLOSTER, *and Soldiers.*

Flu. Got pless your majesty!

K. Hen. How now, Fluellen? camest thou from the bridge?

Flu. Ay, so please your majesty. The duke of Exeter has very gallantly maintained the pridge: the French is gone off, look you; and there is gallant and most prave passages: Marry, th'athversary was have possession of the pridge; but he is enforced to retire, and the duke of Exeter is master of the pridge: I can tell your majesty, the duke is a prave man.

K. Hen. What men have you lost, Fluellen?

Flu. The perdition of th'athversary hath been very great, very reasonable great: marry, for my part, I think the duke hath lost never a man, but one that is like to be executed for robbing a church, one Bardolph, if your majesty know the man: his face is all bubukles, and whelks, and knobs, and flames of fire; and his lips plows at his nose, and it is like a coal of fire, sometimes plue, and sometimes red; but his nose is executed, and his fire's out.[6]

[6] —— *his fire's out.*] This is the last time that any sport can be made with the red face of Bardolph, which, to confess the truth, seems to have taken more hold on Shakspeare's imagination than

K. Hen. We would have all such offenders so cut off:—and we give express charge, that, in our marches through the country, there be nothing compelled from the villages, nothing taken but paid for; none of the French upbraided, or abused in disdainful language; For when lenity and cruelty play for a kingdom, the gentler gamester is the soonest winner.

Tucket sounds. Enter MONTJOY.[7]

Mont. You know me by my habit.[8]

K. Hen. Well then, I know thee; What shall I know of thee?

Mont. My master's mind.

K. Hen. Unfold it.

Mont. Thus says my king:—Say thou to Harry of England, Though we seemed dead, we did but sleep; Advantage is a better soldier, than rashness. Tell him, we could have rebuked him at Harfleur; but that we thought not good to bruise an injury, till it were full ripe:—now we speak upon our cue,[9] and our voice is imperial: England shall repent his folly, see his weakness, and admire our sufferance. Bid him, therefore, consider of his ransome; which must proportion the losses we have borne, the subjects we have lost, the disgrace we have digested; which, in weight to re-answer, his pettiness would

on any other. The conception is very cold to the solitary reader, though it may be somewhat invigorated by the exhibition on the stage. This poet is always more careful about the present than the future, about his audience than his readers. JOHNSON.

[7] *Enter* Montjoy.] *Mont-joie* is the title of the first king at arms in France, as *Garter* is in our own country.

[8] —— *by my* habit.] That is, by his herald's coat. The person of a herald being inviolable, was distinguished in those times of formality by a peculiar dress, which is likewise yet worn on particular occasions.

[9] —— *upon our cue,*] In our turn. This phrase the author learned among players, and has imparted it to kings.

bow under. For our losses, his exchequer is too poor; for the effusion of our blood, the muster of his kingdom too faint a number; and for our disgrace, his own person, kneeling at our feet, but a weak and worthless satisfaction. To this add—defiance: and tell him, for conclusion, he hath betrayed his followers, whose condemnation is pronounced. So far my king and master; so much my office.

K. Hen. What is thy name? I know thy quality.

Mont. Montjoy.

K. Hen. Thou dost thy office fairly. Turn thee back,
And tell thy king,—I do not seek him now;
But could be willing to march on to Calais
Without impeachment:[1] for, to say the sooth,
(Though 'tis no wisdom to confess so much
Unto an enemy of craft and vantage,)
My people are with sickness much enfeebled;
My numbers lessen'd; and those few I have,
Almost no better than so many French;
Who when they were in health, I tell thee, herald,
I thought, upon one pair of English legs
Did march three Frenchmen.—Yet, forgive me, God,
That I do brag thus!—this your air of France
Hath blown that vice in me; I must repent.
Go, therefore, tell thy master, here I am;
My ransome, is this frail and worthless trunk;
My army, but a weak and sickly guard;
Yet, God before, tell him we will come on,
Though France himself, and such another neighbour,
Stand in our way. There's for thy labour, Montjoy.

[1] *Without* impeachment:] i. e. hindrance. *Empechement*, French.

Go, bid thy master well advise himself:
If we may pass, we will; if we be hinder'd,
We shall your tawny ground with your red blood
Discolour: and so, Montjoy, fare you well.
The sum of all our answer is but this:
We would not seek a battle, as we are;
Nor, as we are, we say, we will not shun it;
So tell your master.

Mont. I shall deliver so. Thanks to your highness. [*Exit* MONTJOY.

Glo. I hope, they will not come upon us now.

K. Hen. We are in God's hand, brother, not in theirs.

March to the bridge; it now draws toward night:—
Beyond the river we'll encamp ourselves;
And on to-morrow bid them march away.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE VII.

The French *Camp, near* Agincourt.

Enter the Constable *of* France, *the Lord* RAMBURES, *the Duke of* ORLEANS, Dauphin, *and Others.*

Con. Tut! I have the best armour of the world.—'Would, it were day!

Orl. You have an excellent armour; but let my horse have his due.

Con. It is the best horse of Europe.

Orl. Will it never be morning?

Dau. My lord of Orleans, and my lord high constable, you talk of horse and armour,—

Orl. You are as well provided of both, as any prince in the world.

Dau. What a long night is this!——I will not change my horse with any that treads but on four

pasterns. *Ca, ha!* He bounds from the earth, as if his entrails were hairs;[2] *le cheval volant*, the Pegasus, *qui a les narines de feu!* When I bestride him, I soar, I am a hawk: he trots the air; the earth sings when he touches it; the basest horn of his hoof is more musical than the pipe of Hermes.

Orl. He's of the colour of the nutmeg.

Dau. And of the heat of the ginger. It is a beast for Perseus: he is pure air and fire; and the dull elements of earth and water never appear in him, but only in patient stillness, while his rider mounts him: he is, indeed, a horse; and all other jades you may call—beasts.

Con. Indeed, my lord, it is a most absolute and excellent horse.

Dau. It is the prince of palfreys; his neigh is like the bidding of a monarch, and his countenance enforces homage.

Orl. No more, cousin.

Dau. Nay, the man hath no wit, that cannot, from the rising of the lark to the lodging of the lamb, vary deserved praise on my palfrey: it is a theme as fluent as the sea; turn the sands into eloquent tongues, and my horse is argument for them all: 'tis a subject for a sovereign to reason on, and for a sovereign's sovereign to ride on; and for the world (familiar to us, and unknown,) to lay apart their particular functions, and wonder at him. I once writ a sonnet in his praise, and began thus: *Wonder of nature,—*

Orl. I have heard a sonnet begin so to one's mistress.

Dau. Then did they imitate that which I composed to my courser; for my horse is my mistress.

[2] *He bounds from the earth, as if his entrails were hairs;*] Alluding to the bounding of tennis-balls, which were stuffed with hair.

Orl. Your mistress bears well.

Dau. Me well; which is the prescript praise and perfection of a good and particular mistress.

Con. *Ma foy!* the other day, methought, your mistress shrewdly shook your back.

Dau. So, perhaps, did yours.

Con. Mine was not bridled.

Dau. O! then, belike, she was old and gentle; and you rode, like a Kerne of Ireland, your French hose off, and in your straight trossers.[3]

Con. You have good judgment in horsemanship.

Dau. Be warned by me then: they that ride so, and ride not warily, fall into foul bogs; I had rather have my horse to my mistress.

Con. I had as lief have my mistress a jade.

Dau. I tell thee, constable, my mistress wears her own hair.

Con. I could make as true a boast as that, if I had a sow to my mistress.

Dau. *Le chien est retournà à son propre vomissement, et la truie lavée au bourbier:* thou makest use of any thing.

Con. Yet do I not use my horse for my mistress; or any such proverb, so little kin to the purpose.

Ram. My lord constable, the armour, that I saw in your tent to-night, are those stars, or suns, upon it?

Con. Stars, my lord.

Dau. Some of them will fall to-morrow, I hope.

Con. And yet my sky shall not want.

Dau. That may be, for you bear a many superfluously; and 'twere more honour, some were away.

Con. Even as your horse bears your praises; who

[3] —— *your straight* trossers.] This word very frequently occurs in the old dramatick writers, and seems to mean straight breeches, or trowsers.

would trot as well, were some of your brags dismounted.

Dau. 'Would, I were able to load him with his desert! Will it never be day? I will trot to-morrow a mile, and my way shall be paved with English faces.

Con. I will not say so, for fear I should be faced out of my way: But I would it were morning, for I would fain be about the ears of the English.

Ram. Who will go to hazard with me for twenty English prisoners?

Con. You must first go yourself to hazard, ere you have them.

Dau. 'Tis midnight, I'll go arm myself. [*Exit.*

Orl. The Dauphin longs for morning.

Ram. He longs to eat the English.

Con. I think, he will eat all he kills.

Orl. By the white hand of my lady, he's a gallant prince.

Con. Swear by her foot, that she may tread out the oath.

Orl. He is, simply, the most active gentleman of France.

Con. Doing is activity: and he will still be doing.

Orl. He never did harm, that I heard of.

Con. Nor will do none to-morrow; he will keep that good name still.

Orl. I know him to be valiant.

Con. I was told that, by one that knows him better than you.

Orl. What's he?

Con. Marry, he told me so himself; and he said, he cared not who knew it.

Orl. He needs not, it is no hidden virtue in him.

Con. By my faith, sir, but it is; never any body

saw it, but his lackey: 'tis a hooded valour; and, when it appears, it will bate.[4]

Orl. Ill will never said well.

Con. I will cap that proverb with—There is flattery in friendship.

Orl. And I will take up that with—Give the devil his due.

Con. Well placed; there stands your friend for the devil: have at the very eye of that proverb, with—A pox of the devil.

Orl. You are the better at proverbs, by how much—A fool's bolt is soon shot.

Con. You have shot over.

Orl. 'Tis not the first time you were overshot.

Enter a Messenger.

Mess. My lord high constable, the English lie within fifteen hundred paces of your tent.

Con. Who hath measured the ground?

Mess. The lord Grandpré.

Con. A valiant and most expert gentleman.—Would it were day!—Alas, poor Harry of England! he longs not for the dawning, as we do.

Orl. What a wretched and peevish[5] fellow is this king of England, to mope with his fat-brained followers so far out of his knowledge!

Con. If the English had any apprehension, they would run away.

[4] —— *'tis a* hooded valour; *and, when it appears, it will* bate.] This is a poor pun, taken from the terms used in falconry. The whole sense and sarcasm depends upon the equivoque of one word, viz. *bate*, in sound, but not in orthography, answering to the term *bait* in faulconry. When the hawk is *unhooded*, her first action is *baiting*, that is flapping her wings, as a preparation to her flying at the game. The hawk wants no courage, but invariably *baits* upon taking off the hood.

[5] —— *peevish* —] In ancient language, signified—foolish.

Orl. That they lack; for if their heads had any intellectual armour, they could never wear such heavy head-pieces.

Ram. That island of England breeds very valiant creatures; their mastiffs are of unmatchable courage.

Orl. Foolish curs! that run winking into the mouth of a Russian bear, and have their heads crushed like rotten apples: You may as well say,—that's a valiant flea, that dare eat his breakfast on the lip of a lion.

Con. Just, just; and the men do sympathize with the mastiffs, in robustious and rough coming on, leaving their wits with their wives: and then give them great meals of beef, and iron and steel, they will eat like wolves, and fight like devils.

Orl. Ay, but these English are shrewdly out of beef.

Con. Then we shall find to-morrow—they have only stomachs to eat, and none to fight. Now is it time to arm: Come, shall we about it?

Orl. It is now two o'clock: but, let me see,—by ten,
We shall have each a hundred Englishmen.

[*Exeunt.*

ACT IV.

Enter CHORUS.

Chor. Now entertain conjecture of a time,
When creeping murmur, and the poring dark,
Fills the wide vessel of the universe.
From camp to camp, through the foul womb of night,

The hum of either army stilly sounds,[6]
That the fix'd sentinels almost receive
The secret whispers of each other's watch:
Fire answers fire: and through their paly flames
Each battle sees the other's umber'd face:[7]
Steed threatens steed, in high and boastful neighs
Piercing the night's dull ear; and from the tents,
The armourers, accomplishing the knights,
With busy hammers closing rivets up,
Give dreadful note of preparation.
The country cocks do crow, the clocks do toll,
And the third hour of drowsy morning name.
Proud of their numbers, and secure in soul,
The confident and over-lusty[8] French
Do the low-rated English play at dice;[9]
And chide the cripple tardy-gaited night,
Who, like a foul and ugly witch, doth limp
So tediously away. The poor condemned English,
Like sacrifices, by their watchful fires
Sit patiently, and inly ruminate
The morning's danger; and their gesture sad,
Investing lank-lean cheeks, and war-worn coats,
Presenteth them unto the gazing moon
So many horrid ghosts. O, now, who will behold
The royal captain of this ruin'd band,
Walking from watch to watch, from tent to tent,
Let him cry—Praise and glory on his head!
For forth he goes, and visits all his host;
Bids them good-morrow, with a modest smile;

[6] —— stilly *sounds*,] i. e. gently, lowly.

[7] —— *the other's* umber'd *face:*] *Umber'd* means here *discoloured* by the gleam of the fires. *Umber* is a dark yellow earth, brought from Umbria in Italy, which, being mixed with water, produces such a dusky yellow colour as the gleam of fire by night gives to the countenance.

[8] *over* ——lusty —] i. e. over-*saucy*.

[9] *Do the low-rated English play at dice;*] i. e. do play them away at dice.

And calls them—brothers, friends, and country-
men.
Upon his royal face there is no note,
How dread an army hath enrounded him;
Nor doth he dedicate one jot of colour
Unto the weary and all-watched night:
But freshly looks, and over-bears attaint,
With cheerful semblance, and sweet majesty;
That every wretch, pining and pale before,
Beholding him, plucks comfort from his looks:
A largess universal, like the sun,
His liberal eye doth give to every one,
Thawing cold fear. Then, mean and gentle all,
Behold, as may unworthiness define,
A little touch of Harry in the night:
And so our scene must to the battle fly;
Where, (O for pity!) we shall much disgrace—
With four or five most vile and ragged foils,
Right ill dispos'd, in brawl ridiculous,—
The name of Agincourt: Yet, sit and see;
Minding true things,[1] by what their mockeries be.
[*Exit.*

SCENE I.

The English *Camp at* Agincourt.

Enter King HENRY, BEDFORD, *and* GLOSTER.

K. Hen. Gloster, 'tis true, that we are in great
danger;
The greater therefore should our courage be.—
Good morrow, brother Bedford.—God Almighty!
There is some soul of goodness in things evil,

[1] Minding *true things,*] To *mind* is the same as *to call to remembrance.*

Would men observingly distil it out;
For our bad neighbour makes us early stirrers,
Which is both healthful, and good husbandry:
Besides, they are our outward consciences,
And preachers to us all; admonishing,
That we should dress us fairly for our end.
Thus may we gather honey from the weed,
And make a moral of the devil himself.

Enter ERPINGHAM.

Good morrow, old sir Thomas Erpingham:
A good soft pillow for that good white head
Were better than a churlish turf of France.
Erp. Not so, my liege; this lodging likes me better,
Since I may say—now lie I like a king.
K. Hen. 'Tis good for men to love their present pains,
Upon example; so the spirit is eased:
And, when the mind is quicken'd, out of doubt,
The organs, though defunct and dead before,
Break up their drowsy grave, and newly move
With casted slough and fresh legerity.[2]
Lend me thy cloak, sir Thomas.—Brothers both,
Commend me to the princes in our camp;
Do my good morrow to them; and, anon,
Desire them all to my pavilion.
Glo. We shall, my liege.
[*Exeunt* GLOSTER *and* BEDFORD.
Erp. Shall I attend your grace?
K. Hen. No, my good knight;
Go with my brothers to my lords of England:

[2] *With casted* slough, *&c.*] *Slough* is the skin which the serpent annually throws off, and by the change of which he is supposed to regain new vigour and fresh youth. *Legerity* is lightness, nimbleness. JOHNSON.

I and my bosom must debate a while,
And then I would no other company.

Erp. The Lord in heaven bless thee, noble Harry! [*Exit* ERPINGHAM.

K. Hen. God-a-mercy, old heart! thou speakest cheerfully.

Enter PISTOL.

Pist. *Qui va lá?*

K. Hen. A friend.

Pist. Discuss unto me; Art thou officer?
Or art thou base, common, and popular?

K. Hen. I am a gentleman of a company.

Pist. Trailest thou the puissant pike?

K. Hen. Even so: What are you?

Pist. As good a gentleman as the emperor.

K. Hen. Then you are a better than the king.

Pist. The king's a bawcock, and a heart of gold,
A lad of life, an imp of fame;
Of parents good, of fist most valiant:
I kiss his dirty shoe, and from my heart-strings
I love the lovely bully. What's thy name?

K. Hen. Harry *le Roy*.

Pist. *Le Roy!* a Cornish name: art thou of Cornish crew?

K. Hen. No, I am a Welshman.

Pist. Knowest thou Fluellen.

K. Hen. Yes.

Pist. Tell him, I'll knock his leek about his pate,
Upon Saint Davy's day.

K. Hen. Do not you wear your dagger in your cap that day, lest he knock that about yours.

Pist. Art thou his friend?

K. Hen. And his kinsman too.

Pist. The *figo* for thee then!

K. Hen. I thank you: God be with you!

Pist. My name is Pistol called. [*Exit.*

K. Hen. It sorts[3] well with your fierceness.

Enter FLUELLEN *and* GOWER, *severally.*

Gow. Captain Fluellen!

Flu. So! in the name of Cheshu Christ, speak lower. It is the greatest admiration in the universal 'orld, when the true and auncient prerogatifes and laws of the wars is not kept: if you would take the pains but to examine the wars of Pompey the Great, you shall find, I warrant you, that there is no tiddle taddle, or pibble pabble, in Pompey's camp; I warrant you, you shall find the ceremonies of the wars, and the cares of it, and the forms of it, and the sobriety of it, and the modesty of it, to be otherwise.

Gow. Why, the enemy is loud; you heard him all night.

Flu. If the enemy is an ass and a fool, and a prating coxcomb, is it meet, think you, that we should also, look you, be an ass, and a fool, and a prating coxcomb; in your own conscience now?

Gow. I will speak lower.

Flu. I pray you, and beseech you, that you will.

[*Exeunt* GOWER *and* FLUELLEN.

K. Hen. Though it appear a little out of fashion,
There is much care and valour in this Welshman.

Enter BATES, COURT, *and* WILLIAMS.

Court. Brother John Bates, is not that the morning which breaks yonder?

Bates. I think it be: but we have no great cause to desire the approach of day.

Will. We see yonder the beginning of the day, but, I think, we shall never see the end of it.—Who goes there?

[3] *It* sorts—] i. e. it agrees.

K. Hen. A friend.

Will. Under what captain serve you?

K. Hen. Under sir Thomas Erpingham.

Will. A good old commander, and a most kind gentleman: I pray you, what thinks he of our estate?

K. Hen. Even as men wrecked upon a sand, that look to be washed off the next tide.

Bates. He hath not told his thought to the king?

K. Hen. No; nor it is not meet he should. For, though I speak it to you, I think, the king is but a man, as I am: the violet smells to him, as it doth to me; the element shows to him, as it doth to me; all his senses have but human conditions:[4] his ceremonies laid by, in his nakedness he appears but a man; and though his affections are higher mounted than ours, yet, when they stoop, they stoop with the like wing; therefore when he sees reason of fears, as we do, his fears, out of doubt, be of the same relish as ours are: Yet, in reason, no man should possess him with any appearance of fear, lest he, by showing it, should dishearten his army.

Bates. He may show what outward courage he will: but, I believe, as cold a night as 'tis, he could wish himself in the Thames up to the neck; and so I would he were, and I by him, at all adventures, so we were quit here.

K. Hen. By my troth, I will speak my conscience of the king; I think, he would not wish himself any where but where he is.

Bates. Then, 'would he were here alone; so should he be sure to be ransomed, and a many poor men's lives saved.

[4] —— *conditions:*] Are *qualities*. The meaning is, that objects are represented by his senses to him, as to other men by theirs. What is danger to another is danger likewise to him; and, when he feels *fear*, it is like the fear of meaner mortals.

K. Hen. I dare say, you love him not so ill, to wish him here alone; howsoever you speak this, to feel other men's minds: Methinks, I could not die any where so contented, as in the king's company; his cause being just, and his quarrel honourable.

Will. That's more than we know.

Bates. Ay, or more than we should seek after; for we know enough, if we know we are the king's subjects; if his cause be wrong, our obedience to the king wipes the crime of it out of us.

Will. But, if the cause be not good, the king himself hath a heavy reckoning to make; when all those legs, and arms, and heads, chopped off in a battle, shall join together at the latter day, and cry all—We died at such a place; some, swearing; some, crying for a surgeon; some, upon their wives left poor behind them; some, upon the debts they owe; some, upon their children rawly left.[5] I am afeard there are few die well, that die in battle; for how can they charitably dispose of any thing, when blood is their argument? Now, if these men do not die well, it will be a black matter for the king that led them to it; whom to disobey, were against all proportion of subjection.

K. Hen. So, if a son, that is by his father sent about merchandise, do sinfully miscarry upon the sea, the imputation of his wickedness, by your rule, should be imposed upon his father that sent him: or if a servant, under his master's command, transporting a sum of money, be assailed by robbers, and die in many irreconciled iniquities, you may call the business of the master the author of the servant's damnation:—But this is not so: the king is not bound to answer the particular endings of his soldiers, the father of his son, nor the master of his

[5] ——*their children* rawly *left.*] i. e. *left young and helpless.*

servant; for they purpose not their death, when they purpose their services. Besides, there is no king, be his cause never so spotless, if it come to the arbitrement of swords, can try it out with all unspotted soldiers. Some, peradventure, have on them the guilt of premeditated and contrived murder; some, of beguiling virgins with the broken seals of perjury; some, making the wars their bulwark, that have before gored the gentle bosom of peace with pillage and robbery. Now, if these men have defeated the law, and outrun native punishment,[6] though they can outstrip men, they have no wings to fly from God: war is his beadle, war is his vengeance; so that here men are punished, for before-breach of the king's laws, in now the king's quarrel: where they feared the death, they have borne life away; and where they would be safe, they perish: Then if they die unprovided, no more is the king guilty of their damnation, than he was before guilty of those impieties for the which they are now visited. Every subject's duty[7] is the king's; but every subject's soul is his own. Therefore should every soldier in the wars do as every sick man in his bed, wash every mote out of his conscience: and dying so, death is to him advantage; or not dying, the time was blessedly lost, wherein such preparation was gained: and, in him that escapes, it were not sin to think, that making God so free an offer, he let him outlive that day to see his greatness, and to teach others how they should prepare.

Will. 'Tis certain, every man that dies ill, the

[6] —— native *punishment*,] That is, punishment in their native country; or, perhaps, *native punishment* is such as they were born to, if they offend.

[7] *Every subject's duty*—] This is a very just distinction, and the whole argument is well followed, and properly concluded.

ill is upon his own head, the king is not to answer for it.

Bates. I do not desire he should answer for me; and yet I determine to fight lustily for him.

K. Hen. I myself heard the king say, he would not be ransomed.

Will. Ay, he said so, to make us fight cheerfully: but, when our throats are cut, he may be ransomed, and we ne'er the wiser.

K. Hen. If I live to see it, I will never trust his word after.

Will. 'Mass, you'll pay him then![8] That's a perilous shot out of an elder gun, that a poor and private displeasure can do against a monarch! you may as well go about to turn the sun to ice, with fanning in his face with a peacock's feather. You'll never trust his word after! come, 'tis a foolish saying.

K. Hen. Your reproof is something too round;[9] I should be angry with you, if the time were convenient.

Will. Let it be a quarrel between us, if you live.

K. Hen. I embrace it.

Will. How shall I know thee again?

K. Hen. Give me any gage of thine, and I will wear it in my bonnet: then, if ever thou darest acknowledge it, I will make it my quarrel.

Will. Here's my glove; give me another of thine.

K. Hen. There.

Will. This will I also wear in my cap: if ever thou come to me and say, after to-morrow, *This is my glove*, by this hand, I will take thee a box on the ear.

K. Hen. If ever I live to see it, I will challenge it.

[8] *'Mass, you'll* pay *him then!*] To *pay*, in old language, meant to *thrash* or *beat;* and here signifies to bring to account, to punish.

[9] —— *too* round;] i. e. too rough, too unceremonious.

Will. Thou darest as well be hanged.

K. Hen. Well, I will do it, though I take thee in the king's company.

Will. Keep thy word: fare thee well.

Bates. Be friends, you English fools, be friends; we have French quarrels enough, if you could tell how to reckon.

K. Hen. Indeed, the French may lay twenty French crowns to one, they will beat us; for they bear them on their shoulders: But it is no English treason, to cut French crowns; and, to-morrow, the king himself will be a clipper.

[*Exeunt* Soldiers.

Upon the king![1] let us our lives, our souls,
Our debts, our careful wives, our children, and
Our sins, lay on the king;—we must bear all.
O hard condition! twin-born with greatness,
Subjécted to the breath of every fool,
Whose sense no more can feel but his own wringing!
What infinite heart's ease must kings neglect,
That private men enjoy?
And what have kings, that privates have not too,
Save ceremony, save general ceremony?
And what art thou, thou idol ceremony?
What kind of god art thou, that suffer'st more
Of mortal griefs, than do thy worshippers?
What are thy rents? what are thy comings-in?
O ceremony, show me but thy worth!
What is the soul of adoration?
Art thou aught else but place, degree, and form,
Creating awe and fear in other men?

[1] *Upon the king!* &c.] There is something very striking and solemn in this soliloquy, into which the King breaks immediately as soon as he is left alone. Something like this, on less occasions, every breast has felt. Reflection and seriousness rush upon the mind upon the separation of a gay company, and especially after forced and unwilling merriment. JOHNSON.

Wherein thou art less happy being fear'd
Than they in fearing.
What drink'st thou oft, instead of homage sweet,
But poison'd flattery? O, be sick, great greatness,
And bid thy ceremony give thee cure!
Think'st thou, the fiery fever will go out
With titles blown from adulation?
Will it give place to flexure and low bending?
Canst thou, when thou command'st the beggar's knee,
Command the health of it? No, thou proud dream,
That play'st so subtly with a king's repose;
I am a king, that find thee; and I know,
'Tis not the balm, the sceptre, and the ball,
The sword, the mace, the crown imperial,
The enter-tissued robe of gold and pearl,
The farced title running[2] 'fore the king,
The throne he sits on, nor the tide of pomp
That beats upon the high shore of this world,
No, not all these, thrice-gorgeous ceremony,
Not all these, laid in bed majestical,
Can sleep so soundly as the wretched slave;[3]
Who, with a body fill'd, and vacant mind,
Gets him to rest, cramm'd with distressful bread;
Never sees horrid night, the child of hell;
But, like a lackey, from the rise to set,
Sweats in the eye of Phœbus, and all night
Sleeps in Elysium; next day, after dawn,
Doth rise, and help Hyperion to his horse;
And follows so the ever-running year
With profitable labour, to his grave:

[2] —— farced *title running*, &c.] *Farced* is *stuffed*. The tumid puffy titles with which a king's name is always introduced. This, I think, is the sense. JOHNSON.

[3] *Can sleep so soundly*, &c.] These lines are exquisitely pleasing. *To sweat in the eye of Phœbus*, and *to sleep in Elysium*, are expressions very poetical. JOHNSON.

And, but for ceremony, such a wretch,
Winding up days with toil, and nights with sleep,
Had the fore-hand and vantage of a king.
The slave, a member of the country's peace,
Enjoys it; but in gross brain little wots,
What watch the king keeps to maintain the peace,
Whose hours the peasant best advantages.[4]

Enter ERPINGHAM.

Erp. My lord, your nobles, jealous of your absence,
Seek through your camp to find you.
K. Hen. Good old knight,
Collect them all together at my tent:
I'll be before thee.
Erp. I shall do't, my lord. [*Exit.*
K. Hen. O God of battles! steel my soldiers' hearts!
Possess them not with fear; take from them now
The sense of reckoning, if the opposed numbers
Pluck their hearts from them!—Not to-day, O Lord,
O not to-day, think not upon the fault
My father made in compassing the crown!
I Richard's body have interred new;
And on it have bestow'd more contrite tears,
Than from it issued forced drops of blood.
Five hundred poor I have in yearly pay,
Who twice a day their wither'd hands hold up
Toward heaven, to pardon blood; and I have built

[4] ——— *but*——*little wots,*
What watch the king keeps to maintain the peace,
Whose hours the peasant best advantages.] The sense of this passage, which is expressed with some slight obscurity, seems to be—*He little knows at the expence of how much royal vigilance, that peace, which brings most advantage to the peasant, is maintained.* To *advantage* is a verb elsewhere used by Shakspeare.

Two chantries,[5] where the sad and solemn priests
Sing still for Richard's soul. More will I do:
Though all that I can do, is nothing worth;
Since that my penitence comes after all,
Imploring pardon.

Enter GLOSTER.

Glo. My liege!
K. Hen. My brother Gloster's voice?—Ay;
I know thy errand, I will go with thee:—
The day, my friends, and all things stay for me.
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE II.

The French *Camp.*

Enter Dauphin, ORLEANS, RAMBURES, *and Others.*

Orl. The sun doth gild our armour; up, my lords.
Dau. *Montez a cheval:*—My horse! *valet! lacquay!* ha!
Orl. O brave spirit!
Dau. *Via!—les eaux et la terre*[6]——
Orl. *Rien puis? l'air et le feu*——
Dau. *Ciel!* cousin Orleans.——

Enter Constable.

Now, my lord Constable!

[5] *Two chantries,*] One of these monasteries was for Carthusian monks, and was called *Bethlehem;* the other was for religious men and women of the order of Saint Bridget, and was named *Sion.* They were on opposite sides of the Thames, and adjoined the royal manor of *Sheen,* now called *Richmond.*

[6] Via!—*les eaux et la terre*—] *Via* is an old hortatory exclamation, as *allons!*

Con. Hark, how our steeds for present service neigh.

Dau. Mount them, and make incision in their hides;

That their hot blood may spin in English eyes,
And dout them[7] with superfluous courage: Ha!

Ram. What, will you have them weep our horses' blood?
How shall we then behold their natural tears?

Enter a Messenger.

Mess. The English are embattled, you French peers.

Con. To horse, you gallant princes! straight to horse!

Do but behold yon poor and starved band,
And your fair show shall suck away their souls,
Leaving them but the shales and husks of men.
There is not work enough for all our hands;
Scarce blood enough in all their sickly veins,
To give each naked curtle-ax a stain,
That our French gallants shall to-day draw out,
And sheath for lack of sport: let us but blow on them,
The vapour of our valour will o'erturn them.
'Tis positive 'gainst all exceptions, lords,
That our superfluous lackeys, and our peasants,—
Who, in unnecessary action, swarm
About our squares of battle,—were enough
To purge this field of such a hilding foe;[8]
Though we, upon this mountain's basis by
Took stand for idle speculation:
But that our honours must not. What's to say?

[7] *And* dout *them*—] *Dout*, is a word still used in Warwickshire, and signifies to *do out*, or *extinguish*.

[8] —— *a* hilding *foe*;] *Hilding*, or *hinderling*, is a *low wretch*.

A very little little let us do,
And all is done. Then let the trumpets sound
The tucket-sonuance,[9] and the note to mount:
For our approach shall so much dare the field,
That England shall couch down in fear, and yield.

Enter GRANDPRÉ.

Grand. Why do you stay so long, my lords of France?
Yon island carrions, desperate of their bones,
Ill-favour'dly become the morning field:
Their ragged curtains poorly are let loose,[1]
And our air shakes them passing scornfully.
Big Mars seems bankrupt in their beggar'd host,
And faintly through a rusty beaver peeps.
Their horsemen sit like fixed candlesticks,
With torch-staves in their hand:[2] and their poor jades
Lob down their heads, dropping the hides and hips;
The gum down-roping from their pale-dead eyes;
And in their pale dull mouths the gimmal bit[3]
Lies foul with chew'd grass, still and motionless;
And their executors, the knavish crows,

[9] *The tucket-sonuance,* &c.] The *tucket-sonuance* was, perhaps, the name of an introductory flourish on the trumpet, as *toccata* in Italian is the prelude of a sonata on the harpsichord, and *toccar la tromba* is to blow the trumpet.

[1] *Their* ragged curtains *poorly are let loose,*] By their *ragged curtains,* are meant their colours. The idea seems to have been taken from what every man must have observed, i. e. ragged curtains put in motion by the air, when the windows of mean houses are left open.

[2] *Their horsemen sit like fixed candlesticks,*
With torch-staves in their hand:] Grandpré alludes to the form of ancient candlesticks, which frequently represented human figures holding the sockets for the lights in their extended hands.

[3] —— gimmal *bit*—] *Gimmal* is, in the western counties, a *ring;* a *gimmal bit* is therefore a *bit* of which the parts played one within another.

Fly o'er them all, impatient for their hour.
Description cannot suit itself in words,
To démonstrate the life of such a battle
In life so lifeless as it shows itself.

Con. They have said their prayers, and they stay for death.

Dau. Shall we go send them dinners, and fresh suits,
And give their fasting horses provender,
And after fight with them?

Con. I stay but for my guard;[4] On, to the field:
I will the banner from a trumpet take,
And use it for my haste. Come, come away!
The sun is high, and we outwear the day.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE III.

The English *Camp.*

Enter the English *Host*; GLOSTER, BEDFORD, EXETER, SALISBURY, *and* WESTMORELAND.

Glo. Where is the king?

Bed. The king himself is rode to view their battle.

West. Of fighting men they have full threescore thousand.

Exe. There's five to one; besides, they all are fresh.

Sal. God's arm strike with us! 'tis a fearful odds.
God be wi' you, princes all; I'll to my charge:
If we no more meet, till we meet in heaven,
Then, joyfully,—my noble lord of Bedford,—

[4] *I stay but for my* guard;] It seems, by what follows, that *guard* in this place means rather something of ornament or of distinction, than a body of attendants. JOHNSON.

My dear lord Gloster,—and my good lord Exeter,—
And my kind kinsman,—warriors all, adieu!

Bed. Farewell, good Salisbury; and good luck go with thee!

Exe. Farewell, kind lord; fight valiantly to-day:
And yet I do thee wrong, to mind thee of it,
For thou art fram'd of the firm truth of valour.
[*Exit* SALISBURY.

Bed. He is as full of valour, as of kindness;
Princely in both.

West. O that we now had here

Enter King HENRY.

But one ten thousand of those men in England,
That do no work to-day!

K. Hen. What's he, that wishes so?
My cousin Westmoreland?—No, my fair cousin:
If we are mark'd to die, we are enough
To do our country loss; and if to live,
The fewer men, the greater share of honour.
God's will! I pray thee, wish not one man more.
By Jove, I am not covetous for gold;
Nor care I, who doth feed upon my cost;
It yearns me not,[5] if men my garments wear;
Such outward things dwell not in my desires:
But, if it be a sin to covet honour,
I am the most offending soul alive.
No, 'faith, my coz, wish not a man from England:
God's peace! I would not lose so great an honour,
As one man more, methinks, would share from me,
For the best hope I have. O, do not wish one more:
Rather proclaim it, Westmoreland, through my host,
That he, which hath no stomach to this fight,
Let him depart; his passport shall be made,
And crowns for convoy put into his purse:

[5] *It* yearns *me not,*] To *yearn* is to grieve or vex.

We would not die in that man's company,
That fears his fellowship to die with us.
This day is call'd—the feast of Crispian :[6]
He, that outlives this day, and comes safe home,
Will stand a tip-toe when this day is nam'd,
And rouse him at the name of Crispian.
He, that shall live this day, and see old age,
Will yearly on the vigil feast his friends,
And say—to-morrow is saint Crispian:
Then will he strip his sleeve, and show his scars,
And say, these wounds I had on Crispin's day.
Old men forget; yet all shall be forgot,
But he'll remember, with advantages,[7]
What feats he did that day: Then shall our names,
Familiar in their mouths as household words,—
Harry the king, Bedford, and Exeter,
Warwick and Talbot, Salisbury and Gloster,—
Be in their flowing cups freshly remember'd:
This story shall the good man teach his son;
And Crispin Crispian shall ne'er go by,
From this day to the ending[8] of the world,
But we in it shall be remembered:
We few, we happy few, we band of brothers;
For he, to-day that sheds his blood with me,
Shall be my brother; be he ne'er so vile,
This day shall gentle his condition:[9]

[6] —— *of* Crispian:] The battle of Agincourt was fought upon the 25th of October, St. Crispin's day.

[7] —— *with advantages,*] Old men, notwithstanding the natural forgetfulness of age, shall remember *their feats of this day,* and remember to tell them *with advantage.* Age is commonly boastful, and inclined to magnify past acts and past times. JOHNSON.

[8] *From this day to the ending*—] It may be observed that we are apt to promise to ourselves a more lasting memory than the changing state of human things admits. This prediction is not verified; the feast of Crispin passes by without any mention of Agincourt. Late events obliterate the former: the civil wars have left in this nation scarcely any tradition of more ancient history.

[9] —— *gentle his condition:*] This day shall advance him to the rank of a gentleman. JOHNSON.

And gentlemen in England, now a-bed,
Shall think themselves accurs'd, they were not here;
And hold their manhoods cheap, while any speaks,
That fought with us upon Saint Crispin's day.[1]

Enter SALISBURY.

Sal. My sovereign lord, bestow yourself with speed:
The French are bravely in their battles set,
And will with all expedience charge on us.
K. Hen. All things are ready, if our minds be so.
West. Perish the man, whose mind is backward now!
K. Hen. Thou dost not wish more help from England, cousin?
West. God's will, my liege, 'would you and I alone,
Without more help, might fight this battle out!
K. Hen. Why, now thou hast unwish'd five thousand men;
Which likes me better, than to wish us one.—
You know your places: God be with you all!

Tucket. *Enter* MONTJOY.

Mont. Once more I come to know of thee, king Harry,
If for thy ransome thou wilt now compound,

King Henry V. inhibited any person but such as had a right by inheritance, or grant, to assume coats of arms, except those who fought with him at the battle of Agincourt; and, I think, these last were allowed the chief seats of honour at all feasts and publick meetings. TOLLET.

[1] —— *upon Saint Crispin's day.*] This speech, like many others of the declamatory kind, is too long. Had it been contracted to about half the number of lines, it might have gained force, and lost none of the sentiments. JOHNSON.

Before thy most assured overthrow:
For, certainly thou art so near the gulf,
Thou needs must be englutted. Besides, in mercy,
The constable desires thee—thou wilt mind[2]
Thy followers of repentance; that their souls
May make a peaceful and a sweet retire
From off these fields, where (wretches) their poor bodies
Must lie and fester.

K. Hen. Who hath sent thee now?

Mont. The Constable of France.

K. Hen. I pray thee, bear my former answer back;
Bid them achieve me, and then sell my bones.
Good God! why should they mock poor fellows thus?
The man, that once did sell the lion's skin
While the beast liv'd, was kill'd with hunting him.
A many of our bodies shall, no doubt,
Find native graves; upon the which, I trust,
Shall witness live in brass[3] of this day's work:
And those that leave their valiant bones in France,
Dying like men, though buried in your dunghills,
They shall be fam'd; for there the sun shall greet them,
And draw their honours reeking up to heaven;
Leaving their earthly parts to choke your clime,
The smell whereof shall breed a plague in France.
Mark then a bounding valour in our English;
That, being dead, like to the bullet's grazing,
Break out into a second course of mischief,
Killing in relapse of mortality.
Let me speak proudly;—Tell the Constable,
We are but warriors for the working-day:[4]

[2] —— *mind*] i. e. remind.

[3] —— *in brass* —] i. e. in brazen plates anciently let into tomb-stones.

[4] —— *warriors for the* working-day:] We are soldiers but coarsely dressed; we have not on our holiday apparel.

Our gayness, and our gilt,[5] are all besmirch'd
With rainy marching in the painful field;
There's not a piece of feather in our host,
(Good argument, I hope, we shall not fly,)
And time hath worn us into slovenry:
But, by the mass, our hearts are in the trim:
And my poor soldiers tell me—yet ere night
They'll be in fresher robes; or they will pluck
The gay new coats o'er the French soldiers' heads,
And turn them out of service. If they do this,
(As, if God please, they shall,) my ransome then
Will soon be levied. Herald, save thou thy labour;
Come thou no more for ransome, gentle herald;
They shall have none, I swear, but these my joints:
Which if they have as I will leave 'em to them,
Shall yield them little, tell the Constable.

Mont. I shall, king Harry. And so fare thee well:
Thou never shalt hear herald any more. [*Exit.*

K. Hen. I fear, thou'lt once more come again for ransome.

Enter the Duke of York.

York. My lord, most humbly on my knee I beg
The leading of the vaward.

K. Hen. Take it, brave York.—Now, soldiers, march away:—
And how thou pleasest, God, dispose the day!
[*Exeunt.*

[5] —— *our* gilt,] i. e. golden show, superficial gilding. Obsolete.

SCENE IV.

The Field of Battle.

Alarums: Excursions. Enter French *Soldier,* PISTOL, *and* Boy.

Pist. Yield, cur.

Fr. Sol. *Je pense, que vous estes le gentilhomme de bonne qualité.*

Pist. Quality, call you me?—Construe me, art thou a gentleman? What is thy name? discuss.

Fr. Sol. *O seigneur Dieu!*

Pist. O, signieur Dew should be a gentleman:—
Perpend my words, O signieur Dew, and mark;—
O signieur Dew, thou diest on point of fox,[6]
Except, O signieur, thou do give to me
Egregious ransome.

Fr. Sol. *O, prennez misericorde! ayez pitié de moy!*

Pist. Moy shall not serve, I will have forty moys;
For I will fetch thy rim out at thy throat,
In drops of crimson blood.

Fr. Sol. *Est il impossible d'eschapper la force de ton brass?*

Pist. Brass, cur!
Thou damned and luxurious mountain goat,[7]
Offer'st me brass?

Fr. Sol. *O pardonnez moy!*

Pist. Say'st thou me so? is that a ton of moys?[8]
Come hither, boy; Ask me this slave in French,
What is his name.

Boy. *Escoutez; Comment estes vous appellé?*

[6] —— *thou diest on point of* fox,] *Fox* is an old cant word for a sword.

[7] —— luxurious *mountain goat,*] *Luxurious* means *lascivious.*

[8] —— *a ton of* moys?] *Moy* is a piece of money; whence *moi d'or,* or *moi* of gold.

Fr. Sol. *Monsieur le Fer.*

Boy. He says, his name is—master Fer.

Pist. Master Fer! I'll fer him, and firk him,[9] and ferret him:—discuss the same in French unto him.

Boy. I do not know the French for fer, and ferret, and firk.

Pist. Bid him prepare, for I will cut his throat.

Fr. Sol. *Que dit-il, monsieur?*

Boy. *Il me commande de vous dire que vous faites vous prest; car ce soldat icy est disposé tout à cette heure de couper vostre gorge.*

Pist. Ouy, couper gorge, par ma foy, pesant,
Unless thou give me crowns, brave crowns;
Or mangled shalt thou be by this my sword.

Fr. Sol. *O, je vous supplie pour l'amour de Dieu, me pardonner! Je suis gentilhomme de bonne maison; gardez ma vie, & je vous donneray deux cents escus.*

Pist. What are his words?

Boy. He prays you to save his life: he is a gentleman of a good house; and, for his ransome, he will give you two hundred crowns.

Pist. Tell him,—my fury shall abate, and I
The crowns will take.

Fr. Sol. *Petit monsieur, que dit-il?*

Boy. *Encore qu'il est contre son jurement, de pardonner aucun prisonnier; neantmoins, pour les escus que vous l'avez promis, il est content de vous donner la liberté, le franchisement.*

Fr. Sol. *Sur mes genoux, je vous donne mille remerciemens: & je m'estime heureux que je suis tombé entre les mains d'un chevalier, je pense, le plus brave, valiant, & tres distingué seigneur d'Angleterre.*

Pist. Expound unto me, boy.

[9] —— *and* firk *him,*] The word *firk* is so variously used by the old writers, that it is almost impossible to ascertain its precise meaning. On this occasion it may mean to *chastise.*

Boy. He gives you, upon his knees, a thousand thanks: and he esteems himself happy that he hath fallen into the hands of (as he thinks) the most brave, valorous, and thrice-worthy signieur of England.

Pist. As I suck blood, I will some mercy show.—Follow me, cur. [*Exit* PISTOL.

Boy. *Suivez vous le grand capitaine.*

[*Exit* French *Soldier.*

I did never know so full a voice issue from so empty a heart: but the saying is true,—the empty vessel makes the greatest sound. Bardolph, and Nym, had ten times more valour than this roaring devil i'the old play, that every one may pare his nails with a wooden dagger; and they are both hanged; and so would this be, if he durst steal any thing adventurously. I must stay with the lackeys, with the luggage of our camp: the French might have a good prey of us, if he knew of it; for there is none to guard it, but boys. [*Exit.*

SCENE V.

Another Part of the Field of Battle.

Alarums. Enter Dauphin, ORLEANS, BOURBON, Constable, RAMBURES, *and Others.*

Con. *O diable?*

Orl. *O seigneur!—le jour est perdu, tout est perdu!*

Dau. *Mort de ma vie!* all is confounded, all!
Reproach and everlasting shame
Sits mocking in our plumes.—*O meschante fortune!*—
Do not run away. [*A short Alarum.*

Con. Why, all our ranks are broke.

Dau. O perdurable shame![1]—let's stab ourselves.

[1] *O* perdurable *shame!*] *Perdurable* is lasting.

Be these the wretches that we play'd at dice for?
Orl. Is this the king we sent to for his ransome?
Bour. Shame, and eternal shame, nothing but shame!
Let us die instant: Once more back again;
And he that will not follow Bourbon now,
Let him go hence, and, with his cap in hand,
Like a base pander, hold the chamber-door,
Whilst by a slave, no gentler[2] than my dog,
His fairest daughter is contaminate.
Con. Disorder, that hath spoil'd us, friend us now!
Let us, in heaps, go offer up our lives
Unto these English, or else die with fame.
Orl. We are enough, yet living in the field,
To smother up the English in our throngs,
If any order might be thought upon.
Bour. The devil take order now! I'll to the throng;
Let life be short; else, shame will be too long.
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE VI.

Another Part of the Field.

Alarums. *Enter King* HENRY *and Forces*; EXETER, *and Others.*

K. Hen. Well have we done, thrice-valiant countrymen:
But all's not done, yet keep the French the field.
Exe. The duke of York commends him to your majesty.
K. Hen. Lives he, good uncle? thrice, within this hour,
I saw him down; thrice up again, and fighting;

[2] —— *no* gentler —] Who has no more *gentility*.

From helmet to the spur, all blood he was:
Exe. In which array, (brave soldier,) doth he lie,
Larding the plain: and by his bloody side,
(Yoke-fellow to his honour-owing wounds,)
The noble earl of Suffolk also lies.
Suffolk first died: and York, all haggled over,
Comes to him, where in gore he lay insteep'd,
And takes him by the beard; kisses the gashes,
That bloodily did yawn upon his face;
And cries aloud,—*Tarry, dear cousin Suffolk!*
My soul shall thine keep company to heaven:
Tarry, sweet soul, for mine, then fly a-breast;
As, in this glorious and well-foughten field,
We kept together in our chivalry!
Upon these words I came, and cheer'd him up:
He smil'd me in the face, raught[3] me his hand,
And, with a feeble gripe, says,—*Dear my lord,*
Commend my service to my sovereign.
So did he turn, and over Suffolk's neck
He threw his wounded arm, and kiss'd his lips;
And so, espous'd to death, with blood he seal'd
A testament of noble-ending love.
The pretty and sweet manner of it forc'd
Those waters from me, which I would have stopp'd;
But I had not so much of man in me,
But all my mother came into mine eyes,
And gave me up to tears.
K. Hen. I blame you not;
For, hearing this, I must perforce compound
With mistful eyes, or they will issue too.—
[*Alarum.*
But, hark! what new alarum is this same?—
The French have reinforc'd their scatter'd men:—
Then every soldier kill his prisoners;
Give the word through. [*Exeunt.*

[3] —— *raught* —] i. e. reached.

SCENE VII.

Another Part of the Field.

Alarums. Enter FLUELLEN *and* GOWER.

Flu. Kill the poys and the luggage! 'tis expressly against the law of arms: 'tis as arrant a piece of knavery, mark you now, as can be offered, in the 'orld: In your conscience now, is it not?

Gow. 'Tis certain, there's not a boy left alive; and the cowardly rascals, that ran from the battle, have done this slaughter: besides, they have burned and carried away all that was in the king's tent; wherefore the king, most worthily, hath caused every soldier to cut his prisoner's throat. O, 'tis a gallant king!

Flu. Ay, he was porn at Monmouth, captain Gower: What call you the town's name, where Alexander the pig was born.

Gow. Alexander the great.

Flu. Why, I pray you, is not pig, great? The pig, or the great, or the mighty, or the huge, or the magnanimous, are all one reckonings, save the phrase is a little variations.

Gow. I think, Alexander the great was born in Macedon; his father was called—Philip of Macedon, as I take it.

Flu. I think, it is in Macedon, where Alexander is porn. I tell you, captain,—If you look in the maps of the 'orld, I warrant, you shall find, in the comparisons between Macedon and Monmouth, that the situations, look you, is both alike. There is a river in Macedon; and there is also moreover a river at Monmouth: it is called Wye, at Monmouth; but it is out of my prains, what is the name of the other river; but 'tis all one, 'tis so like as my fingers is to

my fingers, and there is salmons in both. If you mark Alexander's life well, Harry of Monmouth's life is come after it indifferent well; for there is figures in all things. Alexander (God knows, and you know,) in his rages, and his furies, and his wraths, and his cholers, and his moods, and his displeasures, and his indignations, and also being a little intoxicates in his prains, did, in his ales and his angers, look you, kill his pest friend, Clytus.

Gow. Our king is not like him in that; he never killed any of his friends.

Flu. It is not well done, mark you now, to take tales out of my mouth, ere it is made an end and finished. I speak but in the figures and comparisons of it: As Alexander is kill his friend Clytus, being in his ales and his cups; so also Harry Monmouth, being in his right wits and his goot judgments, is turn away the fat knight[4] with the great pelly-doublet: he was full of jests, and gipes, and knaveries, and mocks; I am forget his name.

Gow. Sir John Falstaff.

Flu. That is he: I can tell you, there is goot men born at Monmouth.

Gow. Here comes his majesty.

Alarum. Enter King HENRY, *with a Part of the* English *Forces*; WARWICK, GLOSTER, EXETER, *and Others.*

K. Hen. I was not angry since I came to France
Until this instant.—Take a trumpet, herald;
Ride thou unto the horsemen on yon hill;
If they will fight with us, bid them come down,
Or void the field; they do offend our sight:

[4] —— *the fat knight* —] This is the last time that Falstaff can make sport. The poet was loath to part with him, and has continued his memory as long as he could.

If they'll do neither, we will come to them;
And make them skirr away, as swift as stones
Enforced from the old Assyrian slings:
Besides, we'll cut the throats of those we have;
And not a man of them, that we shall take,
Shall taste our mercy:—Go, and tell them so.

Enter MONTJOY.

Exe. Here comes the herald of the French, my liege.
Glo. His eyes are humbler than they us'd to be.
K. Hen. How now! what means this, herald? know'st thou not,
That I have fin'd these bones of mine for ransome?
Com'st thou again for ransome?
Mont. No, great king:
I come to thee for charitable licence,
That we may wander o'er this bloody field,
To book our dead, and then to bury them;
To sort our nobles from our common men;
For many of our princes (woe the while!)
Lie drown'd and soak'd in mercenary blood;
(So do our vulgar drench their peasant limbs
In blood of princes;) and their wounded steeds
Fret fetlock deep in gore, and, with wild rage,
Yerk out their armed heels at their dead masters,
Killing them twice. O, give us leave, great king,
To view the field in safety, and dispose
Of their dead bodies.
K. Hen. I tell thee truly, herald,
I know not, if the day be ours, or no;
For yet a many of your horsemen peer,
And gallop o'er the field.
Mont. The day is yours.
K. Hen. Praised be God, and not our strength, for it!—
What is this castle call'd, that stands hard by?
Mont. They call it—Agincourt.

K. Hen. Then call we this—the field of Agincourt,
Fought on the day of Crispin Crispianus.

Flu. Your grandfather of famous memory, an't please your majesty, and your great-uncle Edward the plack prince of Wales, as I have read in the chronicles, fought a most prave pattle here in France.

K. Hen. They did, Fluellen.

Flu. Your majesty says very true: If your majesties is remembered of it, the Welshman did goot service in a garden where leeks did grow, wearing leeks in their Monmouth caps; which, your majesty knows, to this hour is an honourable padge of the service; and, I do believe, your majesty takes no scorn to wear the leek upon Saint Tavy's day.

K. Hen. I wear it for a memorable honour:
For I am Welsh, you know, good countryman.

Flu. All the water in Wye cannot wash your majesty's Welsh plood out of your pody, I can tell you that: Got pless it and preserve it, as long as it pleases his grace, and his majesty too!

K. Hen. Thanks, good my countryman.

Flu. By Cheshu, I am your majesty's countryman, I care not who know it; I will confess it to all the 'orld: I need not to be ashamed of your majesty, praised be God, so long as your majesty is an honest man.

K. Hen. God keep me so!—Our heralds go with him;
Bring me just notice of the numbers dead
On both our parts.—Call yonder fellow hither.

[*Points to* WILLIAMS. *Exeunt* MONTJOY *and Others.*

Exe. Soldier, you must come to the king.

K. Hen. Soldier, why wear'st thou that glove in thy cap?

Will. An't please your majesty, 'tis the gage of one that I should fight withal, if he be alive.

K. Hen. An Englishman?

Will. An't please your majesty, a rascal, that swaggered with me last night: who, if 'a live, and ever dare to challenge this glove, I have sworn to take him a box o'the ear: or, if I can see my glove in his cap, (which he swore, as he was a soldier, he would wear, if alive,) I will strike it out soundly.

K. Hen. What think you, captain Fluellen? is it fit this soldier keep his oath?

Flu. He is a craven and a villain else, an't please your majesty, in my conscience.

K. Hen. It may be, his enemy is a gentleman of great sort,[5] quite from the answer of his degree.[6]

Flu. Though he be as goot a gentleman as the tevil is, as Lucifer and Belzebub himself, it is necessary, look your grace, that he keep his vow and his oath: if he be perjured, see you now, his reputation is as arrant a villain, and a Jack-sauce, as ever his plack shoe trod upon Got's ground and his earth, in my conscience, la.

K. Hen. Then keep thy vow, sirrah, when thou meet'st the fellow.

Will. So I will, my liege, as I live.

K. Hen. Who servest thou under?

Will. Under captain Gower, my liege.

Flu. Gower is a goot captain; and is good knowledge and literature in the wars.

K. Hen. Call him hither to me, soldier.

Will. I will, my liege. [*Exit.*

K. Hen. Here, Fluellen; wear thou this favour for me, and stick it in thy cap: When Alençon and myself were down together, I plucked this glove from his helm; if any man challenge this, he is a friend to

[5] ——*great sort,*] High rank.

[6] ——*quite from the answer of his degree.*] A man of such station as is not bound to hazard his person to *answer* to a challenge from one of the soldier's *low degree.*

Alençon and an enemy to our person; if thou encounter any such, apprehend him, an thou dost love me.

Flu. Your grace does me as great honours, as can be desired in the hearts of his subjects: I would fain see the man, that has but two legs, that shall find himself aggriefed at this glove, that is all; but I would fain see it once; an please Got of his grace, that I might see it.

K. Hen. Knowest thou Gower?

Flu. He is my dear friend, an please you.

K. Hen. Pray thee, go seek him, and bring him to my tent.

Flu. I will fetch him. [*Exit.*

K. Hen. My lord of Warwick,—and my brother Gloster,
Follow Fluellen closely at the heels:
The glove, which I have given him for a favour,
May, haply, purchase him a box o'the ear;
It is the soldier's; I, by bargain, should
Wear it myself. Follow, good cousin Warwick:
If that the soldier strike him, (as, I judge
By his blunt bearing, he will keep his word,)
Some sudden mischief may arise of it;
For I do know Fluellen valiant,
And, touch'd with choler, hot as gunpowder,
And quickly will return an injury:
Follow, and see there be no harm between them.—
Go you with me, uncle of Exeter. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE VIII.

Before King Henry's *Pavilion.*

Enter GOWER *and* WILLIAMS.

Will. I warrant, it is to knight you, captain.

Enter FLUELLEN.

Flu. Got's will and his pleasure, captain, I peseech you now, come apace to the king: there is more goot toward you, peradventure, than is in your knowledge to dream of.

Will. Sir, know you this glove?

Flu. Know the glove? I know, the glove is a glove.

Will. I know this; and thus I challenge it.

[*Strikes him.*

Flu. 'Sblud, an arrant traitor, as any's in the universal 'orld, or in France, or in England.

Gow. How now, sir? you villain!

Will. Do you think I'll be forsworn?

Flu. Stand away, captain Gower; I will give treason his payment into plows, I warrant you.

Will. I am no traitor.

Flu. That's a lie in thy throat.—I charge you in his majesty's name, apprehend him; he's a friend of the duke Alençon's.

Enter WARWICK *and* GLOSTER.

War. How now, how now! what's the matter?

Flu. My lord of Warwick, here is (praised be Got for it!) a most contagious treason come to light, look you, as you shall desire in a summer's day. Here is his majesty.

Enter King HENRY *and* EXETER.

K. Hen. How now! what's the matter?

Flu. My liege, here is a villain, and a traitor, that, look your grace, has struck the glove which your majesty is take out of the helmet of Alençon.

Will. My liege, this was my glove; here is the fellow of it: and he, that I gave it to in change, promised to wear it in his cap; I promised to strike

him, if he did: I met this man with my glove in his cap, and I have been as good as my word.

Flu. Your majesty hear now, (saving your majesty's manhood,) what an arrant, rascally, beggarly, lowsy knave it is: I hope, your majesty is pear me testimony, and witness, and avouchments, that this is the glove of Alençon, that your majesty is give me, in your conscience now.

K. Hen. Give me thy glove, soldier; Look, here is the fellow of it. 'Twas I, indeed, thou promised'st to strike; and thou hast given me most bitter terms.

Flu. An please your majesty, let his neck answer for it, if there is any martial law in the 'orld.

K. Hen. How canst thou make me satisfaction?

Will. All offences, my liege, come from the heart: never came any from mine, that might offend your majesty.

K. Hen. It was ourself thou didst abuse.

Will. Your majesty came not like yourself: you appeared to me but as a common man; witness the night, your garments, your lowliness; and what your highness suffered under that shape, I beseech you, take it for your own fault, and not mine: for had you been as I took you for, I made no offence; therefore, I beseech your highness, pardon me.

K. Hen. Here, uncle Exeter, fill this glove with crowns,
And give it to this fellow.—Keep it, fellow;
And wear it for an honour in thy cap,
Till I do challenge it.—Give him the crowns:—
And, captain, you must needs be friends with him.

Flu. By this day and this light, the fellow has mettle enough in his pelly:—Hold, there is twelve pence for you, and I pray you to serve Got, and keep you out of prawls, and prabbles, and quarrels, and dissensions, and, I warrant you, it is the petter for you.

Will. I will none of your money.

Flu. It is with a goot will; I can tell you, it will serve you to mend your shoes: Come, wherefore should you be so pashful? your shoes is not so goot: 'tis a goot silling, I warrant you, or I will change it.

Enter an English Herald.

K. Hen. Now, herald; are the dead number'd?

Her. Here is the number of the slaughter'd French. [*Delivers a paper.*

K. Hen. What prisoners of good sort are taken, uncle?

Exe. Charles duke of Orleans, nephew to the king;
John duke of Bourbon, and lord Bouciqualt:
Of other lords, and barons, knights, and 'squires,
Full fifteen hundred, besides common men.

K. Hen. This note doth tell me of ten thousand French,
That in the field lie slain: of princes, in this number,
And nobles bearing banners, there lie dead
One hundred twenty-six: added to these,
Of knights, esquires, and gallant gentlemen,
Eight thousand and four hundred; of the which,
Five hundred were but yesterday dubb'd knights:
So that, in these ten thousand they have lost,
There are but sixteen hundred mercenaries;
The rest are—princes, barons, lords, knights, 'squires,
And gentlemen of blood and quality.
The names of those their nobles that lie dead,—
Charles De-la-bret, high constable of France;
Jaques of Chatillon, admiral of France;
The master of the cross-bows, lord Rambures;
Great-master of France, the brave sir Guischard Dauphin;
John duke of Alençon; Antony duke of Brabant,
The brother to the duke of Burgundy;

And Edward duke of Bar: of lusty earls,
Grandpré, and Roussi, Fauconberg, and Foix,
Beaumont, and Marle, Vaudemont, and Lestrale.
Here was a royal fellowship of death!——
Where is the number of our English dead?
[Herald *presents another Paper.*
Edward the duke of York, the earl of Suffolk,
Sir Richard Ketly, Davy Gam, esquire:
None else of name; and, of all other men,
But five and twenty. O God, thy arm was here,
And not to us, but to thy arm alone,
Ascribe we all.—When, without stratagem,
But in plain shock, and even play of battle,
Was ever known so great and little loss,
On one part and on the other?—Take it, God,
For it is only thine!

Exe. 'Tis wonderful!

K. Hen. Come, go we in procession to the village:
And be it death proclaimed through our host,
To boast of this, or take that praise from God,
Which is his only.

Flu. Is it not lawful, an please your majesty, to tell how many is killed?

K. Hen. Yes, captain; but with this acknowledgment,
That God fought for us.

Flu. Yes, my conscience, he did us great goot.

K. Hen. Do we all holy rites;
Let there be sung *Non nobis*, and *Te Deum*.
The dead with charity enclos'd in clay,
We'll then to Calais; and to England then;
Where ne'er from France arriv'd more happy men.
[*Exeunt.*

ACT V.

Enter CHORUS.

Chor. Vouchsafe to those that have not read the
story,
That I may prompt them: and of such as have,
I humbly pray them to admit the excuse
Of time, of numbers, and due course of things,
Which cannot in their huge and proper life
Be here presented. Now we bear the king
Toward Calais: grant him there; there seen,
Heave him away upon your winged thoughts,
Athwart the sea: Behold, the English beach
Pales in the flood with men, with wives, and boys,
Whose shouts and claps out-voice the deep-mouth'd
sea,
Which, like a mighty whiffler[7] 'fore the king,
Seems to prepare his way: so let him land;
And, solemnly, see him set on to London.
So swift a pace hath thought, that even now
You may imagine him upon Blackheath:
Where that his lords desire him, to have borne[8]
His bruised helmet, and his bended sword,
Before him, through the city: he forbids it,
Being free from vainness and self-glorious pride;
Giving full trophy,[9] signal, and ostent,
Quite from himself, to God. But now behold,

[7] —— *a mighty* whiffler—] An officer who walks first in processions, or before persons in high stations, on occasions of ceremony. The name is still retained in London, and there is an officer so called that walks before their companies at times of publick solemnity. It seems a corruption from the French word *huissier*.

[8] —— *to* have *borne*, &c.] The construction is, to have his bruised helmet, &c. borne before him through the city: i. e. to order it to be borne.

[9] *Giving full trophy,*] Transferring all the honours of conquest, all trophies, tokens, and shows, from himself to God.

In the quick forge and workinghouse of thought,
How London doth pour out her citizens!
The mayor, and all his brethren, in best sort,—
Like to the senators of the antique Rome,
With the plebeians swarming at their heels,—
Go forth, and fetch their conquering Cæsar in:
As, by a lower but by loving likelihood,[1]
Were now the general of our gracious empress[2]
(As, in good time, he may,) from Ireland coming,
Bringing rebellion broached[3] on his sword,
How many would the peaceful city quit,
To welcome him? much more, and much more cause,
Did they this Harry. Now in London place him;
(As yet the lamentation of the French
Invites the king of England's stay at home:
The emperor's coming in behalf of France,
To order peace between them;) and omit
All the occurrences, whatever chanc'd,
Till Harry's back-return again to France:
There must we bring him; and myself have play'd
The interim, by remembering you—'tis past.
Then brook abridgement; and your eyes advance
After your thoughts, straight back again to France.
[*Exit.*

SCENE I.

France. *An* English *Court of Guard.*

Enter FLUELLEN *and* GOWER.

Gow. Nay, that's right; but why wear you your leek to-day? Saint Davy's day is past.

Flu. There is occasions and causes why and

[1] —— *Likelihood,*] Likelihood for similitude. WARBURTON.

[2] —— *the general of our gracious empress*—] The earl of Essex, in the reign of Queen Elizabeth.

[3] *Bringing rebellion* broached—] Spitted, transfixed.

wherefore in all things: I will tell you, as my friend, captain Gower; The rascally, scald, beggarly, lowsy, pragging knave, Pistol,—which you and yourself, and all the 'orld, know to be no petter than a fellow, look you now, of no merits,—he is come to me, and prings me pread and salt yesterday, look you, and bid me eat my leek: it was in a place where I could not breed no contentions with him; but I will be so pold as to wear it in my cap till I see him once again, and then I will tell him a little piece of my desires.

Enter PISTOL.

Gow. Why, here he comes, swelling like a turkey-cock.

Flu. 'Tis no matter for his swellings, nor his turkey-cocks.—Got pless you, ancient Pistol! you scurvy, lowsy knave, Got pless you!

Pist. Ha! art thou Bedlam? dost thou thirst, base Trojan,
To have me fold up Parca's fatal web?[4]
Hence! I am qualmish at the smell of leek.

Flu. I peseech you heartily, scurvy lowsy knave, at my desires, and my requests, and my petitions, to eat, look you, this leek; because, look you, you do not love it, nor your affections, and your appetites, and your digestions, does not agree with it, I would desire you to eat it.

Pist. Not for Cadwallader, and all his goats.

Flu. There is one goat for you. [*Strikes him.*] Will you be so goot, scald knave, as eat it?

Pist. Base Trojan, thou shalt die.

Flu. You say very true, scald knave, when Got's will is: I will desire you to live in the mean time, and eat your victuals; come, there is sauce for it.

[4] *To have me fold up,* &c.] Dost thou desire to have me put thee to death?

[*Striking him again.*] You called me yesterday, mountain-squire; but I will make you to-day a squire of low degree. I pray you, fall to; if you can mock a leek, you can eat a leek.

Gow. Enough, captain; you have astonished him.[5]

Flu. I say, I will make him eat some part of my leek, or I will peat his pate four days:—Pite, I pray you; it is goot for your green wound, and your ploody coxcomb.

Pist. Must I bite?

Flu. Yes, certainly; and out of doubt, and out of questions too, and ambiguities.

Pist. By this leek, I will most horribly revenge; I eat, and eke I swear—.

Flu. Eat, I pray you: Will you have some more sauce to your leek? there is not enough leek to swear by.

Pist. Quiet thy cudgel; thou dost see, I eat.

Flu. Much goot do you, scald knave, heartily. Nay, 'pray you, throw none away; the skin is goot for your proken coxcomb. When you take occasions to see leeks hereafter, I pray you, mock at them; that is all.

Pist. Good.

Flu. Ay, leeks is goot:—Hold you, there is a groat to heal your pate.

Pist. Me a groat!

Flu. Yes, verily, and in truth, you shall take it; or I have another leek in my pocket, which you shall eat.

Pist. I take thy groat, in earnest of revenge.

Flu. If I owe you any thing, I will pay you in cudgels; you shall be a woodmonger, and buy nothing of me but cudgels. God be wi' you, and keep you, and heal your pate. [*Exit.*

[5] —— astonished *him.*] That is, you have stunned him with the blow.

Pist. All hell shall stir for this.

Gow. Go, go; you are a counterfeit cowardly knave. Will you mock at an ancient tradition,—begun upon an honourable respect, and worn as a memorable trophy of predeceased valour,—and dare not avouch in your deeds any of your words? I have seen you gleeking[6] and galling at this gentleman twice or thrice. You thought, because he could not speak English in the native garb, he could not therefore handle an English cudgel: you find it otherwise; and, henceforth, let a Welsh correction teach you a good English condition.[7] Fare ye well. [*Exit.*

Pist. Doth fortune play the huswife[8] with me now?
News have I, that my Nell is dead i'the spital
Of malady of France;
And there my rendezvous is quite cut off.
Old I do wax; and from my weary limbs
Honour is cudgell'd. Well, bawd will I turn,
And something lean to cutpurse of quick hand.
To England will I steal, and there I'll steal:
And patches will I get unto these scars,
And swear, I got them in the Gallia wars. [*Exit.*[9]

[6] —— *gleeking*—] i. e. scoffing, sneering. *Gleek* was a game at cards.

[7] —— *English* condition.] *Condition* is temper, disposition of mind.

[8] *Doth fortune play the* huswife—] That is, the *jilt*. *Huswife* is here used in an ill sense.

[9] The comick scenes of *The History of Henry the Fourth* and *Fifth* are now at an end, and all the comick personages are now dismissed. Falstaff and Mrs. Quickly are dead; Nym and Bardolph are hanged; Gadshill was lost immediately after the robbery; Poins and Peto have vanished since, one knows not how; and Pistol is now beaten into obscurity. I believe every reader regrets their departure. JOHNSON.

SCENE II.

Troyes *in* Champagne. *An Apartment in the* French *King's Palace.*

Enter, at one Door, King HENRY, BEDFORD, GLOSTER, EXETER, WARWICK, WESTMORELAND, *and other Lords; at another, the* French *King, Queen* ISABEL, *the Princess* KATHARINE, *Lords, Ladies, &c. the Duke of* BURGUNDY, *and his Train.*

K. Hen. Peace to this meeting, wherefore we are met!
Unto our brother France,—and to our sister,
Health and fair time of day:—joy and good wishes
To our most fair and princely cousin Katharine;
And (as a branch and member of this royalty,
By whom this great assembly is contriv'd,)
We do salute you, duke of Burgundy;—
And, princes French, and peers, health to you all!

Fr. King. Right joyous are we to behold your face,
Most worthy brother England; fairly met:—
So are you, princes English, every one.

Q. Isa. So happy be the issue, brother England,
Of this good day, and of this gracious meeting,
As we are now glad to behold your eyes;
Your eyes, which hitherto have borne in them
Against the French, that met them in their bent,
The fatal balls of murdering basilisks:
The venom of such looks, we fairly hope,
Have lost their quality; and that this day
Shall change all griefs, and quarrels, into love.

K. Hen. To cry amen to that, thus we appear.

Q. Isa. You English princes all, I do salute you.

Bur. My duty to you both, on equal love,

Great kings of France and England! That I have
labour'd
With all my wits, my pains, and strong endeavours,
To bring your most imperial majesties
Unto this bar[1] and royal interview,
Your mightiness on both parts best can witness.
Since then my office hath so far prevail'd,
That, face to face, and royal eye to eye,
You have congreeted; let it not disgrace me,
If I demand, before this royal view,
What rub, or what impediment, there is,
Why that the naked, poor, and mangled peace,
Dear nurse of arts, plenties, and joyful births,
Should not, in this best garden of the world,
Our fertile France, put up her lovely visage?
Alas! she hath from France too long been chas'd;
And all her husbandry doth lie on heaps,
Corrupting in its own fertility.
Her vine, the merry cheerer of the heart,
Unpruned dies: her hedges even-pleached,—
Like prisoners wildly over-grown with hair,
Put forth disorder'd twigs: her fallow leas
The darnel, hemlock, and rank fumitory,
Doth root upon; while that the coulter rusts,
That should deracinate[2] such savagery:
The even mead, that erst brought sweetly forth
The freckled cowslip, burnet, and green clover,
Wanting the scythe, all uncorrected, rank,
Conceives by idleness; and nothing teems,
But hateful docks, rough thistles, kecksies, burs,
Losing both beauty and utility.
And as our vineyards, fallows, meads, and hedges,
Defective in their natures, grow to wildness;
Even so our houses, and ourselves, and children,
Have lost, or do not learn, for want of time,

[1] *Unto this* bar—] To this *barrier;* to this place of congress.
[2] —— *deracinate*—] To *deracinate* is to force up by the roots.

The sciences that should become our country;
But grow, like savages,—as soldiers will,
That nothing do but meditate on blood,—
To swearing, and stern looks, diffus'd attire,[3]
And every thing that seems unnatural.
Which to reduce into our former favour,[4]
You are assembled: and my speech entreats,
That I may know the let, why gentle peace
Should not expel these inconveniencies,
And bless us with her former qualities.

K. Hen. If, duke of Burgundy, you would the peace,
Whose want gives growth to the imperfections
Which you have cited, you must buy that peace
With full accord to all our just demands;
Whose tenours and particular effects
You have, enschedul'd briefly, in your hands.

Bur. The king hath heard them; to the which, as yet,
There is no answer made.

K. Hen. Well then, the peace,
Which you before so urg'd, lies in his answer.

Fr. King. I have but with a cursorary eye
O'er-glanc'd the articles: pleaseth your grace
To appoint some of your council presently
To sit with us once more, with better heed
To re-survey them, we will, suddenly,
Pass our accept, and peremptory answer.[5]

K. Hen. Brother, we shall.—Go, uncle Exeter,—

[3] —— diffus'd *attire,*] *Diffus'd,* for extravagant. The military habit of those times was extremely so.

[4] ——*former* favour,] Former *appearance.*

[5] ——— *we will, suddenly,*
Pass our *accept, and peremptory answer.*] i. e. we will pass our acceptance of what we approve, and we will pass a peremptory answer to the rest. Politeness might forbid his saying, we will pass a denial, but his own dignity required more time for deliberation.

And brother Clarence,—and you, brother Gloster,—
Warwick,—and Huntington,—go with the king:
And take with you free power, to ratify,
Augment, or alter, as your wisdoms best
Shall see advantageable for our dignity,
Any thing in, or out of, our demands;
And we'll consign thereto.—Will you, fair sister,
Go with the princes, or stay here with us?

Q. Isa. Our gracious brother, I will go with them;
Haply, a woman's voice may do some good,
When articles, too nicely urg'd, be stood on.

K. Hen. Yet leave our cousin Katharine here with us;
She is our capital demand, compris'd
Within the fore-rank of our articles.

Q. Isab. She hath good leave.

[*Exeunt all but* HENRY, KATHARINE, *and her Gentlewoman.*

K. Hen. Fair Katharine, and most fair!
Will you vouchsafe to teach a soldier terms,
Such as will enter at a lady's ear,
And plead his love-suit to her gentle heart?

Kath. Your majesty shall mock at me; I cannot speak your England.

K. Hen. O fair Katharine, if you will love me soundly with your French heart, I will be glad to hear you confess it brokenly with your English tongue. Do you like me, Kate?

Kath. *Pardonnez moy*, I cannot tell vat is—like me.

K. Hen. An angel is like you, Kate; and you are like an angel.

Kath. *Que dit-il? que je suis semblable à les anges?*

Alice. *Ouy, vrayment, (sauf vostre grace) ainsi dit il.*

K. Hen. I said so, dear Katharine; and I must not blush to affirm it.

Kath. *O bon Dieu! les langues des hommes sont pleines des tromperies.*

K. Hen. What says she, fair one? that the tongues of men are full of deceits?

Alice. *Ouy*; dat de tongues of de mans is be full of deceits: dat is de princess.

K. Hen. The princess is the better English-woman. I'faith, Kate, my wooing is fit for thy understanding: I am glad, thou can'st speak no better English; for, if thou couldst, thou wouldst find me such a plain king,[6] that thou would'st think, I had sold my farm to buy my crown. I know no ways to mince it in love, but directly to say—I love you: then, if you urge me further than to say—Do you in faith? I wear out my suit. Give me your answer; i'faith, do; and so clap hands and a bargain: How say you, lady?

Kath. *Sauf vostre honneur*, me understand well.

K. Hen. Marry, if you would put me to verses, or to dance for your sake, Kate, why you undid me: for the one, I have neither words nor measure; and for the other, I have no strength in measure,[7] yet a reasonable measure in strength. If I could win a

[6] —— *such a plain king,*] I know not why Shakspeare now gives the King nearly such a character as he made him formerly ridicule in Percy. This military grossness and unskilfulness in all the softer arts does not suit very well with the gaieties of his youth, with the general knowledge ascribed to him at his accession, or with the contemptuous message sent him by the Dauphin, who represents him as fitter for a ball-room than the field, and tells him that he is not *to revel into duchies*, or win provinces *with a nimble galliard*. The truth is, that the poet's matter failed him in the fifth Act, and he was glad to fill it up with whatever he could get; and not even Shakspeare can write well without a proper subject. It is a vain endeavour for the most skilful hand to cultivate barrenness, or to paint upon vacuity. JOHNSON.

[7] —— *no strength in* measure,] i. e. in dancing.

lady at leap-frog, or by vaulting into my saddle with my armour on my back, under the correction of bragging be it spoken, I should quickly leap into a wife. Or, if I might buffet for my love, or bound my horse for her favours, I could lay on like a butcher, and sit like a jack-an-apes, never off: but, before God, I cannot look greenly,[8] nor gasp out my eloquence, nor I have no cunning in protestation; only downright oaths, which I never use till urged, nor never break for urging. If thou canst love a fellow of this temper, Kate, whose face is not worth sun-burning, that never looks in his glass for love of any thing he sees there, let thine eye be thy cook. I speak to thee plain soldier: If thou canst love me for this, take me: if not, to say to thee—that I shall die, is true; but—for thy love, by the Lord, no; yet I love thee too. And while thou livest, dear Kate, take a fellow of plain and uncoined constancy;[9] for he perforce must do thee right, because he hath not the gift to woo in other places: for these fellows of infinite tongue, that can rhyme themselves into ladies' favours,—they do always reason themselves out again. What! a speaker is but a prater; a rhyme is but a ballad. A good leg will fall; a straight back will stoop; a black beard will turn white; a curled pate will grow bald; a fair face will wither; a full eye will wax hollow: but a good heart, Kate, is the sun and moon; or, rather, the sun, and not the moon; for it shines bright, and never changes, but keeps his course truly. If thou would have such a one, take me: And take me, take a soldier; take a soldier, take a king: And

[8] —— *look* greenly,] i. e. like a young lover, aukwardly.

[9] —— *take a fellow of plain and* uncoined *constancy*;] *Uncoined* constancy signifies *real* and *true* constancy, *unrefined* and *unadorned*. JOHNSON.

what sayest thou then to my love? speak, my fair, and fairly, I pray thee.

Kath. Is it possible dat I should love de enemy of France?

K. Hen. No; it is not possible, you should love the enemy of France, Kate: but, in loving me, you should love the friend of France; for I love France so well, that I will not part with a village of it; I will have it all mine: and, Kate, when France is mine, and I am yours, then yours is France, and you are mine.

Kath. I cannot tell vat is dat.

K. Hen. No, Kate? I will tell thee in French; which, I am sure, will hang upon my tongue like a new-married wife about her husband's neck, hardly to be shook off. *Quand j'ay la possession de France, & quand vous avez le possession de moi,* (let me see, what then? Saint Dennis be my speed!)—*donc vostre est France, & vous estes mienne.* It is as easy for me, Kate, to conquer the kingdom, as to speak so much more French: I shall never move thee in French, unless it be to laugh at me.

Kath. *Sauf vostre honneur, le François que vous parlez, est meilleur que l'Anglois lequel je parle.*

K. Hen. No, 'faith, is't not, Kate: but thy speaking of my tongue, and I thine, most truly falsely, must needs be granted to be much at one. But, Kate, dost thou understand thus much English? Canst thou love me?

Kath. I cannot tell.

K. Hen. Can any of your neighbours tell, Kate? I'll ask them. Come, I know, thou lovest me: and at night when you come into your closet, you'll question this gentlewoman about me; and I know, Kate, you will, to her, dispraise those parts in me, that you love with your heart: but, good Kate, mock me mercifully; the rather, gentle princess,

because I love thee cruelly. If ever thou be'st mine, Kate, (as I have a saving faith within me, tells me,—thou shalt,) I get thee with scambling, and thou must therefore needs prove a good soldier-breeder: Shall not thou and I, between Saint Dennis and Saint George, compound a boy, half French, half English, that shall go to Constantinople, and take the Turk by the beard? shall we not? what sayest thou, my fair flower-de-luce?

Kath. I do not know dat.

K. Hen. No; 'tis hereafter to know, but now to promise: do but now promise, Kate, you will endeavour for your French part of such a boy; and, for my English moiety, take the word of a king and a bachelor. How answer you, *la plus belle Katharine du monde, mon tres chere et divine deesse?*

Kath. Your *majesté* 'ave *fausse* French enough to deceive de most *sage damoiselle* dat is *en France*.

K. Hen. Now, fye upon my false French! By mine honour, in true English, I love thee, Kate: by which honour I dare not swear, thou lovest me; yet my blood begins to flatter me that thou dost, notwithstanding the poor and untempering effect[1] of my visage. Now beshrew my father's ambition! he was thinking of civil wars when he got me; therefore was I created with a stubborn outside, with an aspéct of iron, that, when I come to woo ladies, I fright them. But, in faith, Kate, the elder I wax, the better I shall appear: my comfort is, that old age, that ill layer-up of beauty, can do no more spoil upon my face: thou hast me, if thou hast me, at the worst; and thou shalt wear me, if thou wear me, better and better; And therefore tell me, most fair Katharine, will you have me? Put off your

[1] —— untempering *effect* —] The sense is, that you love me, notwithstanding my face has no power to *temper*, i. e. soften you to my purpose.

maiden blushes; avouch the thoughts of your heart with the looks of an empress; take me by the hand, and say—Harry of England, I am thine: which word thou shalt no sooner bless mine ear withal, but I will tell thee aloud—England is thine, Ireland is thine, France is thine, and Henry Plantagenet is thine; who, though I speak it before his face, if he be not fellow with the best king, thou shalt find the best king of good fellows. Come, your answer in broken musick; for thy voice is musick, and thy English broken: therefore, queen of all, Katharine, break thy mind to me in broken English, Wilt thou have me?

Kath. Dat is, as it shall please de *roy mon pere.*

K. Hen. Nay, it will please him well, Kate; it shall please him, Kate.

Kath. Den it shall also content me.

K. Hen. Upon that I will kiss your hand, and I call you—my queen.

Kath. *Laissez, mon seigneur, laissez, laissez: ma foy, je ne veux point que vous abbaissez vostre grandeur, en baisant la main d'une vostre indigne serviteure; excusez moy, je vous supplie, mon tres puissant seigneur.*

K. Hen. Then I will kiss your lips, Kate.

Kath. *Les dames, & damoiselles, pour estre baiseés devant leur nopces, il n'est pas le coûtume de France.*

K. Hen. Madam my interpreter, what says she?

Alice. Dat it is not be de fashion *pur les* ladies of France,—I cannot tell what is, *baiser, en* English.

K. Hen. To kiss.

Alice. Your majesty *entendre* bettre *que moy.*

K. Hen. It is not the fashion for the maids in France to kiss before they are married, would she say?

Alice. *Ouy, vrayment.*

K. Hen. O, Kate, nice customs curt'sy to great kings. Dear Kate, you and I cannot be confined within the weak list[2] of a country's fashion: we are the makers of manners, Kate; and the liberty that follows our places, stops the mouths of all find-faults; as I will do yours, for upholding the nice fashion of your country, in denying me a kiss: therefore, patiently, and yielding. [*Kissing her.*] You have witchcraft in your lips, Kate: there is more eloquence in a sugar touch of them, than in the tongues of the French council; and they should sooner persuade Harry of England, than a general petition of monarchs. Here comes your father.

Enter the French King *and* Queen, BURGUNDY, BEDFORD, GLOSTER, EXETER, WESTMORELAND, *and other* French *and* English *Lords.*

Bur. God save your majesty! my royal cousin, teach you our princess English?

K. Hen. I would have her learn, my fair cousin, how perfectly I love her; and that is good English.

Bur. Is she not apt?

K. Hen. Our tongue is rough, coz; and my condition is not smooth:[3] so that, having neither the voice nor the heart of flattery about me, I cannot so conjure up the spirit of love in her, that he will appear in his true likeness.

Bur. Pardon the frankness of my mirth,[4] if I answer you for that. If you would conjure in her you must make a circle: if conjure up love in her in his true likeness, he must appear naked, and blind:

[2] —— *weak* list —] i. e. slight barrier.

[3] —— *my* condition *is not smooth:*] *Condition* is temper.

[4] *Pardon the frankness of my mirth,*] We have here but a mean dialogue for princes; the merriment is very gross, and the sentiments are very worthless. JOHNSON.

Can you blame her then, being a maid yet rosed over with the virgin crimson of modesty, if she deny the appearance of a naked blind boy in her naked seeing self? It were, my lord, a hard condition for a maid to consign to.

K. Hen. Yet they do wink, and yield; as love is blind, and enforces.

Bur. They are then excused, my lord, when they see not what they do.

K. Hen. Then, good my lord, teach your cousin to consent to winking.

Bur. I will wink on her to consent, my lord, if you will teach her to know my meaning: for maids, well summered and warm kept, are like flies at Bartholomew-tide, blind, though they have their eyes; and then they will endure handling, which before would not abide looking on.

K. Hen. This moral[5] ties me over to time, and a hot summer; and so I will catch the fly, your cousin, in the latter end, and she must be blind too.

Bur. As love is, my lord, before it loves.

K. Hen. It is so; and you may, some of you, thank love for my blindness; who cannot see many a fair French city, for one fair French maid that stands in my way.

Fr. King. Yes, my lord, you see them perspectively, the cities turned into a maid; for they are all girdled with maiden walls, that war hath never entered.

K. Hen. Shall Kate be my wife?

Fr. King. So please you.

K. Hen. I am content, so the maiden cities you talk of, may wait on her: so the maid, that stood

[5] *This* moral —] That is, the application of this fable. The *moral* being the application of a fable, our author calls any application a *moral*.

in the way of my wish, shall show me the way to my will.

Fr. King. We have consented to all terms of reason.

K. Hen. Is't so, my lords of England?

West. The king hath granted every article:
His daughter, first; and then, in sequel, all,
According to their firm proposed natures.

Exe. Only, he hath not yet subscribed this:—Where your majesty demands,—That the king of France, having any occasion to write for matter of grant, shall name your highness in this form, and with this addition, in French,—*Notre cher tres filz Henry roy d'Angleterre, heretier de France*; and thus in Latin,—*Præclarissimus filius noster Henricus, rex Angliæ, & hæres Franciæ.*

Fr. King. Nor this I have not, brother, so denied,
But your request shall make me let it pass.

K. Hen. I pray you then, in love and dear alliance,
Let that one article rank with the rest:
And, thereupon, give me your daughter.

Fr. King. Take her, fair son; and from her blood raise up
Issue to me: that the contending kingdoms
Of France and England, whose very shores look pale
With envy of each other's happiness,
May cease their hatred; and this dear conjunction
Plant neighbourhood and christian-like accord
In their sweet bosoms, that never war advance
His bleeding sword 'twixt England and fair France.

All. Amen!

K. Hen. Now welcome, Kate:—and bear me witness all,
That here I kiss her as my sovereign queen.

[*Flourish.*

Q. Isa. God, the best maker of all marriages,

Which oft our stage hath shown; and, for their sake,
In your fair minds let this acceptance take.

[Exit.

[9] This play has many scenes of high dignity, and many of easy merriment. The character of the King is well supported, except in his courtship, where he has neither the vivacity of Hal, nor the grandeur of Henry. The humour of Pistol is very happily continued: his character has perhaps been the model of all the bullies that have yet appeared on the English stage.

The lines given to the Chorus have many admirers; but the truth is, that in them a little may be praised, and much must be forgiven; nor can it be easily discovered why the intelligence given by the Chorus is more necessary in this play than in many others where it is omitted. The great defect of this play is the emptiness and narrowness of the last Act, which a very little diligence might have easily avoided. JOHNSON.

Enter Fiends—

La Pucelle. *See! they forsake me.*—

Published by C. & J. Rivington London Dec 25. 1803.

KING HENRY VI.

PART I.*

* KING HENRY VI. PART I.] The historical transactions contained in this play, take in the compass of above thirty years. I must observe, however, that our author, in the three parts of *Henry VI.* has not been very precise to the date and disposition of his facts; but shuffled them, backwards and forwards, out of time. For instance; the lord Talbot is killed at the end of the fourth Act of this play, who in reality did not fall till the 13th of July, 1453: and *The Second Part of Henry VI.* opens with the marriage of the king, which was solemnized eight years before Talbot's death, in the year 1445. Again, in the Second Part, dame Eleanor Cobham is introduced to insult Queen Margaret; though her penance and banishment for sorcery happened three years before that princess came over to England. I could point out many other transgressions against history, as far as the order of time is concerned. Indeed, though there are several master-strokes in these three plays, which incontestibly betray the workmanship of Shakspeare; yet I am almost doubtful, whether they were entirely of his writing. And unless they were wrote by him very early, I should rather imagine them to have been brought to him as a director of the stage; and so have received some finishing beauties at his hand. An accurate observer will easily see, the diction of them is more obsolete, and the numbers more mean and prosaical, than in the generality of his genuine compositions. THEOBALD.

Having given my opinion more fully relative to these plays at the end of *The Third Part of King Henry VI.** it is *here* only necessary to apprize my reader what my hypothesis is, that he may be the better enabled, as he proceeds, to judge concerning its probability. Like many others, I was long struck with the many evident *Shakspearianisms* in these plays, which appeared to me to carry such decisive weight, that I could scarcely bring myself to examine with attention any of the arguments that have been urged against his being the author of them. I am now surprized, (and my readers perhaps may say the same thing of themselves,) that I should never have adverted to a very striking circumstance which distinguishes this *first* part from the other parts of *King Henry VI.* This circumstance is, that none of these Shaksperian passages are to be found here, though several are scattered through the two other parts. I am therefore decisively of opinion that *this* play was not written by Shakspeare. The reasons on which that opinion is founded, are stated at large in the Dissertation above referred to. But I would here request the reader to attend particularly to the versification of this piece, (of which almost every line has a pause at the end,) which is so different from that of Shakspeare's undoubted plays, and of the greater part of

* For which the reader is referred to the new edition of Shakspeare in twenty-one volumes, lately published.

the two succeeding pieces, as *altered* by him, and so exactly corresponds with that of the tragedies written by others before and about the time of his first commencing author, that this alone might decide the question, without taking into the account the numerous classical allusions which are found in this first part. The reader will be enabled to judge how far this argument deserves attention, from the several extracts from those ancient pieces which he will find in the Essay on this subject.

With respect to the *second* and *third* parts of *King Henry VI.* or, as they were originally called, *The Contention of the Two famous Houses of Yorke and Lancaster*, they stand, in my apprehension, on a very different ground from that of this first part, or, as I believe it was anciently called, *The Play of King Henry VI.—The Contention*, &c. printed in two parts, in quarto, 1600, was, I conceive, the production of some playwright who preceded, or was contemporary with Shakspeare; and out of that piece he formed the two plays which are now denominated the *Second* and *Third* Parts of *King Henry VI.*; as, out of the old plays of *King John* and *The Taming of the Shrew*, he formed two other plays with the same titles. For the reasons on which this opinion is formed, I must again refer to my Essay on this subject.

This old play of *King Henry VI.* now before us, or as our author's editors have called it, the *first* part of *King Henry VI.* I suppose, to have been written in 1589, or before. The disposition of facts in these three plays, not always corresponding with the dates, which Mr. Theobald mentions, and the want of uniformity and consistency in the series of events exhibited, may perhaps be in some measure accounted for by the hypothesis now stated. As to our author's having accepted these pieces as a *Director* of the stage, he had, I fear, no pretension to such a situation at so early a period. MALONE.

The chief argument on which the first paragraph of the foregoing note depends, is not, in my opinion, conclusive. This historical play might have been one of our author's earliest dramatick efforts: and almost every young poet begins his career by imitation. Shakspeare, therefore, till he felt his own strength, perhaps servilely conformed to the style and manner of his predecessors.

What further remarks I may offer on this subject, will appear in the form of notes to Mr. Malone's Essay, from which I do not wantonly differ,—though hardily, I confess, as far as my sentiments may seem to militate against those of Dr. Farmer.

STEEVENS.

PERSONS REPRESENTED.

King Henry *the Sixth.*
Duke of Gloster, *Uncle to the King, and Protector.*
Duke of Bedford, *uncle to the King, and regent of* France.
Thomas Beaufort, *Duke of* Exeter, *great Uncle to the King.*
Henry Beaufort, *great Uncle to the King, Bishop of* Winchester, *and afterwards Cardinal.*
John Beaufort, *Earl of* Somerset; *afterwards, Duke.*
Richard Plantagenet, *eldest Son of* Richard *late Earl of* Cambridge; *afterwards Duke of* York.
Earl of Warwick. *Earl of* Salisbury. *Earl of* Suffolk.
Lord Talbot, *afterwards Earl of* Shrewsbury:
John Talbot, *his Son.*
Edmund Mortimer, *Earl of* March.
Mortimer's *Keeper, and a Lawyer.*
Sir John Fastolfe. *Sir* William Lucy.
Sir William Glansdale. *Sir* Thomas Gargrave.
Mayor of London. Woodville, *Lieutenant of the Tower.*
Vernon, *of the White Rose, or* York *Faction.*
Basset, *of the Red Rose, or* Lancaster *Faction.*

Charles, *Dauphin, and afterwards King of* France.
Reignier, *Duke of* Anjou, *and titular King of* Naples.
Duke of Burgundy. *Duke of* Alençon.
Governor of Paris. Bastard *of* Orleans.
Master-Gunner of Orleans, *and his Son.*
General of the French *Forces in* Bourdeaux.
A French *Sergeant. A Porter.*
An old Shepherd, Father to Joan la Pucelle.

Margaret, *Daughter to* Reignier; *afterwards married to King* Henry.
Countess of Auvergne.
Joan la Pucelle, *commonly called* Joan *of* Arc.

Fiends appearing to La Pucelle, *Lords, Warders of the Tower, Heralds, Officers, Soldiers, Messengers, and several Attendants both on the* English *and* French.

SCENE, partly in England, *and partly in* France.

FIRST PART OF

KING HENRY VI.

ACT I.

SCENE I. Westminster *Abbey.*

Dead march. Corpse of King Henry *the Fifth discovered, lying in state; attended on by the Dukes of* Bedford, Gloster, *and* Exeter; *the Earl of* Warwick, *the Bishop of* Winchester, *Heralds, &c.*

Bed. Hung be the heavens with black,[1] yield day to night!
Comets, importing change of times and states,
Brandish your crystal tresses in the sky;
And with them scourge the bad revolting stars,
That have consented unto Henry's death!
Henry the fifth, too famous to live long!
England ne'er lost a king of so much worth.

Glo. England ne'er had a king, until his time.
Virtue he had, deserving to command:
His brandish'd sword did blind men with his beams;
His arms spread wider than a dragon's wings;
His sparkling eyes replete with wrathful fire,
More dazzled and drove back his enemies,

[1] *Hung be the heavens with black,*] Alluding to our ancient stage-practice when a tragedy was to be expected.

Than mid-day sun, fierce bent against their faces.
What should I say? his deeds exceed all speech:
He ne'er lift up his hand, but conquered.
Exe. We mourn in black; Why mourn we not in blood?
Henry is dead, and never shall revive:
Upon a wooden coffin we attend;
And death's dishonourable victory
We with our stately presence glorify,
Like captives bound to a triumphant car.
What? shall we curse the planets of mishap,
That plotted thus our glory's overthrow?
Or shall we think the subtle-witted French[2]
Conjurers and sorcerers, that, afraid of him,
By magick verses have contriv'd his end?
Win. He was a king bless'd of the King of kings.
Unto the French the dreadful judgment day
So dreadful will not be, as was his sight.
The battles of the Lord of hosts he fought:
The church's prayers made him so prosperous.
Glo. The church! where is it? Had not churchmen pray'd,
His thread of life had not so soon decay'd;
None do you like but an effeminate prince,
Whom, like a school-boy, you may over-awe.
Win. Gloster, whate'er we like, thou art protector;
And lookest to command the prince, and realm.
Thy wife is proud; she holdeth thee in awe,
More than God, or religious churchmen, may.
Glo. Name not religion, for thou lov'st the flesh;
And ne'er throughout the year to church thou go'st,

[2] —— *the subtle-witted French*, &c.] There was a notion prevalent a long time, that life might be taken away by metrical charms. As superstition grew weaker, these charms were imagined only to have power on irrational animals. In our author's time it was supposed that the Irish could kill rats by a song.

Except it be to pray against thy foes.
Bed. Cease, cease these jars, and rest your minds in peace!
Let's to the altar:—Heralds, wait on us:—
Instead of gold, we'll offer up our arms;
Since arms avail not, now that Henry's dead.—
Posterity, await for wretched years,
When at their mothers' moist eyes babes shall suck;
Our isle be made a nourish[3] of salt tears,
And none but women left to wail the dead.—
Henry the fifth! thy ghost I invocate;
Prosper this realm, keep it from civil broils!
Combat with adverse planets in the heavens!
A far more glorious star thy soul will make,
Than Julius Cæsar, or bright——

Enter a Messenger.

Mess. My honourable lords, health to you all!
Sad tidings bring I to you out of France,
Of loss, of slaughter, and discomfiture:
Guienne, Champaigne, Rheims, Orleans,
Paris, Guysors, Poictiers, are all quite lost.
Bed. What say'st thou, man, before dead Henry's corse?
Speak softly; or the loss of those great towns
Will make him burst his lead, and rise from death.
Glo. Is Paris lost? is Roüen yielded up?
If Henry were recall'd to life again,
These news would cause him once more yield the ghost.
Exe. How were they lost? what treachery was us'd?
Mess. No treachery; but want of men and money.
Among the soldiers this is muttered,—
That here you maintain several factions;

[3] *Our isle be made a* nourish,] probably a *nurse*.

And, whilst a field should be despatch'd and fought,
You are disputing of your generals.
One would have ling'ring wars, with little cost;
Another would fly swift but wanteth wings;
A third man thinks, without expence at all,
By guileful fair words peace may be obtain'd.
Awake, awake, English nobility!
Let not sloth dim your honours, new-begot:
Cropp'd are the flower-de-luces in your arms;
Of England's coat one half is cut away.

Exe. Were our tears wanting to this funeral,
These tidings would call forth her flowing tides.[4]

Bed. Me they concern; regent I am of France:—
Give me my steeled coat, I'll fight for France.—
Away with these disgraceful wailing robes!
Wounds I will lend the French, instead of eyes,
To weep their intermissive miseries.[5]

Enter another Messenger.

2 *Mess.* Lords, view these letters, full of bad mischance,
France is revolted from the English quite;
Except some petty towns of no import:
The Dauphin Charles is crowned king in Rheims;
The bastard of Orleans with him is join'd;
Reignier, duke of Anjou, doth take his part;
The duke of Alençon flieth to his side.

Exe. The Dauphin crowned king! all fly to him!
O, whither shall we fly from this reproach?

Glo. We will not fly, but to our enemies' throats:—
Bedford, if thou be slack, I'll fight it out.

[4] —— her *flowing tides.*] i. e. England's flowing tides.

[5] —— *their intermissive miseries.*] i. e. their miseries, which have had only a short intermission from Henry the Fifth's death to my coming amongst them.

Bed. Gloster, why doubt'st thou of my forwardness?
An army have I muster'd in my thoughts,
Wherewith already France is over-run.

Enter a third Messenger.

3 *Mess.* My gracious lords,—to add to your laments,
Wherewith you now bedew king Henry's hearse,—
I must inform you of a dismal fight,
Betwixt the stout lord Talbot and the French.
Win. What! wherein Talbot overcame? is't so?
3 *Mess.* O, no; wherein lord Talbot was o'erthrown:
The circumstance I'll tell you more at large.
The tenth of August last, this dreadful lord,
Retiring from the siege of Orleans,
Having full scarce six thousand in his troop,
By three and twenty thousand of the French
Was round encompassed and set upon:
No leisure had he to enrank his men;
He wanted pikes to set before his archers;
Instead whereof, sharp stakes, pluck'd out of hedges,
They pitched in the ground confusedly,
To keep the horsemen off from breaking in.
More than three hours the fight continued;
Where valiant Talbot, above human thought,
Enacted wonders with his sword and lance.
Hundreds he sent to hell, and none durst stand him;
Here, there, and every where, enrag'd he slew:
The French exclaim'd, The devil was in arms;
All the whole army stood agaz'd on him:
His soldiers, spying his undaunted spirit,
A Talbot! a Talbot! cried out amain,
And rush'd into the bowels of the battle.
Here had the conquest fully been seal'd up,

Fuseli R. A. del. *Lee Sculp.*

Enter Fiends—
La Pucelle. *See! they forsake me!—*

Published by C. & F. Rivington London Dec 25. 1803.

KING HENRY VI.

PART I.*

Hath the late overthrow wrought this offence?
Be not dismay'd, for succour is at hand:
A holy maid hither with me I bring,
Which, by a vision sent to her from heaven,
Ordained is to raise this tedious siege,
And drive the English forth the bounds of France.
The spirit of deep prophecy she hath,
Exceeding the nine sibyls of old Rome;[2]
What's past, and what's to come, she can descry.
Speak, shall I call her in? Believe my words,
For they are certain and unfallible.

Char. Go, call her in: [*Exit* Bastard.] But, first, to try her skill,
Reignier, stand thou as Dauphin in my place:
Question her proudly, let thy looks be stern:—
By this means shall we sound what skill she hath.
[*Retires.*

Enter La Pucelle, Bastard *of* Orleans, *and Others.*

Reig. Fair maid, is't thou wilt do these wond'rous feats?

Puc. Reignier, is't thou that thinkest to beguile me?—
Where is the Dauphin?—come, come from behind;
I know thee well, though never seen before.
Be not amaz'd, there's nothing hid from me:
In private will I talk with thee apart;—
Stand back, you lords, and give us leave a while.

Reig. She takes upon her bravely at first dash.

Puc. Dauphin, I am by birth a shepherd's daughter,
My wit untrain'd in any kind of art.
Heaven, and our Lady gracious, hath it pleas'd
To shine on my contemptible estate:

[2] —— nine sibyls *of old Rome;*] There was no *nine sibyls* of Rome; but he confounds things, and mistakes this for the nine books of Sibylline oracles, brought to one of the Tarquins.

Lo, whilst I waited on my tender lambs,
And to sun's parching heat display'd my cheeks,
God's mother deigned to appear to me;
And, in a vision full of majesty,
Will'd me to leave my base vocation,
And free my country from calamity:
Her aid she promis'd, and assur'd success:
In complete glory she reveal'd herself;
And, whereas I was black and swart before,
With those clear rays which she infus'd on me,
That beauty am I bless'd with, which you see.
Ask me what question thou canst possible,
And I will answer unpremeditated:
My courage try by combat, if thou dar'st,
And thou shalt find that I exceed my sex.
Resolve on this:[3] Thou shalt be fortunate,
If thou receive me for thy warlike mate.

Char. Thou hast astonish'd me with thy high terms;
Only this proof I'll of thy valour make,—
In single combat thou shalt buckle with me;
And, if thou vanquishest, thy words are true;
Otherwise, I renounce all confidence.

Puc. I am prepar'd: here is my keen-edg'd sword,
Deck'd with five flower-de-luces on each side;
The which at Touraine, in Saint Katharine's churchyard,
Out of a deal of old iron I chose forth.

Char. Then come o'God's name, I fear no woman.

Puc. And, while I live, I'll ne'er fly from a man.
[*They fight.*

Char. Stay, stay thy hands; thou art an Amazon,
And fightest with the sword of Deborah.

Puc. Christ's mother helps me, else I were too weak.

[3] Resolve *on this*:] i. e. be firmly persuaded of it.

Char. Whoe'er helps me, 'tis thou that must help me:
Impatiently I burn with thy desire;
My heart and hands thou hast at once subdu'd.
Excellent Pucelle, if thy name be so,
Let me thy servant, and not sovereign, be;
'Tis the French Dauphin sueth to thee thus.
Puc. I must not yield to any rites of love,
For my profession's sacred from above:
When I have chased all thy foes from hence,
Then will I think upon a recompense.
Char. Meantime, look gracious on thy prostrate thrall.
Reig. My lord, methinks, is very long in talk.
Alen. Doubtless he shrives this woman to her smock:
Else ne'er could he so long protract his speech.
Reig. Shall we disturb him, since he keeps no mean?
Alen. He may mean more than we poor men do know:
These women are shrewd tempters with their tongues.
Reig. My lord, where are you? what devise you on?
Shall we give over Orleans, or no?
Puc. Why, no, I say, distrustful recreants!
Fight till the last gasp: I will be your guard.
Char. What she says, I'll confirm; we'll fight it out.
Puc. Assign'd am I to be the English scourge.
This night the siege assuredly I'll raise:
Expect Saint Martin's summer,[4] halcyon days,
Since I have entered into these wars.
Glory is like a circle in the water,
Which never ceaseth to enlarge itself,

[4] *Expect Saint Martin's summer,*] That is, expect *prosperity after misfortune,* like fair weather at Martlemas, after winter has begun.

Till, by broad spreading, it disperse to nought.
With Henry's death, the English circle ends;
Dispersed are the glories it included.
Now am I like that proud insulting ship,
Which Cæsar and his fortune bare at once.
Char. Was Mahomet inspired with a dove?
Thou with an eagle art inspired then.
Helen, the mother of great Constantine,
Nor yet Saint Philip's daughters,[5] were like thee.
Bright star of Venus, fall'n down on the earth,
How may I reverently worship thee enough?
Alen. Leave off delays, and let us raise the siege.
Reig. Woman, do what thou canst to save our honours;
Drive them from Orleans, and be immortaliz'd.
Char. Presently we'll try:—Come, let's away about it:
No prophet will I trust, if she prove false.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE III.

London. *Hill before the Tower.*

Enter, at the Gates, the Duke of GLOSTER, *with his Serving-men, in blue Coats.*

Glo. I am come to survey the Tower this day;
Since Henry's death, I fear, there is conveyance.[6]
Where be these warders, that they wait not here?
Open the gates; Gloster it is that calls.

[Servants *knock.*

1 Ward. [*Within.*] Who is there that knocks so imperiously?
1 *Serv.* It is the noble duke of Gloster.

[5] *Nor yet Saint Philip's daughters,*] Meaning the four daughters of Philip mentioned in the *Acts*.
[6] —— *there is* conveyance.] *Conveyance* means *theft*.

2 Ward. [*Within.*] Whoe'er he be, you may not be let in.

1 *Serv.* Answer you so the lord protector, villains?

1 Ward. [*Within.*] The Lord protect him! so we answer him:
We do no otherwise than we are will'd.

Glo. Who willed you? or whose will stands, but mine?
There's none protector of the realm, but I.—
Break up the gates,[7] I'll be your warrantize:
Shall I be flouted thus by dunghill grooms?

Servants *rush at the Tower Gates. Enter, to the Gates,* WOODVILLE, *the Lieutenant.*

Wood. [*Within.*] What noise is this? what traitors have we here?

Glo. Lieutenant, is it you, whose voice I hear?
Open the gates; here's Gloster, that would enter.

Wood. [*Within.*] Have patience, noble duke; I may not open;
The cardinal of Winchester forbids:
From him I have express commandement,
That thou, nor none of thine, shall be let in.

Glo. Faint-hearted Woodville, prizest him 'fore me?
Arrogant Winchester? that haughty prelate,
Whom Henry, our late sovereign, ne'er could brook?
Thou art no friend to God, or to the king:
Open the gates, or I'll shut thee out shortly.

1 *Serv.* Open the gates unto the lord protector;
Or we'll burst them open, if that you come not quickly.

[7] Break up *the gates,*] To *break up* in Shakspeare's age was the same as to *break open.*

Enter WINCHESTER, *attended by a Train of Servants in tawny Coats.*[8]

Win. How now, ambitious Humphry? what means this?

Glo. Piel'd priest,[9] dost thou command me to be shut out?

Win. I do, thou most usurping proditor,
And not protector of the king or realm.

Glo. Stand back, thou manifest conspirator;
Thou, that contriv'dst to murder our dead lord;
Thou, that giv'st whores indulgences to sin:[1]
I'll canvas thee[2] in thy broad cardinal's hat,
If thou proceed in this thy insolence.

Win. Nay, stand thou back, I will not budge a foot;
This be Damascus, be thou cursed Cain,[3]
To slay thy brother Abel, if thou wilt.

Glo. I will not slay thee, but I'll drive thee back:
Thy scarlet robes, as a child's bearing cloth
I'll use, to carry thee out of this place.

Win. Do what thou dar'st; I beard thee to thy face.

Glo. What? am I dar'd, and bearded to my face?—
Draw, men, for all this privileged place;

[8] —— *tawny coats,*] *Tawny* was a colour worn for mourning, as well as *black;* and was therefore the suitable and sober habit of any person employed in an ecclesiastical court.

[9] Piel'd *priest,*] Alluding to his shaven crown.

[1] *Thou, that giv'st whores indulgences to sin:*] The public stews were formerly under the district of the bishop of Winchester.

[2] *I'll* canvas *thee* —] i. e. I'll sift thee.

[3] *This be Damascus, be thou cursed Cain,*] About four miles from Damascus is a high hill, reported to be the same on which Cain slew his brother Abel.

Blue-coats to tawny-coats. Priest, beware your beard;

[GLOSTER *and his Men attack the Bishop.*

I mean to tug it, and to cuff you soundly:
Under my feet I stamp thy cardinal's hat;
In spite of pope or dignities of church,
Here by the cheeks I'll drag thee up and down.

Win. Gloster, thou'lt answer this before the pope.

Glo. Winchester goose,[4] I cry—a rope! a rope!
Now beat them hence, Why do you let them stay?—
Thee I'll chase hence, thou wolf in sheep's array.—
Out, tawny coats!—out scarlet hypocrite!

Here a great Tumult. In the midst of it, Enter the Mayor *of* London, *and Officers.*

May. Fye, lords! that you, being supreme magistrates,
Thus contumeliously should break the peace!

Glo. Peace, mayor; thou know'st little of my wrongs:
Here's Beaufort, that regards nor God nor king,
Hath here distrain'd the Tower to his use.

Win. Here's Gloster too, a foe to citizens;
One that still motions war, and never peace,
O'ercharging your free purses with large fines;
That seeks to overthrow religion,
Because he is protector of the realm;
And would have armour here out of the Tower,
To crown himself king, and suppress the prince.

Glo. I will not answer thee with words, but blows.

[*Here they skirmish again.*

May. Nought rests for me in this tumultuous strife,
But to make open proclamation:—

[4] —— *Winchester goose,*] A strumpet, or the consequences of her love, was a Winchester goose.

Come, officer; as loud as ere thou can'st.

Off. *All manner of men, assembled here in arms this day, against God's peace and the king's, we charge and command you, in his highness' name, to repair to your several dwelling-places; and not to wear, handle, or use, any sword, weapon, or dagger, henceforward, upon pain of death.*

Glo. Cardinal, I'll be no breaker of the law:
But we shall meet, and break our minds at large.
Win. Gloster, we'll meet; to thy dear cost, be sure:
Thy heart-blood I will have, for this day's work.
May. I'll call for clubs, if you will not away:[5]—
This cardinal is more haughty than the devil.
Glo. Mayor, farewell: thou dost but what thou may'st.
Win. Abominable Gloster! guard thy head;
For I intend to have it, ere long. [*Exeunt.*
May. See the coast clear'd, and then we will depart.—
Good God! that nobles should such stomachs[6] bear!
I myself fight not once in forty year.[7] [*Exeunt.*

[5] *I'll call for* clubs, *if you will not away:*] This was an outcry for assistance, on any riot or quarrel in the streets.

[6] —— *stomachs* —] *Stomach* is pride, a haughty spirit of resentment.

[7] *I myself fight not once in forty year.*] The mayor of London was not brought in to be laughed at, as is plain by his manner of interfering in the quarrel, where he all along preserves a sufficient dignity. In the line preceding these, he directs his Officer, to whom without doubt, these two lines should be given. They suit his character, and are very expressive of the pacific temper of the city guards. WARBURTON.

I see no reason for this change. The mayor speaks first as a magistrate, and afterwards as a citizen. JOHNSON.

Notwithstanding Warburton's note in support of the dignity of the Mayor, Shakspeare certainly meant to represent him as a poor well-meaning, simple man, for that is the character he invariably

SCENE IV.

France. *Before* Orleans.

Enter, on the Walls, the Master-Gunner *and his* Son.

M. Gun. Sirrah, thou know'st how Orleans is besieg'd;
And how the English have the suburbs won.
Son. Father, I know; and oft have shot at them,
Howe'er, unfortunate, I miss'd my aim.
M. Gun. But now thou shalt not. Be thou rul'd by me:
Chief master gunner am I of this town;
Something I must do, to procure me grace.
The prince's espials[8] have informed me,
How the English, in the suburbs close intrench'd,
Wont, through a secret grate of iron bars
In yonder tower, to overpeer the city;
And thence discover, how, with most advantage,
They may vex us, with shot, or with assault.
To intercept this inconvenience,
A piece of ordnance 'gainst it I have plac'd;
And fully even these three days have I watch'd,
If I could see them. Now, boy, do thou watch,
For I can stay no longer.
If thou spy'st any, run and bring me word;
And thou shalt find me at the governor's. [*Exit.*

gives to his Mayors. The Mayor of London, in *Richard III.* is just of the same stamp. And so is the Mayor of York in the Third Part of this play, where he refuses to admit Edward as King, but lets him into the city as Duke of York, on which Gloster says—

"A wise stout captain! and persuaded soon.

"*Hast.* The good old man would fain that all were well."

Such are all Shakspeare's Mayors. M. Mason.

[8] *The prince's* espials —] *Espials* are spies.

Son. Father, I warrant you; take you no care;
I'll never trouble you, if I may spy them.

Enter, in an upper Chamber of a Tower, the Lords SALISBURY *and* TALBOT, *Sir* WILLIAM GLANSDALE, *Sir* THOMAS GARGRAVE, *and Others.*

Sal. Talbot, my life, my joy, again return'd!
How wert thou handled, being prisoner?
Or by what means got'st thou to be releas'd?
Discourse, I pr'ythee, on this turret's top.
Tal. The duke of Bedford had a prisoner,
Called—the brave lord Ponton de Santrailles;
For him I was exchang'd and ransomed.
But with a baser man of arms by far,
Once, in contempt, they would have barter'd me:
Which I, disdaining, scorn'd; and craved death
Rather than I would be so pil'd esteem'd.[9]
In fine, redeem'd I was as I desir'd.
But, O! the treacherous Fastolfe wounds my heart!
Whom with my bare fists I would execute,
If I now had him brought into my power.
Sal. Yet tell'st thou not, how thou wert entertain'd.
Tal. With scoffs, and scorns, and contumelious taunts.
In open market-place produc'd they me,
To be a publick spectacle to all;
Here, said they, is the terror of the French,
The scare-crow that affrights our children so.
Then broke I from the officers that led me;
And with my nails digg'd stones out of the ground,
To hurl at the beholders of my shame.

[9] —— *so* pil'd *esteem'd.*] Some of the modern editors read, but without authority—*so* vile-*esteem'd.*—*So pill'd,* may mean—*so pillag'd, so stripp'd of honours;* but Mr. Steevens thinks Shakspeare wrote Philistin'd; i. e. treated as Sampson was by the Philistines.

My grisly countenance made others fly;
None durst come near for fear of sudden death.
In iron walls they deem'd me not secure;
So great fear of my name 'mongst them was spread,
That they suppos'd, I could rend bars of steel,
And spurn in pieces posts of adamant:
Wherefore a guard of chosen shot I had,
That walk'd about me every minute-while;
As if I did but stir out of my bed,
Ready they were to shoot me to the heart.

Sal. I grieve to hear what torments you endur'd;
But we will be reveng'd sufficiently.
Now it is supper-time in Orleans:
Here, through this grate, I can count every one,
And view the Frenchmen how they fortify;
Let us look in, the sight will much delight thee.—
Sir Thomas Gargrave, and sir William Glansdale,
Let me have your express opinions,
Where is best place to make our battery next.

Gar. I think, at the north gate; for there stand lords.

Glan. And I, here, at the bulwark of the bridge.

Tal. For aught I see, this city must be famish'd,
Or with light skirmishes enfeebled.

[*Shot from the Town.* SALISBURY *and Sir* THO. GARGRAVE *fall.*

Sal. O Lord, have mercy on us, wretched sinners!

Gar. O Lord, have mercy on me, woeful man!

Tal. What chance is this, that suddenly hath cross'd us?—
Speak, Salisbury; at least, if thou can'st speak;
How far'st thou, mirror of all martial men?
One of thy eyes, and thy cheek's side struck off![1]—

[1] —— *thy cheek's side struck off!*] Cambden says in his *Remaines*, that the French scarce knew the use of great ordnance, till the siege of Mans in 1455, when a breach was made in the walls of that town by the English, under the conduct of this earl of Salis-

Accursed tower! accursed fatal hand,
That hath contriv'd this woeful tragedy!
In thirteen battles Salisbury o'ercame;
Henry the fifth he first train'd to the wars;
Whilst any trump did sound, or drum struck up,
His sword did ne'er leave striking in the field.—
Yet liv'st thou, Salisbury? though thy speech doth fail,
One eye thou hast, to look to heaven for grace:
The sun with one eye vieweth all the world.—
Heaven, be thou gracious to none alive,
If Salisbury wants mercy at thy hands!—
Bear hence his body, I will help to bury it.—
Sir Thomas Gargrave, hast thou any life?
Speak unto Talbot; nay, look up to him.
Salisbury, cheer thy spirit with this comfort;
Thou shalt not die, whiles——
He beckons with his hand, and smiles on me;
As who should say, *When I am dead and gone,*
Remember to avenge me on the French.—
Plantagenet, I will; and Nero-like,
Play on the lute, beholding the towns burn:
Wretched shall France be only in my name.
[*Thunder heard*; *afterwards an Alarum.*
What stir is this? What tumult's in the heavens?
Whence cometh this alarum, and the noise?

Enter a Messenger.

Mess. My lord, my lord, the French have gather'd head:
The Dauphin, with one Joan la Pucelle join'd,—
A holy prophetess, new risen up,—
Is come with a great power to raise the siege.
[SALISBURY *groans.*

bury; and that he was the first English gentleman that was slain by a cannon-ball.

Tal. Hear, hear, how dying Salisbury doth groan!
It irks his heart, he cannot be reveng'd.—
Frenchmen, I'll be a Salisbury to you:—
Pucelle or puzzel,[2] dolphin or dogfish,
Your hearts I'll stamp out with my horse's heels,
And make a quagmire of your mingled brains,—
Convey me Salisbury into his tent,
And then we'll try what these dastard Frenchmen dare. [*Exeunt, bearing out the Bodies.*

SCENE V.

The same. Before one of the Gates.

Alarum. Skirmishings. TALBOT *pursueth the* Dauphin, *and driveth him in: then enter* JOAN LA PUCELLE, *driving* Englishmen *before her. Then enter* TALBOT.

Tal. Where is my strength, my valour, and my force?
Our English troops retire, I cannot stay them;
A woman, clad in armour, chaseth them.

Enter LA PUCELLE.

Here, here she comes:——I'll have a bout with thee;
Devil, or devil's dam, I'll conjure thee:
Blood will I draw on thee,[3] thou art a witch,

[2] Pucelle *or* puzzel—] *Pussel* means *a dirty wench* or a *drab*, from *puzza*, i. e. malus fætor, says Minsheu.

[3] *Blood will I draw on thee,*] The superstition of these times taught that he that could draw the witch's blood, was free from her power. JOHNSON.

And straightway give thy soul to him thou serv'st.
Puc. Come, come, 'tis only I that must disgrace thee. [*They fight.*
Tal. Heavens, can you suffer hell so to prevail?
My breast I'll burst with straining of my courage,
And from my shoulders crack my arms asunder,
But I will châstise this high-minded strumpet.
Puc. Talbot, farewell; thy hour is not yet come:
I must go victual Orleans forthwith.
O'ertake me, if thou canst; I scorn thy strength.
Go, go, cheer up thy hunger-starved men;
Help Salisbury to make his testament:
This day is ours, as many more shall be.
[PUCELLE *enters the Town, with Soldiers.*
Tal. My thoughts are whirled like a potter's wheel;
I know not where I am, nor what I do:
A witch, by fear,[4] not force, like Hannibal,
Drives back our troops, and conquers as she lists:
So bees with smoke, and doves with noisome stench,
Are from their hives, and houses, driven away.
They call'd us, for our fierceness, English dogs;
Now, like to whelps, we crying run away.
[*A short Alarum.*
Hark, countrymen! either renew the fight,
Or tear the lions out of England's coat;
Renounce your soil, give sheep in lions' stead:
Sheep run not half so timorous from the wolf,
Or horse, or oxen, from the leopard,
As you fly from your oft-subdued slaves.
[*Alarum. Another Skirmish.*
It will not be:—Retire into your trenches:
You all consented unto Salisbury's death,
For none would strike a stroke in his revenge.—

[4] —— *by fear,* &c.] See Hannibal's stratagem to escape by fixing bundles of lighted twigs on the horns of oxen, recorded in *Livy,* Lib. XXII. c. xvi.

Pucelle is enter'd into Orleans,
In spite of us, or aught that we could do.
O, would I were to die with Salisbury!
The shame hereof will make me hide my head!
[*Alarum. Retreat. Exeunt* TALBOT *and his Forces, &c.*

SCENE VI.

The same.

Enter, on the Walls, PUCELLE, CHARLES, REIGNIER, ALENÇON, *and Soldiers.*

Puc. Advance our waving colours on the walls;
Rescu'd is Orleans from the English wolves:—
Thus Joan la Pucelle hath perform'd her word.
Char. Divinest creature, bright Astræa's daughter,
How shall I honour thee for this success?
Thy promises are like Adonis' gardens,
That one day bloom'd, and fruitful were the next.—
France, triumph in thy glorious prophetess!—
Recover'd is the town of Orleans:
More blessed hap did ne'er befall our state.
Reig. Why ring not out the bells throughout the town?
Dauphin, command the citizens make bonfires,
And feast and banquet in the open streets,
To celebrate the joy that God hath given us.
Alen. All France will be replete with mirth and joy,
When they shall hear how they have play'd the men.
Char. 'Tis Joan, not we, by whom the day is won;
For which, I will divide my crown with her:
And all the priests and friars in my realm

Shall, in procession, sing her endless praise.
A statelier pyramis to her I'll rear,
Than Rhodope's,[5] or Memphis', ever was:
In memory of her, when she is dead,
Her ashes, in an urn more precious
Than the rich-jewel'd coffer of Darius,[6]
Transported shall be at high festivals
Before the kings and queens of France.
No longer on Saint Dennis will we cry,
But Joan la Pucelle shall be France's saint.
Come in; and let us banquet royally,
After this golden day of victory.

[*Flourish. Exeunt.*

[5] *Than* Rhodope's,] *Rhodope* was a famous strumpet, who acquired great riches by her trade. The least, but most finished of the Egyptian pyramids, was built by her. She is said afterwards to have married Psammetichus, King of Egypt. Dr. Johnson thinks that the Dauphin means to call *Joan of Arc* a strumpet, all the while he is making this loud praise of her.

[6] —— *coffer of Darius,*] When Alexander the Great took the city of Gaza, the metropolis of Syria, amidst the other spoils and wealth of Darius treasured up there, he found an exceeding rich and beautiful little chest or casket, and asked those about him what they thought fittest to be laid up in it. When they had severally delivered their opinions, he told them, he esteemed nothing so worthy to be preserved in it, as Homer's *Iliad*.

ACT II.

SCENE I. The same.

Enter to the Gates, a French Sergeant, *and Two* Sentinels.

Serg. Sirs, take your places, and be vigilant:
If any noise, or soldier, you perceive,
Near to the walls, by some apparent sign,
Let us have knowledge at the court of guard.[7]
1 *Sent.* Sergeant, you shall. [*Exit* Sergeant.]
Thus are poor servitors
(When others sleep upon their quiet beds,)
Constrain'd to watch in darkness, rain, and cold.

Enter TALBOT, BEDFORD, BURGUNDY, *and Forces, with scaling Ladders; their Drums beating a dead march.*

Tal. Lord regent,—and redoubted Burgundy,—
By whose approach, the regions of Artois,
Walloon, and Picardy, are friends to us,—
This happy night the Frenchmen are secure,
Having all day carous'd and banqueted:
Embrace we then this opportunity;
As fitting best to quittance their deceit,
Contriv'd by art, and baleful sorcery.
Bed. Coward of France!—how much he wrongs his fame,
Despairing of his own arm's fortitude,
To join with witches, and the help of hell.

[7] —— *court of guard.*] The same phrase occurs again in *Othello, Anthony and Cleopatra,* &c. and is equivalent to the modern term—*guard-room.*

Bur. Traitors have never other company.—
But what's that Pucelle, whom they term so pure?
Tal. A maid, they say.
Bed. A maid! and be so martial!
Bur. Pray God, she prove not masculine ere long;
If underneath the standard of the French,
She carry armour, as she hath begun.
Tal. Well, let them practise and converse with spirits:
God is our fortress; in whose conquering name,
Let us resolve to scale their flinty bulwarks.
Bed. Ascend, brave Talbot; we will follow thee.
Tal. Not all together: better far, I guess,
That we do make our entrance several ways;
That, if it chance the one of us do fail,
The other yet may rise against their force.
Bed. Agreed; I'll to yon corner.
Bur. And I to this.
Tal. And here will Talbot mount, or make his grave.—
Now, Salisbury! for thee, and for the right
Of English Henry, shall this night appear
How much in duty I am bound to both.

[*The* English *scale the Walls, crying St.* George! *a* Talbot! *and all enter by the Town.*

Sent. [*Within.*] Arm, arm! the enemy doth make assault!

The French *leap over the Walls in their Shirts. Enter, several ways,* Bastard, Alençon, Reignier, *half ready, and half unready.*

Alen. How now, my lords? what, all unready so?[8]

[8] —— unready *so?*] *Unready* was the current word in those times for *undressed.*

Bast. Unready? ay, and glad we 'scap'd so well.
Reig. 'Twas time, I trow, to wake and leave our beds,
Hearing alarums at our chamber doors.
Alen. Of all exploits, since first I follow'd arms,
Ne'er heard I of a warlike enterprize
More venturous, or desperate than this.
Bast. I think, this Talbot be a fiend of hell.
Reig. If not of hell, the heavens, sure, favour him.
Alen. Here cometh Charles; I marvel, how he sped.

Enter CHARLES *and* LA PUCELLE.

Bast. Tut! holy Joan was his defensive guard.
Cha. Is this thy cunning, thou deceitful dame?
Didst thou at first, to flatter us withal,
Make us partakers of a little gain,
That now our loss might be ten times so much?
Puc. Wherefore is Charles impatient with his friend?
At all times will you have my power alike?
Sleeping, or waking, must I still prevail,
Or will you blame and lay the fault on me?—
Improvident soldiers! had your watch been good,
This sudden mischief never could have fall'n.
Char. Duke of Alençon, this was your default;
That, being captain of the watch to-night,
Did look no better to that weighty charge.
Alen. Had all your quarters been as safely kept,
As that whereof I had the government,
We had not been thus shamefully surpriz'd.
Bast. Mine was secure.
Reig. And so was mine, my lord.
Char. And, for myself, most part of all this night,
Within her quarter, and mine own precinct,

I was employ'd in passing to and fro,
About relieving of the sentinels:
Then how, or which way, should they first break in?
Puc. Question, my lords, no further of the case,
How, or which way; 'tis sure, they found some place
But weakly guarded, where the breach was made.
And now there rests no other shift but this,—
To gather our soldiers, scatter'd and dispers'd,
And lay new platforms[9] to endamage them.

Alarum. Enter an English Soldier, *crying a* Talbot! *a* Talbot! *They fly, leaving their Clothes behind.*

Sold. I'll be so bold to take what they have left.
The cry of Talbot serves me for a sword;
For I have loaden me with many spoils,
Using no other weapon but his name. [*Exit.*

SCENE II.

Orleans. *Within the Town.*

Enter TALBOT, BEDFORD, BURGUNDY, *a* Captain, *and Others.*

Bed. The day begins to break, and night is fled,
Whose pitchy mantle over-veil'd the earth.
Here sound retreat, and cease our hot pursuit.
[*Retreat sounded.*
Tal. Bring forth the body of old Salisbury;
And here advance it in the market-place,
The middle centre of this cursed town.—
Now have I paid my vow unto his soul;

[9] —— *platforms* —] i. e. plans, schemes.

For every drop of blood was drawn from him,
There hath at least five Frenchmen died to-night.
And, that hereafter ages may behold
What ruin happen'd in revenge of him,
Within their chiefest temple I'll erect
A tomb, wherein his corpse shall be interr'd:
Upon the which, that every one may read,
Shall be engrav'd the sack of Orleans;
The treacherous manner of his mournful death,
And what a terror he had been to France.
But, lords, in all our bloody massacre,
I muse, we met not with the Dauphin's grace;
His new-come champion, virtuous Joan of Arc;
Nor any of his false confederates.

Bed. 'Tis thought, lord Talbot, when the fight began,
Rous'd on the sudden from their drowsy beds,
They did, amongst the troops of armed men,
Leap o'er the walls for refuge in the field.

Bur. Myself (as far as I could well discern,
For smoke, and dusky vapours of the night,)
Am sure, I scar'd the Dauphin, and his trull;
When arm in arm they both came swiftly running,
Like to a pair of loving turtle-doves,
That could not live asunder day or night.
After that things are set in order here,
We'll follow them with all the power we have.

Enter a Messenger.

Mess. All hail, my lords! which of this princely train
Call ye the warlike Talbot, for his acts
So much applauded through the realm of France?

Tal. Here is the Talbot; who would speak with him?

Mess. The virtuous lady, countess of Auvergne,

With modesty admiring thy renown,
By me entreats, good lord, thou wouldst vouchsafe
To visit her poor castle where she lies;[1]
That she may boast, she hath beheld the man
Whose glory fills the world with loud report.
Bur. Is it even so? Nay, then, I see, our wars
Will turn unto a peaceful comick sport,
When ladies crave to be encounter'd with.—
You may not, my lord, despise her gentle suit.
Tal. Ne'er trust me then; for, when a world of men
Could not prevail with all their oratory,
Yet hath a woman's kindness over-rul'd:—
And therefore tell her, I return great thanks;
And in submission will attend on her.—
Will not your honours bear me company?
Bed. No, truly; it is more than manners will:
And I have heard it said,—Unbidden guests
Are often welcomest when they are gone.
Tal. Well then, alone, since there's no remedy,
I mean to prove this lady's courtesy.
Come hither, captain. [*Whispers.*]—You perceive my mind.
Capt. I do, my lord; and mean accordingly.
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE III.

Auvergne. *Court of the Castle.*

Enter the Countess *and her* Porter.

Count. Porter, remember what I gave in charge;
And, when you have done so, bring the keys to me.
Port. Madam, I will. [*Exit.*
Count. The plot is laid: if all things fall out right,

[1] —— *where she* lies;] i. e. where she dwells.

I shall as famous be by this exploit,
As Scythian Thomyris by Cyrus' death.
Great is the rumour of this dreadful knight,
And his achievements of no less account:
Fain would mine eyes be witness with mine ears,
To give their censure[2] of these rare reports.

Enter Messenger *and* Talbot.

Mess. Madam,
According as your ladyship desir'd,
By message crav'd, so is lord Talbot come.
Count. And he is welcome. What! is this the man?
Mess. Madam, it is.
Count. Is this the scourge of France?
Is this the Talbot, so much fear'd abroad,
That with his name the mothers still their babes?
I see, report is fabulous and false:
I thought, I should have seen some Hercules,
A second Hector, for his grim aspect,
And large proportion of his strong-knit limbs.
Alas! this is a child, a silly dwarf:
It cannot be, this weak and writhled[3] shrimp
Should strike such terror to his enemies.
Tal. Madam, I have been bold to trouble you:
But, since your ladyship is not at leisure,
I'll sort some other time to visit you.
Count. What means he now?—Go ask him, whither he goes.
Mess. Stay, my lord Talbot; for my lady craves
To know the cause of your abrupt departure.
Tal. Marry, for that she's in a wrong belief,
I go to certify her, Talbot's here.

[2] —— *their* censure—] i. e. their opinion.
[3] —— *writhled*—] i. e. *wrinkled*.

Re-enter Porter, *with Keys.*

Count. If thou be he, then art thou prisoner.
Tal. Prisoner! to whom?
Count. To me, blood-thirsty lord;
And for that cause I train'd thee to my house.
Long time thy shadow hath been thrall to me,
For in my gallery thy picture hangs:
But now the substance shall endure the like;
And I will chain these legs and arms of thine,
That hast by tyranny, these many years,
Wasted our country, slain our citizens,
And sent our sons and husbands captivate.
Tal. Ha, ha, ha!
Count. Laughest thou, wretch? thy mirth shall turn to moan.
Tal. I laugh to see your ladyship so fond,[4]
To think that you have aught but Talbot's shadow,
Whereon to practise your severity.
Count. Why, art not thou the man?
Tal. I am indeed.
Count. Then have I substance too.
Tal. No, no, I am but shadow of myself:
You are deceiv'd, my substance is not here;
For what you see, is but the smallest part
And least proportion of humanity:
I tell you, madam, were the whole frame here,
It is of such a spacious lofty pitch,
Your roof were not sufficient to contain it.
Count. This is a riddling merchant for the nonce;
He will be here, and yet he is not here:
How can these contrarieties agree?
Tal. That will I show you presently.

[4] —— *so* fond,] i. e. so foolish.

He winds a Horn. Drums heard; then a Peal of Ordnance. The Gates being forced, enter Soldiers.

How say you, madam? are you now persuaded,
That Talbot is but shadow of himself?
These are his substance, sinews, arms, and strength,
With which he yoketh your rebellious necks;
Razeth your cities, and subverts your towns,
And in a moment makes them desolate.

Count. Victorious Talbot! pardon my abuse:
I find, thou art no less than fame hath bruited,[5]
And more than may be gather'd by thy shape.
Let my presumption not provoke thy wrath;
For I am sorry, that with reverence
I did not entertain thee as thou art.

Tal. Be not dismay'd, fair lady; nor misconstrue
The mind of Talbot, as you did mistake
The outward composition of his body.
What you have done, hath not offended me:
No other satisfaction do I crave,
But only (with your patience,) that we may
Taste of your wine, and see what cates you have;
For soldiers' stomachs always serve them well.

Count. With all my heart; and think me honoured
To feast so great a warrior in my house. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE IV.

London. *The* Temple *Garden.*

Enter the Earls of Somerset, Suffolk, *and* Warwick; Richard Plantagenet, Vernon, *and another* Lawyer.

Plan. Great lords, and gentlemen, what means this silence?

[5] ——*bruited,*] To *bruit* is to proclaim with noise, to announce loudly.

Dare no man answer in a case of truth?
Suf. Within the Temple hall we were too loud;
The garden here is more convenient.
Plan. Then say at once, If I maintain'd the truth;
Or, else, was wrangling Somerset in the error?
Suf. 'Faith, I have been a truant in the law;
And never yet could frame my will to it;
And, therefore, frame the law unto my will.
Som. Judge you, my lord of Warwick, then between us.
War. Between two hawks, which flies the higher pitch,
Between two dogs, which hath the deeper mouth,
Between two blades, which bears the better temper,
Between two horses, which doth bear him best,[6]
Between two girls, which hath the merriest eye,
I have, perhaps, some shallow spirit of judgment:
But in these nice sharp quillets of the law,
Good faith, I am no wiser than a daw.
Plan. Tut, tut, here is a mannerly forbearance:
The truth appears so naked on my side,
That any purblind eye may find it out.
Som. And on my side it is so well apparell'd,
So clear, so shining, and so evident,
That it will glimmer through a blind man's eye.
Plan. Since you are tongue-ty'd, and so loath to speak,
In dumb significants proclaim your thoughts:
Let him, that is a true-born gentleman,
And stands upon the honour of his birth,
If he suppose that I have pleaded truth,
From off this brier pluck a white rose with me.
Som. Let him that is no coward, nor no flatterer,
But dare maintain the party of the truth,
Pluck a red rose from off this thorn with me.

[6] —— bear him *best*,] i. e. regulate his motions most adroitly.

War. I love no colours;[7] and, without all colour
Of base insinuating flattery,
I pluck this white rose, with Plantagenet.
Suf. I pluck this red rose, with young Somerset;
And say withal, I think he held the right.
Ver. Stay, lords, and gentlemen; and pluck no more,
Till you conclude—that he, upon whose side
The fewest roses are cropp'd from the tree,
Shall yield the other in the right opinion.
Som. Good master Vernon, it is well objected;[8]
If I have fewest, I subscribe in silence.
Plan. And I.
Ver. Then, for the truth and plainness of the case,
I pluck this pale, and maiden blossom here,
Giving my verdict on the white rose side.
Som. Prick not your finger as you pluck it off;
Lest, bleeding, you do paint the white rose red,
And fall on my side so against your will.
Ver. If I, my lord, for my opinion bleed,
Opinion shall be surgeon to my hurt,
And keep me on the side where still I am.
Som. Well, well, come on: Who else?
Law. Unless my study and my books be false,
The argument you held, was wrong in you;
[*To* SOMERSET.
In sign whereof, I pluck a white rose too.
Plan. Now, Somerset, where is your argument?
Som. Here, in my scabbard; meditating that,
Shall die your white rose in a bloody red.
Plan. Mean time, your cheeks do counterfeit our roses;
For pale they look with fear, as witnessing

[7] *I love no* colours;] *Colours* is here used ambiguously for *tints* and *deceits*.

[8] —— *well objected;*] Properly thrown in our way, justly proposed.

The truth on our side.
Som. No, Plantagenet,
'Tis not for fear; but anger,—that thy cheeks
Blush for pure shame, to counterfeit our roses;
And yet thy tongue will not confess thy error.
Plan. Hath not thy rose a canker, Somerset?
Som. Hath not thy rose a thorn, Plantagenet?
Plan. Ay, sharp and piercing, to maintain his truth;
Whiles thy consuming canker eats his falsehood.
Som. Well, I'll find friends to wear my bleeding-roses,
That shall maintain what I have said is true,
Where false Plantagenet dare not be seen.
Plan. Now, by this maiden blossom in my hand,
I scorn thee and thy fashion, peevish boy.
Suf. Turn not thy scorns this way, Plantagenet.
Plan. Proud Poole, I will; and scorn both him and thee.
Suf. I'll turn my part thereof into thy throat.
Som. Away, away, good William De-la-Poole!
We grace the yeoman, by conversing with him.
War. Now, by God's will, thou wrong'st him, Somerset;
His grandfather was Lionel, duke of Clarence,
Third son to the third Edward king of England;
Spring crestless yeomen[9] from so deep a root?
Plan. He bears him on the place's privilege,[1]
Or durst not, for his craven heart, say thus.
Som. By him that made me, I'll maintain my words
On any plot of ground in Christendom:
Was not thy father, Richard, earl of Cambridge,
For treason executed in our late king's days?

[9] *Crestless yeomen*—] i. e. those who have no right to arms.
[1] *He bears him on the place's privilege,*] The Temple, being a religious house, was an asylum, a place of exemption, from violence, revenge, and bloodshed. JOHNSON.

And, by his treason, stand'st not thou attainted,
Corrupted, and exempt[2] from ancient gentry?
His trespass yet lives guilty in thy blood;
And, till thou be restor'd, thou art a yeoman.

Plan. My father was attached, not attainted;
Condemn'd to die for treason, but no traitor;
And that I'll prove on better men than Somerset,
Were growing time once ripen'd to my will.
For your partaker Poole,[3] and you yourself,
I'll note you in my book of memory,
To scourge you for this apprehension:[4]
Look to it well; and say you are well warn'd.

Som. Ay, thou shalt find us ready for thee still:
And know us, by these colours, for thy foes;
For these my friends, in spite of thee, shall wear.

Plan. And, by my soul, this pale and angry rose,
As cognizance of my blood-drinking hate,
Will I for ever, and my faction, wear;
Until it wither with me to my grave,
Or flourish to the height of my degree.

Suf. Go forward, and be chok'd with thy ambition!
And so farewell, until I meet thee next. [*Exit.*

Som. Have with thee, Poole.—Farewell, ambitious Richard. [*Exit.*

Plan. How I am brav'd, and must perforce endure it!

War. This blot, that they object against your house,
Shall be wip'd out in the next parliament,
Call'd for the truce of Winchester and Gloster:
And, if thou be not then created York,

[2] *Corrupted, and* exempt——] *Exempt* for *excluded.*

[3] *For your* partaker *Poole,*] *Partaker* in ancient language signifies one who *takes part* with another, an *accomplice*, a *confederate.*

[4] *To scourge you for this* apprehension:] Apprehension, i. e. opinion.

I will not live to be accounted Warwick.
Mean time, in signal of my love to thee,
Against proud Somerset, and William Poole,
Will I upon thy party wear this rose:
And here I prophecy,—This brawl to-day,
Grown to this faction, in the Temple garden,
Shall send, between the red rose and the white,
A thousand souls to death and deadly night.

Plan. Good master Vernon, I am bound to you,
That you on my behalf would pluck a flower.

Ver. In your behalf still will I wear the same.

Law. And so will I.

Plan. Thanks, gentle sir.
Come, let us four to dinner: I dare say,
This quarrel will drink blood another day. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE V.

The same. A Room in the Tower.

Enter MORTIMER, *brought in a Chair by Two Keepers.*

Mor. Kind keepers of my weak decaying age,
Let dying Mortimer here rest himself.—
Even like a man new haled from the rack,
So fare my limbs with long imprisonment:
And these grey locks, the pursuivants of death,[5]
Nestor-like aged, in an age of care,
Argue the end of Edmund Mortimer.
These eyes,—like lamps whose wasting oil is spent,—
Wax dim, as drawing to their exigent:[6]
Weak shoulders, overborne with burd'ning grief;
And pithless arms, like to a wither'd vine

[5] —— pursuivants *of death,*] *Pursuivants.* The heralds that, forerunning death, proclaim its approach.

[6] —— *as drawing to their* exigent:] *Exigent,* end.

That droops his sapless branches to the ground.—
Yet are these feet—whose strengthless stay is numb,
Unable to support this lump of clay,—
Swift-winged with desire to get a grave,
As witting I no other comfort have.—
But tell me, keeper, will my nephew come.

1 *Keep.* Richard Plantagenet, my lord, will come:
We sent unto the Temple, to his chamber;
And answer was return'd that he will come.

Mor. Enough; my soul shall then be satisfied.—
Poor gentleman! his wrong doth equal mine.
Since Henry Monmouth first began to reign,
(Before whose glory I was great in arms,)
This loathsome sequestration have I had;
And even since then hath Richard been obscur'd,
Depriv'd of honour and inheritance:
But now, the arbitrator of despairs,
Just death, kind umpire[7] of men's miseries,
With sweet enlargement doth dismiss me hence;
I would, his troubles likewise were expir'd,
That so he might recover what was lost.

Enter RICHARD PLANTAGENET.

1 *Keep.* My lord, your loving nephew now is come.

Mor. Richard Plantagenet, my friend? Is he come?

Plan. Ay, noble uncle, thus ignobly us'd,
Your nephew, late-despised[8] Richard, comes.

Mor. Direct mine arms, I may embrace his neck,
And in his bosom spend my latter gasp:
O, tell me, when my lips do touch his cheeks,

[7] —— *the* arbitrator *of despairs,*
Just death, kind umpire —] That is, he that terminates or concludes misery. The expression is harsh, and forced. JOHNSON.

[8] —— *late-despised* —] i. e. lately despised.

That I may kindly give one fainting kiss.—
And now declare, sweet stem from York's great stock,
Why didst thou say—of late thou wert despis'd?
Plan. First, lean thine aged back against mine arm;
And, in that ease, I'll tell thee my disease.[9]
This day, in argument upon a case,
Some words there grew 'twixt Somerset and me:
Among which terms he used his lavish tongue,
And did upbraid me with his father's death;
Which obloquy set bars before my tongue,
Else with the like I had requited him:
Therefore, good uncle,—for my father's sake,
In honour of a true Plantagenet,
And for alliance' sake,—declare the cause
My father, earl of Cambridge, lost his head.
Mor. That cause, fair nephew, that imprison'd me,
And hath detain'd me, all my flow'ring youth,
Within a loathsome dungeon, there to pine,
Was cursed instrument of his decease.
Plan. Discover more at large what cause that was;
For I am ignorant, and cannot guess.
Mor. I will; if that my fading breath permit,
And death approach not ere my tale be done.
Henry the fourth, grandfather to this king,
Depos'd his nephew Richard; Edward's son,
The first-begotten, and the lawful heir
Of Edward king, the third of that descent:
During whose reign, the Percies of the north,
Finding his usurpation most unjust,
Endeavour'd my advancement to the throne:

[9] —— *I'll tell thee my* disease.] *Disease* seems to be here *uneasiness*, or *discontent*.

The reason mov'd these warlike lords to this,
Was—for that (young king Richard thus remov'd,
Leaving no heir begotten of his body,)
I was the next by birth and parentage;
For by my mother I derived am
From Lionel duke of Clarence, the third son
To king Edward the third, whereas he,
From John of Gaunt doth bring his pedigree,
Being but fourth of that heroick line.
But mark; as, in this haughty great attempt,[1]
They laboured to plant the rightful heir,
I lost my liberty, and they their lives.
Long after this, when Henry the fifth,—
Succeeding his father Bolingbroke,—did reign,
Thy father, earl of Cambridge,—then deriv'd
From famous Edmund Langley, duke of York,—
Marrying my sister, that thy mother was,
Again, in pity of my hard distress,
Levied an army; weening to redeem,
And have install'd me in the diadem:
But, as the rest, so fell that noble earl,
And was beheaded. Thus the Mortimers,
In whom the title rested, were suppress'd.

Plan. Of which, my lord, your honour is the last.

Mor. True; and thou seest, that I no issue have;
And that my fainting words do warrant death:
Thou art my heir; the rest, I wish thee gather:[2]
And yet be wary in thy studious care.

Plan. Thy grave admonishments prevail with me:
But yet, methinks, my father's execution
Was nothing less than bloody tyranny.

Mor. With silence, nephew, be thou politick;

[1] —— *in this* haughty *great attempt,*] *Haughty* is *high.*

[2] *Thou art my heir; the rest, I wish thee gather:*] The sense is—I acknowledge thee to be my heir; the consequences which may be collected from thence, I recommend it to thee to draw.

Strong-fixed is the house of Lancaster,
And, like a mountain, not to be remov'd.
But now thy uncle is removing hence;
As princes do their courts, when they are cloy'd
With long continuance in a settled place.

Plan. O, uncle, 'would some part of my young years,
Might but redeem the passage of your age!

Mor. Thou dost then wrong me; as the slaught'rer doth,
Which giveth many wounds, when one will kill.
Mourn not, except thou sorrow for my good;
Only, give order for my funeral;
And so farewell; and fair be all thy hopes!
And prosperous be thy life, in peace, and war!
[*Dies.*

Plan. And peace, no war, befal thy parting soul!
In prison hast thou spent a pilgrimage,
And like a hermit overpass'd thy days.—
Well, I will lock his counsel in my breast;
And what I do imagine, let that rest.—
Keepers, convey him hence; and I myself
Will see his burial better than his life.—
[*Exeunt* Keepers, *bearing out* MORTIMER.
Here dies the dusky torch of Mortimer,
Chok'd with ambition of the meaner sort:—
And, for those wrongs, those bitter injuries,
Which Somerset hath offer'd to my house,—
I doubt not, but with honour to redress:
And therefore haste I to the parliament;
Either to be restored to my blood,
Or make my ill[3] the advantage of my good. [*Exit.*

[3] *Or make my* ill —] my *ill*, is my ill usage.

ACT III.

SCENE I. The same. The Parliament-House.

Flourish. Enter King HENRY, EXETER, GLOSTER, WARWICK, SOMERSET, *and* SUFFOLK; *the Bishop of* Winchester, RICHARD PLANTAGENET, *and Others.* GLOSTER *offers to put up a Bill*;[4] Winchester *snatches it, and tears it.*

Win. Com'st thou with deep premeditated lines,
With written pamphlets studiously devis'd,
Humphrey of Gloster? if thou canst accuse,
Or aught intend'st to lay unto my charge,
Do it without invention suddenly;
As I with sudden and extemporal speech
Purpose to answer what thou canst object.

Glo. Presumptuous priest! this place commands my patience,
Or thou should'st find thou hast dishonour'd me.
Think not, although in writing I preferr'd
The manner of thy vile outrageous crimes,
That therefore I have forg'd, or am not able
Verbatim to rehearse the method of my pen:
No, prelate; such is thy audacious wickedness,
Thy lewd, pestiferous, and dissentious pranks,
As very infants prattle of thy pride.
Thou art a most pernicious usurer;
Froward by nature, enemy to peace;
Lascivious, wanton, more than well beseems
A man of thy profession, and degree;
And for thy treachery, What's more manifest?
In that thou laid'st a trap to take my life,

[4] —— put up *a Bill;*] i. e. articles of accusation, for in this sense the word *bill* was sometimes used.

As well at London bridge, as at the Tower?
Beside, I fear me, if thy thoughts were sifted,
The king, thy sovereign, is not quite exempt
From envious malice of thy swelling heart.
Win. Gloster, I do defy thee.—Lords, vouchsafe
To give me hearing what I shall reply.
If I were covetous, ambitious, or perverse,
As he will have me, How am I so poor?
Or how haps it, I seek not to advance
Or raise myself, but keep my wonted calling?
And for dissention, Who preferreth peace
More than I do,—except I be provok'd?
No, my good lords, it is not that offends;
It is not that, that hath incens'd the duke:
It is, because no one should sway but he;
No one, but he, should be about the king;
And that engenders thunder in his breast,
And makes him roar these accusations forth.
But he shall know, I am as good——
Glo. As good?
Thou bastard of my grandfather![5]—
Win. Ay, lordly sir; For what are you, I pray,
But one imperious in another's throne?
Glo. Am I not the protector, saucy priest?
Win. And am I not a prelate of the church?
Glo. Yes, as an outlaw in a castle keeps,
And useth it to patronage his theft.
Win. Unreverent Gloster!
Glo. Thou art reverent
Touching thy spiritual function, not thy life.
Win. This Rome shall remedy.
War. Roam thither then.[6]

[5] *Thou bastard of my grandfather!*] The bishop of Winchester was an illegitimate son of John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, by Katharine Swynford, whom the Duke afterwards married.

[6] Roam *thither then.*] *Roam* to Rome. To *roam* is supposed to

Som. My lord, it were your duty to forbear.
War. Ay, see the bishop be not overborne.
Som. Methinks, my lord should be religious,
And know the office that belongs to such.
War. Methinks, his lordship should be humbler;
It fitteth not a prelate so to plead.
Som. Yes, when his holy state is touch'd so near.
War. State holy, or unhallow'd, what of that?
Is not his grace protector to the king?
Plan. Plantagenet, I see, must hold his tongue;
Lest it be said, *Speak, sirrah, when you should*;
Must your bold verdict enter talk with lords?
Else would I have a fling at Winchester. [*Aside.*
K. Hen. Uncles of Gloster, and of Winchester,
The special watchmen of our English weal;
I would prevail, if prayers might prevail,
To join your hearts in love and amity.
O, what a scandal is it to our crown,
That two such noble peers as ye, should jar!
Believe me, lords, my tender years can tell,
Civil dissention is a viperous worm,
That gnaws the bowels of the commonwealth.—
[*A noise within*; Down with the tawny coats!
What tumult's this?
War. An uproar, I dare warrant,
Begun through malice of the bishop's men.
[*A Noise again*; Stones! Stones!

Enter the Mayor *of* London, *attended.*

May. O, my good lords,—and virtuous Henry,—
Pity the city of London, pity us!
The bishop and the duke of Gloster's men,
Forbidden late to carry any weapon,

be derived from the cant of vagabonds, who often pretended a pilgrimage to Rome. JOHNSON.

Have fill'd their pockets full of pebble-stones;
And, banding themselves in contráry parts,
Do pelt so fast at one another's pate,
That many have their giddy brains knock'd out:
Our windows are broke down in every street,
And we, for fear, compell'd to shut our shops.

Enter, skirmishing, the Retainers of GLOSTER *and* Winchester, *with bloody pates.*

K. Hen. We charge you, on allegiance to ourself,
To hold your slaught'ring hands, and keep the peace.
Pray, uncle Gloster, mitigate this strife.
1 *Serv.* Nay, if we be
Forbidden stones, we'll fall to it with our teeth.
2 *Serv.* Do what ye dare, we are as resolute.
[*Skirmish again.*
Glo. You of my household, leave this peevish broil,
And set this unaccustom'd fight[7] aside.
1 *Serv.* My lord, we know your grace to be a man
Just and upright; and, for your royal birth,
Inferior to none, but his majesty:
And, ere that we will suffer such a prince,
So kind a father of the commonweal,
To be disgraced by an inkhorn mate,[8]
We, and our wives, and children, all will fight,
And have our bodies slaughter'd by thy foes.
2 *Serv.* Ay, and the very parings of our nails

[7] —— unaccustom'd *fight* —] *Unaccustom'd* is *unseemly, indecent.*

[8] —— *an inkhorn mate,*] A *bookman.* It was a term of reproach at the time towards men of learning, or men affecting to be learned.

Shall pitch a field, when we are dead.
[*Skirmish again.*
Glo. Stay, stay, I say!
And, if you love me, as you say you do,
Let me persuade you to forbear a while.
K. Hen. O, how this discord doth afflict my soul!—
Can you, my lord of Winchester, behold
My sighs and tears, and will not once relent?
Who should be pitiful, if you be not?
Or who should study to prefer a peace,
If holy churchmen take delight in broils?
War. My lord protector, yield;—yield Winchester;—
Except you mean, with obstinate repulse,
To slay your sovereign, and destroy the realm.
You see what mishief, and what murder too,
Hath been enacted through your enmity;
Then be at peace, except ye thirst for blood.
Win. He shall submit, or I will never yield.
Glo. Compassion on the king commands me stoop;
Or, I would see his heart out, ere the priest
Should ever get that privilege of me.
War. Behold, my lord of Winchester, the duke
Hath banish'd moody discontented fury,
As by his smoothed brows it doth appear:
Why look you still so stern, and tragical?
Glo. Here, Winchester, I offer thee my hand.
K. Hen. Fye, uncle Beaufort! I have heard you preach,
That malice was a great and grievous sin:
And will not you maintain the thing you teach,
But prove a chief offender in the same?
War. Sweet king!—the bishop hath a kindly gird.[9]—

[9] —— *hath a kindly* gird.] i. e. feels an emotion of kind remorse.

For shame, my lord of Winchester! relent;
What, shall a child instruct you what to do?
Win. Well, duke of Gloster, I will yield to thee;
Love for thy love, and hand for hand I give.
Glo. Ay; but, I fear me, with a hollow heart.—
See here, my friends, and loving countrymen;
This token serveth for a flag of truce,
Betwixt ourselves, and all our followers:
So help me God, as I dissemble not!
Win. So help me God, as I intend it not!
[*Aside.*
K. Hen. O loving uncle, kind duke of Gloster,
How joyful am I made by this contráct!—
Away, my masters! trouble us no more;
But join in friendship, as your lords have done.
1 *Serv.* Content; I'll to the surgeon's.
2 *Serv.* And so will I.
3 *Serv.* And I will see what physick the tavern affords. [*Exeunt* Servants, Mayor, *&c.*
War. Accept this scroll, most gracious sovereign;
Which in the right of Richard Plantagenet
We do exhibit to your majesty.
Glo. Well urg'd, my lord of Warwick;—for, sweet prince,
An if your grace mark every circumstance,
You have great reason to do Richard right:
Especially, for those occasions
At Eltham-place I told your majesty.
K. Hen. And those occasions, uncle, were of force:
Therefore, my loving lords, our pleasure is,
That Richard be restored to his blood.
War. Let Richard be restored to his blood;
So shall his father's wrongs be recompens'd.
Win. As will the rest, so willeth Winchester.
K. Hen. If Richard will be true, not that alone,

But all the whole inheritance I give,
That doth belong unto the house of York,
From whence you spring by lineal descent.

Plan. Thy humble servant vows obedience,
And humble service, till the point of death.

K. Hen. Stoop then, and set your knee against my foot:
And, in reguerdon[1] of that duty done,
I girt thee with the valiant sword of York:
Rise, Richard, like a true Plantagenet;
And rise created princely duke of York.

Plan. And so thrive Richard, as thy foes may fall!
And as my duty springs so perish they
That grudge one thought against your majesty!

All. Welcome, high prince, the mighty duke of York!

Som. Perish, base prince, ignoble duke of York! [*Aside.*

Glo. Now will it best avail your majesty,
To cross the seas, and to be crown'd in France:
The presence of a king engenders love
Amongst his subjects, and his loyal friends;
As it disanimates his enemies.

K. Hen. When Gloster says the word, king Henry goes;
For friendly counsel cuts off many foes.

Glo. Your ships already are in readiness.

[*Exeunt all but* EXETER.

Exe. Ay, we may march in England, or in France,
Not seeing what is likely to ensue:
This late dissention, grown betwixt the peers,
Burns under feigned ashes of forg'd love,
And will at last break out into a flame:
As fester'd members rot but by degrees,
Till bones, and flesh, and sinews, fall away,

[1] —— *reguerdon* —] Recompence, return.

So will this base and envious discord breed.
And now I fear that fatal prophecy,
Which, in the time of Henry, nam'd the fifth,
Was in the mouth of every sucking babe,—
That Henry, born at Monmouth, should win all;
And Henry, born at Windsor, should lose all:
Which is so plain, that Exeter doth wish
His days may finish ere that hapless time. [*Exit.*

SCENE II.

France. *Before* Roüen.

Enter La Pucelle *disguised, and* Soldiers *dressed like Countrymen, with Sacks upon their Backs.*

Puc. These are the city gates, the gates of Roüen,
Through which our policy must make a breach:
Take heed, be wary how you place your words;
Talk like the vulgar sort of market-men,
That come to gather money for their corn.
If we have entrance, (as, I hope, we shall,)
And that we find the slothful watch but weak,
I'll by a sign give notice to our friends,
That Charles the Dauphin may encounter them.

1 *Sold.* Our sacks shall be a mean to sack the city,
And we be lords and rulers over Roüen;
Therefore we'll knock. [*Knocks.*

Guard. [Within.] *Qui est là?*

Puc. *Paisans, pauvres gens de France:*
Poor market-folks, that come to sell their corn.

Guard. Enter, go in; the market-bell is rung.
[*Opens the Gates.*

Puc. Now, Roüen, I'll shake thy bulwarks to the ground.
[Pucelle, *&c. enter the City.*

Enter CHARLES, Bastard *of* Orleans, ALENÇON, *and Forces.*

Char. Saint Dennis bless this happy stratagem!
And once again we'll sleep secure in Roüen.
Bast. Here enter'd Pucelle, and her practisants;[2]
Now she is there, how will she specify
Where is the best and safest passage in?
Alen. By thrusting out a torch from yonder tower;
Which, once discern'd, shows, that her meaning is,—
No way to that,[3] for weakness, which she enter'd.

Enter LA PUCELLE *on a Battlement: holding out a Torch burning.*

Puc. Behold, this is the happy wedding torch,
That joineth Roüen unto her countrymen;
But burning fatal to the Talbotites.
Bast. See, noble Charles! the beacon of our friend,
The burning torch in yonder turret stands.
Char. Now shine it like a comet of revenge,
A prophet to the fall of all our foes!
Alen. Defer no time, Delays have dangerous ends;
Enter, and cry—*The Dauphin!*—presently,
And then do execution on the watch. [*They enter.*

[2] *Here enter'd Pucelle, and her* practisants;] *Practice,* in the language of that time, was *treachery,* and perhaps in the softer sense *stratagem. Practisants* are therefore *confederates in stratagems.* JOHNSON.

[3] *No way* to *that,*] That is, *no way equal to that,* no way so fit as that. JOHNSON.

Alarums. Enter TALBOT, *and certain* English.

Tal. France, thou shalt rue this treason with thy tears,
If Talbot but survive thy treachery.—
Pucelle, that witch, that damned sorceress,
Hath wrought this hellish mischief unawares,
That hardly we escap'd the pride of France.[4]
[*Exeunt to the Town.*

Alarum: Excursions. Enter, from the Town, BEDFORD, *brought in sick, in a Chair, with* TALBOT, BURGUNDY, *and the* English *Forces. Then, enter on the Walls,* LA PUCELLE, CHARLES, Bastard, ALENÇON, *and Others.*

Puc. Good morrow, gallants! want ye corn for bread?
I think, the duke of Burgundy will fast,
Before he'll buy again at such a rate:
'Twas full of darnel; Do you like the taste?
Bur. Scoff on, vile fiend, and shameless courtezan!
I trust, ere long, to choke thee with thine own,
And make thee curse the harvest of that corn.
Char. Your grace may starve, perhaps, before that time.
Bed. O, let no words, but deeds, revenge this treason!
Puc. What will you do, good grey-beard? break a lance,
And run a tilt at death within a chair?
Tal. Foul fiend of France, and hag of all despite,
Encompass'd with thy lustful paramours!
Becomes it thee to taunt his valiant age,
And twit with cowardice a man half dead?

[4] —— *the* pride *of France.*] *Pride* signifies the *haughty power.*

Damsel, I'll have a bout with you again,
Or else let Talbot perish with this shame.
Puc. Are you so hot, sir?—Yet, Pucelle, hold thy peace;
If Talbot do but thunder, rain will follow.—
[TALBOT, *and the rest, consult together.*
God speed the parliament! who shall be the speaker?
Tal. Dare ye come forth, and meet us in the field?
Puc. Belike, your lordship takes us then for fools,
To try if that our own be ours, or no.
Tal. I speak not to that railing Hecaté,
But unto thee, Alençon, and the rest;
Will ye, like soldiers, come and fight it out?
Alen. Signior, no.
Tal. Signior, hang!—base muleteers of France!
Like peasant foot-boys do they keep the walls,
And dare not take up arms like gentlemen.
Puc. Captains, away: let's get us from the walls;
For Talbot means no goodness, by his looks.—
God be wi' you, my lord! we came, sir, but to tell you
That we are here.
[*Exeunt* LA PUCELLE, *&c. from the Walls.*
Tal. And there will we be too, ere it be long,
Or else reproach be Talbot's greatest fame!—
Vow, Burgundy, by honour of thy house,
(Prick'd on by publick wrongs, sustain'd in France,)
Either to get the town again, or die:
And I,—as sure as English Henry lives,
And as his father here was conqueror;
As sure as in this late-betrayed town
Great Cœur-de-lion's heart was buried;
So sure I swear, to get the town, or die.
Bur. My vows are equal partners with thy vows.
Tal. But, ere we go, regard this dying prince,
The valiant duke of Bedford:—Come, my lord,

We will bestow you in some better place,
Fitter for sickness, and for crazy age.

Bed. Lord Talbot, do not so dishonour me:
Here will I sit before the walls of Roüen,
And will be partner of your weal, or woe.

Bur. Courageous Bedford, let us now persuade you.

Bed. Not to be gone from hence; for once I read,
That stout Pendragon,[5] in his litter, sick,
Came to the field, and vanquished his foes:
Methinks, I should revive the soldiers' hearts,
Because I ever found them as myself.

Tal. Undaunted spirit in a dying breast!—
Then be it so:—Heavens keep old Bedford safe!—
And now no more ado, brave Burgundy,
But gather we our forces out of hand,
And set upon our boasting enemy.

[*Exeunt* BURGUNDY, TALBOT, *and Forces, leaving* BEDFORD, *and Others.*

Alarum: Excursions. Enter Sir JOHN FASTOLFE, *and a* Captain.

Cap. Whither away, sir John Fastolfe, in such haste?

Fast. Whither away? to save myself by flight;
We are like to have the overthrow again.

Cap. What! will you fly, and leave lord Talbot?

Fast. Ay,
All the Talbots in the world, to save my life.

[*Exit.*

Cap. Cowardly knight! ill fortune follow thee!

[*Exit.*

[5] *That stout* Pendragon.] This hero was Uther Pendragon, brother to Aurelius, and father to king Arthur.

Shakspeare has imputed to Pendragon an exploit of Aurelius, who, says Holinshed, "even sicke of a flixe as he was, caused himselfe to be carried forth in a litter: with whose presence his people were so incouraged, that encountering with the Saxons they wan the victorie."

Retreat: Excursions. Enter, from the Town, LA PUCELLE, ALENÇON, CHARLES, *&c. and Exeunt, flying.*

Bed. Now, quiet soul, depart when heaven please;
For I have seen our enemies' overthrow.
What is the trust or strength of foolish man?
They, that of late were daring with their scoffs,
Are glad and fain by flight to save themselves.
[*Dies, and is carried off in his Chair.*

Alarum: Enter TALBOT, BURGUNDY, *and Others.*

Tal. Lost, and recover'd in a day again!
This is a double honour, Burgundy:
Yet, heavens have glory for this victory!
Bur. Warlike and martial Talbot, Burgundy
Enshrines thee in his heart; and there erects
Thy noble deeds, as valour's monument.
Tal. Thanks, gentle duke. But where is Pucelle now?
I think, her old familiar is asleep:
Now where's the Bastard's braves, and Charles his gleeks?
What, all a-mort? Roüen hangs her head for grief,
That such a valiant company are fled.
Now will we take some order[6] in the town,
Placing therein some expert officers;
And then depart to Paris, to the king;
For there young Harry, with his nobles, lies.
Bur. What wills lord Talbot, pleaseth Burgundy.
Tal. But yet, before we go, let's not forget
The noble duke of Bedford, late deceas'd,

[6] —— take *some order*—] i. e. make some necessary dispositions.

But see his exequies fulfill'd in Roüen,
A braver soldier never couched lance;
A gentler heart did never sway in court:
But kings and mightiest potentates, must die;
For that's the end of human misery. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE III.

The same. The Plains near the City.

Enter CHARLES, *the* Bastard, ALENÇON, LA PUCELLE, *and Forces.*

Puc. Dismay not, princes, at this accident,
Nor grieve that Roüen is so recovered:
Care is no cure, but rather corrosive,
For things that are not to be remedied.
Let frantick Talbot triumph for a while,
And like a peacock sweep along his tail;
We'll pull his plumes, and take away his train,
If Dauphin, and the rest, will be but rul'd.
Char. We have been guided by thee hitherto,
And of thy cunning had no diffidence;
One sudden foil shall never breed distrust.
Bast. Search out thy wit for secret policies,
And we will make thee famous through the world.
Alen. We'll set thy statue in some holy place,
And have thee reverenc'd like a blessed saint;
Employ thee then, sweet virgin, for our good.
Puc. Then thus it must be; this doth Joan devise:
By fair persuasions, mix'd with sugar'd words,
We will entice the duke of Burgundy
To leave the Talbot, and to follow us.
Char. Ay, marry, sweeting, if we could do that,
France were no place for Henry's warriors;
Nor should that nation boast it so with us,

But be extirped[7] from our provinces.

Alen. For ever should they be expuls'd[8] from France,
And not have title to an earldom here.

Puc. Your honours shall perceive how I will work,
To bring this matter to the wished end.
[*Drums heard.*
Hark! by the sound of drum, you may perceive
Their powers are marching unto Paris-ward.

An English *March. Enter, and pass over at a distance,* TALBOT *and his Forces.*

There goes the Talbot, with his colours spread;
And all the troops of English after him.

A French *March. Enter the Duke of* BURGUNDY *and Forces.*

Now, in the rearward, comes the duke, and his;
Fortune, in favour, makes him lag behind.
Summon a parley, we will talk with him.
[*A Parley sounded.*

Char. A parley with the duke of Burgundy.

Bur. Who craves a parley with the Burgundy?

Puc. The princely Charles of France, thy countryman.

Bur. What say'st thou, Charles? for I am marching hence.

Char. Speak, Pucelle; and enchant him with thy words.

Puc. Brave Burgundy, undoubted hope of France!
Stay, let thy humble handmaid speak to thee.

Bur. Speak on; but be not over-tedious.

Puc. Look on thy country, look on fertile France,
And see the cities and the towns defac'd

[7] *But be* extirped—] To *extirp* is to root out.
[8] —— expuls'd—] i. e. expelled.

By wasting ruin of the cruel foe!
As looks the mother on her lowly babe,
When death doth close his tender dying eyes,
See, see, the pining malady of France;
Behold the wounds, the most unnatural wounds,
Which thou thyself hast given her woful breast!
O, turn thy edged sword another way;
Strike those that hurt, and hurt not those that help!
One drop of blood, drawn from thy country's bosom,
Should grieve thee more than streams of foreign gore;
Return thee, therefore, with a flood of tears,
And wash away thy country's stained spots!

Bur. Either she hath bewitch'd me with her words,
Or nature makes me suddenly relent.

Puc. Besides, all French and France exclaims on thee,
Doubting thy birth and lawful progeny.
Who join'st thou with, but with a lordly nation,
That will not trust thee, but for profit's sake?
When Talbot hath set footing once in France,
And fashion'd thee that instrument of ill,
Who then, but English Henry, will be lord,
And thou be thrust out, like a fugitive?
Call we to mind,—and mark but this, for proof;—
Was not the duke of Orleans thy foe?
And was he not in England prisoner?
But, when they heard he was thine enemy,
They set him free, without his ransome paid,
In spite of Burgundy, and all his friends.
See then! thou fight'st against thy countrymen,
And join'st with them will be thy slaughter-men.
Come, come, return; return, thou wand'ring lord;
Charles, and the rest, will take thee in their arms.

Bur. I am vanquished; these haughty[9] words of hers

[9] —— *these* haughty—] *Haughty* does not mean *violent* in this place, but *elevated, high-spirited.*

Have batter'd me like roaring cannon-shot,
And made me almost yield upon my knees.—
Forgive me, country, and sweet countrymen!
And, lords, accept this hearty kind embrace:
My forces and my power of men are yours;—
So, farewell, Talbot; I'll no longer trust thee.

Puc. Done like a Frenchman; turn, and turn again![1]

Char. Welcome, brave duke! thy friendship makes us fresh.

Bast. And doth beget new courage in our breasts.

Alen. Pucelle hath bravely plaied her part in this,
And doth deserve a coronet of gold.

Char. Now let us on, my lords, and join our powers;
And seek how we may prejudice the foe. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE IV.

Paris. *A Room in the Palace.*

Enter King HENRY, GLOSTER, *and other Lords,* VERNON, BASSET, *&c. To them* TALBOT, *and some of his Officers.*

Tal. My gracious prince,—and honourable peers,—
Hearing of your arrival in this realm,
I have a while given truce unto my wars,
To do my duty to my sovereign:
In sign whereof, this arm—that hath reclaim'd
To your obedience fifty fortresses,
Twelve cities, and seven walled towns of strength,

[1] *Done like a Frenchman; turn, and turn again!*] The inconstancy of the French was always the subject of satire. I have read a dissertation written to prove that the index of the wind upon our steeples was made in form of a cock, to ridicule the French for their frequent changes. JOHNSON.

Besides five hundred prisoners of esteem,—
Lets fall his sword before your highness' feet;
And, with submissive loyalty of heart,
Ascribes the glory of his conquest got,
First to my God, and next unto your grace.

K. Hen. Is this the lord Talbot, uncle Gloster,
That hath so long been resident in France?

Glo. Yes, if it please your majesty, my liege.

K. Hen. Welcome, brave captain, and victorious lord!
When I was young, (as yet I am not old,)
I do remember how my father said,[2]
A stouter champion never handled sword.
Long since we were resolved[3] of your truth,
Your faithful service, and your toil in war;
Yet never have you tasted our reward,
Or been reguerdon'd[4] with so much as thanks,
Because till now we never saw your face:
Therefore, stand up; and, for these good deserts,
We here create you earl of Shrewsbury;
And in our coronation take your place.

[*Exeunt King* HENRY, GLOSTER, TALBOT, *and Nobles.*

Ver. Now, sir, to you, that were so hot at sea,
Disgracing of these colours that I wear[5]
In honour of my noble lord of York,—
Dar'st thou maintain the former words thou spak'st?

Bas. Yes, sir; as well as you dare patronage
The envious barking of your saucy tongue

[2] *I do remember how my father said,*] The author of this play was not a very correct historian. Henry was but nine months old when his father died, and never saw him.

[3] —— resolved,] i. e. confirmed in opinion of it.

[4] *Or been* reguerdon'd—] i. e. rewarded. The word was obsolete even in the time of Shakspeare. Chaucer uses it in the *Boke of Boethius.*

[5] —— *these* colours *that I wear*—] This was the badge of a *rose*, and not an officer's scarf

Against my lord, the duke of Somerset.

Ver. Sirrah, thy lord I honour as he is.

Bas. Why, what is he? as good a man as York.

Ver. Hark ye; not so: in witness, take ye that.

[*Strikes him.*

Bas. Villain, thou know'st, the law of arms is such,
That, who so draws a sword, 'tis present death;[6]
Or else this blow should broach thy dearest blood.
But I'll unto his majesty, and crave
I may have liberty to venge this wrong;
When thou shalt see, I'll meet thee to thy cost.

Ver. Well, miscreant, I'll be there as soon as you;
And, after, meet you sooner than you would.

[*Exeunt.*

ACT IV.

SCENE I. The same. A Room of State.

Enter King HENRY, GLOSTER, EXETER, YORK, SUFFOLK, SOMERSET, WINCHESTER, WARWICK, TALBOT, *the* Governour *of* Paris, *and Others.*

Glo. Lord bishop, set the crown upon his head.

Win. God save king Henry, of that name the sixth!

Glo. Now, governour of Paris, take your oath,—

[Governour *kneels.*

That you elect no other king but him:
Esteem none friends, but such as are his friends;
And none your foes, but such as shall pretend[7]

[6] *That,* who so *draws a sword, 'tis present death;*] i. e. with a menace in the court, or in the presence chamber.

[7] —— *such as shall* pretend—] To *pretend* is to *design,* to *intend.* JOHNSON.

Malicious practices against his state:
This shall ye do, so help you righteous God!
[*Exeunt* Gov. *and his Train.*

Enter Sir John Fastolfe.

Fast. My gracious sovereign, as I rode from Calais,
To haste unto your coronation,
A letter was deliver'd to my hands,
Writ to your grace from the duke of Burgundy.
Tal. Shame to the duke of Burgundy, and thee!
I vow'd, base knight, when I did meet thee next,
To tear the garter from thy craven's leg,[8]
[*Plucking it off.*
(Which I have done) because unworthily
Thou wast installed in that high degree.—
Pardon me, princely Henry, and the rest:
This dastard, at the battle of Patay,
When but in all I was six thousand strong,
And that the French were almost ten to one,—
Before we met, or that a stroke was given,
Like to a trusty squire, did run away;
In which assault we lost twelve hundred men;
Myself, and divers gentlemen beside,
Were there surpriz'd, and taken prisoners.
Then judge, great lords, if I have done amiss;
Or whether that such cowards ought to wear
This ornament of knighthood, yea, or no.
Glo. To say the truth, this fact was infamous,
And ill beseeming any common man;
Much more a knight, a captain, and a leader.
Tal. When first this order was ordain'd, my lords,
Knights of the garter were of noble birth;
Valiant, and virtuous, full of haughty courage,[9]

[8] *To tear the garter from thy* craven's *leg,*] i. e. thy mean, dastardly leg.

[9] —— haughty *courage,*] *Haughty* is here in its original sense for *high.*

Such as were grown to credit by the wars;
Not fearing death, nor shrinking for distress,
But always resolute in most extremes.[1]
He then, that is not furnish'd in this sort,
Doth but usurp the sacred name of knight,
Profaning this most honourable order;
And should (if I were worthy to be judge,)
Be quite degraded, like a hedge-born swain
That doth presume to boast of gentle blood.

K. Hen. Stain to thy countrymen! thou hear'st thy doom:
Be packing therefore, thou that wast a knight;
Henceforth we banish thee, on pain of death:—
[*Exit* FASTOLFE.
And now, my lord protector, view the letter
Sent from our uncle duke of Burgundy.

Glo. What means his grace, that he hath chang'd his style? [*Viewing the superscription.*
No more but, plain and bluntly,—*To the king?*
Hath he forgot, he is his sovereign?
Or doth this churlish superscription
Pretend[2] some alteration in good will?
What's here?—*I have, upon especial cause,*—
[Reads.
Mov'd with compassion of my country's wreck,
Together with the pitiful complaints
Of such as your oppression feeds upon,—
Forsaken your pernicious faction,
And join'd with Charles, the rightful king of France.
O monstrous treachery! Can this be so;
That in alliance, amity, and oaths,
There should be found such false dissembling guile?

[1] —— *in* most *extremes.*] i. e. in *greatest* extremities.

[2] Pretend—] To *pretend* seems to be here used in its Latin sense, i. e. to *hold out*, to *stretch forward*. It may mean, however, as in other places, to *design*.

K. Hen. What! doth my uncle Burgundy revolt?
Glo. He doth, my lord; and is become your foe.
K. Hen. Is that the worst, this letter doth contain?
Glo. It is the worst, and all, my lord, he writes.
K. Hen. Why then, lord Talbot there shall talk with him,
And give him chastisement for this abuse:—
My lord, how say you? are you not content?
Tal. Content, my liege? Yes; but that I am prevented,[3]
I should have begg'd I might have been employ'd.
K. Hen. Then gather strength, and march unto him straight:
Let him perceive, how ill we brook his treason;
And what offence it is, to flout his friends.
Tal. I go, my lord; in heart desiring still,
You may behold confusion of your foes. [*Exit.*

Enter VERNON *and* BASSET.

Ver. Grant me the combat, gracious sovereign!
Bas. And me, my lord, grant me the combat too!
York. This is my servant; Hear him, noble prince!
Som. And this is mine; Sweet Henry, favour him!
K. Hen. Be patient, lords; and give them leave to speak.—
Say, gentlemen, What makes you thus exclaim?
And wherefore crave you combat? or with whom?
Ver. With him, my lord; for he hath done me wrong.
Bas. And I with him; for he hath done me wrong.
K. Hen. What is that wrong whereof you both complain?

[3] —— *I am* prevented,] *Prevented* is here, *anticipated;* a Latinism.

First let me know, and then I'll answer you.
Bas. Crossing the sea from England into France,
This fellow here, with envious carping tongue,
Upbraided me about the rose I wear;
Saying—the sanguine colour of the leaves
Did represent my master's blushing cheeks,
When stubbornly he did repugn the truth,[4]
About a certain question in the law,
Argu'd betwixt the duke of York and him;
With other vile and ignominious terms:
In confutation of which rude reproach,
And in defence of my lord's worthiness,
I crave the benefit of law of arms.
Ver. And that is my petition, noble lord:
For though he seem, with forged quaint conceit,
To set a gloss upon his bold intent,
Yet know, my lord, I was provok'd by him;
And he first took exceptions at this badge,
Pronouncing—that the paleness of this flower
Bewray'd the faintness of my master's heart.
York. Will not this malice, Somerset, be left?
Som. Your private grudge, my lord of York, will out,
Though ne'er so cunningly you smother it.
K. Hen. Good Lord! what madness rules in brain-sick men;
When, for so slight and frivolous a cause,
Such factious emulations shall arise!—
Good cousins both, of York and Somerset,
Quiet yourselves, I pray, and be at peace.
York. Let this dissention first be tried by fight,
And then your highness shall command a peace.
Som. The quarrel toucheth none but us alone;
Betwixt ourselves let us decide it then.
York. There is my pledge; accept it, Somerset.

[4] —— *did* repugn *the truth,*] To *repugn* is to resist.

Ver. Nay, let it rest where it began at first.
Bas. Confirm it so, mine honourable lord.
Glo. Confirm it so? Confounded be your strife!
And perish ye, with your audacious prate!
Presumptuous vassals! are you not asham'd,
With this immodest clamorous outrâge
To trouble and disturb the king and us?
And you, my lords,—methinks, you do not well,
To bear with their perverse objections;
Much less, to take occasion from their mouths
To raise a mutiny betwixt yourselves;
Let me persuade you take a better course.
Exe. It grieves his highness;—Good my lords; be friends.
K. Hen. Come hither, you that would be combatants:
Henceforth, I charge you, as you love our favour,
Quite to forget this quarrel, and the cause.—
And you, my lords,—remember where we are;
In France, amongst a fickle wavering nation:
If they perceive dissention in our looks,
And that within ourselves we disagree,
How will their grudging stomachs be provok'd
To wilful disobedience, and rebel?
Beside, What infamy will there arise,
When foreign princes shall be certified,
That, for a toy, a thing of no regard,
King Henry's peers, and chief nobility,
Destroy'd themselves, and lost the realm of France?
O, think upon the conquest of my father,
My tender years; and let us not forego
That for a trifle, that was bought with blood!
Let me be umpire in this doubtful strife.
I see no reason, if I wear this rose,
[*Putting on a red Rose.*
That any one should therefore be suspicious
I more incline to Somerset, than York:

On us thou canst not enter, but by death:
For, I protest, we are well fortified,
And strong enough to issue out and fight:
If thou retire, the Dauphin, well appointed,
Stands with the snares of war to tangle thee:
On either hand thee there are squadrons pitch'd,
To wall thee from the liberty of flight;
And no way canst thou turn thee for redress,
But death doth front thee with apparent spoil,
And pale destruction meets thee in the face.
Ten thousand French have ta'en the sacrament,
To rive their dangerous artillery[7]
Upon no Christian soul but English Talbot.
Lo! there thou stand'st, a breathing valiant man,
Of an invincible unconquer'd spirit:
This is the latest glory of thy praise,
That I, thy enemy, due thee withal;[8]
For ere the glass, that now begins to run,
Finish the process of his sandy hour,
These eyes, that see thee now well coloured,
Shall see thee wither'd, bloody, pale, and dead.
[*Drum afar off.*
Hark! hark! the Dauphin's drum, a warning bell,
Sings heavy musick to thy timorous soul;
And mine shall ring thy dire departure out.
[*Exeunt* General, *&c. from the Walls.*

Tal. He fables not, I hear the enemy;—
Out, some light horsemen, and peruse their wings.—
O, negligent and heedless discipline!
How are we park'd, and bounded in a pale;
A little herd of England's timorous deer,

[7] *To* rive *their dangerous artillery* —] To *rive* their artillery means only to *fire* their artillery. To *rive* is to *burst*; and a cannon, when fired, has so much the appearance of bursting, that, in the language of poetry, it may be well said to burst. We say, a cloud bursts, when it thunders.

[8] —— due *thee withal;*] To *due* is to *endue*, to *deck*, *to grace.*

Maz'd with a yelping kennel of French curs!
If we be English deer, be then in blood:[9]
Not rascal-like,[1] to fall down with a pinch;
But rather moody-mad, and desperate stags,
Turn on the bloody hounds with heads of steel,
And make the cowards stand aloof at bay:
Sell every man his life as dear as mine,
And they shall find dear deer of us, my friends.—
God, and Saint George! Talbot, and England's right!
Prosper our colours in this dangerous fight!
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE III.

Plains in Gascony.

Enter YORK, *with Forces; to him a* Messenger.

York. Are not the speedy scouts return'd again,
That dogg'd the mighty army of the Dauphin?
Mess. They are return'd, my lord; and give it out,
That he is march'd to Bourdeaux with his power,
To fight with Talbot: As he march'd along,
By your espials were discovered
Two mightier troops than that the Dauphin led;
Which join'd with him, and made their march for Bourdeaux.
York. A plague upon that villain Somerset;
That thus delays my promised supply
Of horsemen, that were levied for this siege!
Renowned Talbot doth expect my aid;
And I am lowted[2] by a traitor villain,

[9] —— *be then in* blood:] Be in high spirits, be of true mettle.
[1] *Not* rascal-*like,*] A *rascal* deer is the term of chase for lean poor deer.
[2] *And I am* lowted —] i. e. treated with contempt like a *lowt,* or low country fellow.

And cannot help the noble chevalier:
God comfort him in this necessity!
If he miscarry, farewell wars in France.

Enter Sir WILLIAM LUCY.

Lucy. Thou princely leader of our English strength,
Never so needful on the earth of France,
Spur to the rescue of the noble Talbot;
Who now is girdled with a waist of iron,
And hemm'd about with grim destruction:
To Bourdeaux, warlike duke! to Bourdeaux,
Else, farewell Talbot, France, and England's honour.

York. O God! that Somerset—who in proud heart
Doth stop my cornets—were in Talbot's place!
So should we save a valiant gentleman,
By forfeiting a traitor and a coward.
Mad ire, and wrathful fury, makes me weep,
That thus we die, while remiss traitors sleep.

Lucy. O, send some succour to the distress'd lord!

York. He dies, we lose; I break my warlike word:
We mourn, France smiles; we lose, they daily get;
All 'long of this vile traitor Somerset.

Lucy. Then, God take mercy on brave Talbot's soul!
And on his son, young John; whom, two hours since,
I met in travel toward his warlike father!
This seven years did not Talbot see his son;
And now they meet where both their lives are done.[3]

York. Alas! what joy shall noble Talbot have,
To bid his young son welcome to his grave?
Away! vexation almost stops my breath,
That sunder'd friends greet in the hour of death.—

[3] —— *are* done.] i. e. expended, consumed. The word is yet used in this sense in the Western counties.

Lucy, farewell: no more my fortune can,
But curse the cause I cannot aid the man.—
Maine, Blois, Poictiers, and Tours, are won away,
'Long all of Somerset, and his delay. [*Exit.*

Lucy. Thus, while the vulture[4] of sedition
Feeds in the bosom of such great commanders,
Sleeping neglection doth betray to loss
The conquest of our scarce-cold conqueror,
That ever-living man of memory,
Henry the fifth:—Whiles they each other cross,
Lives, honours, lands, and all, hurry to loss.
[*Exit.*

SCENE IV.

Other Plains of Gascony.

Enter SOMERSET, *with his Forces; an* Officer *of* TALBOT'S *with him.*

Som. It is too late; I cannot send them now:
This expedition was by York, and Talbot,
Too rashly plotted; all our general force
Might with a sally of the very town
Be buckled with: the over-daring Talbot
Hath sullied all his gloss of former honour,
By this unheedful, desperate, wild adventure:
York set him on to fight, and die in shame,
That, Talbot dead, great York might bear the name.

Off. Here is sir William Lucy, who with me
Set from our o'er-match'd forces forth for aid.

Enter Sir WILLIAM LUCY.

Som. How now, sir William? whither were you sent?

[4] —— *the* vulture —] Alluding to the tale of Prometheus.

Lucy. Whither, my lord? from bought and sold lord Talbot;[5]
Who, ring'd about[6] with bold adversity,
Cries out for noble York and Somerset,
To beat assailing death from his weak legions.
And whiles the honourable captain there
Drops bloody sweat from his war-wearied limbs,
And, in advantage ling'ring,[7] looks for rescue,
You, his false hopes, the trust of England's honour,
Keep off aloof with worthless emulation.[8]
Let not your private discord keep away
The levied succours that should lend him aid,
Whiles he, renowned noble gentleman,
Yields up his life unto a world of odds:
Orleans the Bastard, Charles, and Burgundy,
Alençon, Reignier, compass him about,
And Talbot perisheth by your default.

Som. York set him on, York should have sent him aid.

Lucy. And York as fast upon your grace exclaims;
Swearing that you withhold his levied host,
Collected for this expedition.

Som. York lies; he might have sent and had the horse:
I owe him little duty, and less love;
And take foul scorn, to fawn on him by sending.

Lucy. The fraud of England, not the force of France,
Hath now entrapp'd the noble-minded Talbot:

[5] —— *from bought and sold Lord Talbot;*] i. e. from one utterly ruined by the treacherous practices of others.

[6] —— *ring'd about* —] Environed, encircled.

[7] —— *in* advantage *ling'ring,*] Protracting his resistance by the advantage of a strong post.

[8] —— *worthless* emulation.] In this line, *emulation* signifies merely *rivalry,* not struggle for superior excellence.

Never to England shall he bear his life;
But dies, betraied to fortune by your strife.
Som. Come, go; I will despatch the horsemen straight:
Within six hours they will be at his aid.
Lucy. Too late comes rescue; he is ta'en, or slain:
For fly he could not, if he would have fled;
And fly would Talbot never, though he might.
Som. If he be dead, brave Talbot then adieu!
Lucy. His fame lives in the world, his shame in you. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE V.

The English *Camp near* Bourdeaux.

Enter TALBOT *and* JOHN *his Son.*

Tal. O young John Talbot! I did send for thee,
To tutor thee in stratagems of war;
That Talbot's name might be in thee reviv'd,
When sapless age, and weak unable limbs,
Should bring thy father to his drooping chair.
But,—O malignant and ill-boding stars!—
Now thou art come unto a feast of death,[9]
A terrible and unavoided[1] danger:
Therefore, dear boy, mount on my swiftest horse;
And I'll direct thee how thou shalt escape
By sudden flight: come, dally not, begone.
John. Is my name Talbot? and am I your son?
And shall I fly? O, if you love my mother,
Dishonour not her honourable name,

[9] —— *a* feast *of* death,] To a field where death will be *feasted* with slaughter.
[1] —— *unavoided* —] for *unavoidable*.

To make a bastard, and a slave of me:
The world will say—He is not Talbot's blood,
That basely fled, when noble Talbot stood.[2]

Tal. Fly, to revenge my death, if I be slain.

John. He, that flies so, will ne'er return again.

Tal. If we both stay, we both are sure to die.

John. Then let me stay; and, father, do you fly:
Your loss is great, so your regard[3] should be;
My worth unknown, no loss is known in me.
Upon my death the French can little boast;
In yours they will, in you all hopes are lost.
Flight cannot stain the honour you have won;
But mine it will, that no exploit have done:
You fled for vantage every one will swear;
But, if I bow, they'll say—it was for fear.
There is no hope that ever I will stay,
If, the first hour, I shrink, and run away.
Here, on my knee, I beg mortality,
Rather than life preserv'd with infamy.

Tal. Shall all thy mother's hopes lie in one tomb?

John. Ay, rather than I'll shame my mother's womb.

Tal. Upon my blessing I command thee go.

John. To fight I will, but not to fly the foe.

Tal. Part of thy father may be sav'd in thee.

John. No part of him, but will be shame in me.

Tal. Thou never had'st renown, nor canst not lose it.

John. Yes, your renowned name; Shall flight abuse it?

[2] —— *noble Talbot stood.*] For what reason this scene is written in rhyme, I cannot guess. If Shakspeare had not in other plays mingled his rhymes and blank verses in the same manner, I should have suspected that this dialogue had been a part of some other poem which was never finished, and that being loath to throw his labour away, he inserted it here. JOHNSON.

[3] —— *your regard* —] Your care of your own safety.

Tal. Thy father's charge shall clear thee from that stain.

John. You cannot witness for me, being slain.
If death be so apparent, then both fly.

Tal. And leave my followers here, to fight, and die?
My age was never tainted with such shame.

John. And shall my youth be guilty of such blame?
No more can I be sever'd from your side,
Than can yourself yourself in twain divide:
Stay, go, do what you will, the like do I;
For live I will not, if my father die.

Tal. Then here I take my leave of thee, fair son,
Born to eclipse[4] thy life this afternoon.
Come, side by side together live and die;
And soul with soul from France to heaven fly.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE VI.

A Field of Battle.

Alarum: Excursions, wherein TALBOT'S *Son is hemmed about, and* TALBOT *rescues him.*

Tal. Saint George and victory! fight, soldiers, fight:
The regent hath with Talbot broke his word,
And left us to the rage of France his sword.
Where is John Talbot?—pause, and take thy breath;
I gave thee life, and rescu'd thee from death.

John. O twice my father! twice am I thy son:
The life, thou gav'st me first, was lost and done;

[4] ——— *fair* son,
Born to eclipse, *&c.*] A quibble, between *son* and *sun*.

Till with thy warlike sword, despite of fate,
To my determin'd time[5] thou gav'st new date.
Tal. When from the Dauphin's crest thy sword struck fire,
It warm'd thy father's heart with proud desire
Of bold-fac'd victory. Then leaden age,
Quicken'd with youthful spleen, and warlike rage,
Beat down Alençon, Orleans, Burgundy,
And from the pride of Gallia rescu'd thee.
The ireful bastard Orleans—that drew blood
From thee, my boy; and had the maidenhood
Of thy first fight—I soon encountered;
And, interchanging blows, I quickly shed
Some of his bastard blood; and, in disgrace,
Bespoke him thus: *Contaminated, base,*
And misbegotten blood I spill of thine,
Mean and right poor; for that pure blood of mine,
Which thou didst force from Talbot, my brave boy:—
Here, purposing the Bastard to destroy,
Came in strong rescue. Speak, thy father's care;
Art not thou weary, John? How didst thou fare?
Wilt thou yet leave the battle, boy, and fly,
Now thou art seal'd the son of chivalry?
Fly, to revenge my death, when I am dead;
The help of one stands me in little stead.
O, too much folly is it, well I wot,
To hazard all our lives in one small boat.
If I to-day die not with Frenchmen's rage,
To-morrow I shall die with mickle age:
By me they nothing gain, an if I stay,
'Tis but the short'ning of my life one day:
In thee thy mother dies, our household's name,
My death's revenge, thy youth, and England's fame:
All these, and more, we hazard by thy stay;
All these are sav'd, if thou wilt fly away.

[5] *To my* determin'd *time* —] i. e. *ended.*

John. The sword of Orleans hath not made me smart,
These words of yours draw life-blood from my heart:
On that advantage, bought with such a shame,
(To save a paltry life, and slay bright fame,)[6]
Before young Talbot from old Talbot fly,
The coward horse, that bears me, fall and die!
And like me to the peasant boys of France;[7]
To be shame's scorn, and subject of mischance!
Surely, by all the glory you have won,
An if I fly, I am not Talbot's son:
Then talk no more of flight, it is no boot;
If son to Talbot, die at Talbot's foot.

Tal. Then follow thou thy desperate sire of Crete,
Thou Icarus; thy life to me is sweet:
If thou wilt fight, fight by thy father's side;
And, commendable prov'd, let's die in pride.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE VII.

Another Part of the same.

Alarum: Excursions. Enter TALBOT *wounded, supported by a* Servant.

Tal. Where is my other life?—mine own is gone;—
O, where's young Talbot? where is valiant John?—

[6] On that *advantage, bought with such a shame,*
(To save a paltry life, and slay bright fame,)] The sense is—Before young Talbot fly from his father, (in order to save his life while he destroys his character,) *on*, or for the sake of, *the advantages* you mention, namely, preserving our household's name, &c. may my coward horse drop down dead! MALONE.

[7] *And* like *me to the peasant boys of France;*] *To* like *one to the peasants*, is, to *compare*, to *level by comparison*.

Triumphant death, smear'd with captivity![8]
Young Talbot's valour makes me smile at thee:—
When he perceiv'd me shrink, and on my knee,
His bloody sword he brandish'd over me,
And, like a hungry lion, did commence
Rough deeds of rage, and stern impatience;
But when my angry guardant stood alone,
Tend'ring my ruin,[9] and assail'd of none,
Dizzy-ey'd fury, and great rage of heart,
Suddenly made him from my side to start
Into the clust'ring battle of the French:
And in that sea of blood my boy did drench
His overmounting spirit; and there died
My Icarus, my blossom, in his pride.

Enter Soldiers, *bearing the Body of* JOHN TALBOT.

Serv. O my dear lord! lo, where your son is borne!

Tal. Thou antick death,[1] which laugh'st us here to scorn,
Anon, from thy insulting tyranny,
Coupled in bonds of perpetuity,
Two Talbots, winged through the lither sky,[2]
In thy despite, shall 'scape mortality.—
O thou whose wounds become hard-favoured death,
Speak to thy father, ere thou yield thy breath:
Brave death by speaking, whether he will, or no;
Imagine him a Frenchman, and thy foe.—

[8] *Triumphant death, smear'd with captivity!*] That is, death stained and dishonoured with captivity. JOHNSON.

[9] Tend'ring *my ruin,*] Watching me with tenderness in my fall.

[1] *Thou antick death,*] The *fool,* or *antick* of the play, made sport by mocking the graver personages.

[2] —— *winged through the* lither *sky,*] *Lither* is *flexible* or *yielding.*

Poor boy! he smiles, methinks; as who should say—
Had death been French, then death had died today.
Come, come, and lay him in his father's arms;
My spirit can no longer bear these harms.
Soldiers, adieu! I have what I would have,
Now my old arms are young John Talbot's grave.
[*Dies.*

Alarums. Exeunt Soldiers *and* Servant, *leaving the two Bodies. Enter* CHARLES, ALENÇON, BURGUNDY, Bastard, LA PUCELLE, *and Forces.*

Char. Had York and Somerset brought rescue in,
We should have found a bloody day of this.
Bast. How the young whelp of Talbot's raging-wood,[3]
Did flesh his puny sword in Frenchmen's blood![4]
Puc. Once I encounter'd him, and thus I said,
Thou maiden youth be vanquish'd by a maid:
But—with a proud, majestical high scorn,—
He answered thus; *Young Talbot was not born*
To be the pillage of a giglot wench:[5]
So, rushing in the bowels of the French,
He left me proudly, as unworthy fight.
Bur. Doubtless, he would have made a noble knight:
See, where he lies inhersed in the arms
Of the most bloody nurser of his harms.

[3] —— *raging*-wood,] i. e. raging *mad.*

[4] —— *in Frenchmen's blood!*] The return of rhyme where young Talbot is again mentioned, and in no other place, strengthens the suspicion that these verses were originally part of some other work, and were copied here only to save the trouble of composing new. JOHNSON.

[5] —— *of a* giglot *wench:*] *Giglot* is a *wanton*, or a *strumpet.*

Bast. Hew them to pieces, hack their bones asunder;
Whose life was England's glory, Gallia's wonder.
Char. O, no; forbear: for that which we have fled
During the life, let us not wrong it dead.

Enter Sir WILLIAM LUCY, *attended; a French Herald preceding.*

Lucy. Herald,
Conduct me to the Dauphin's tent; to know
Who hath obtain'd the glory of the day.
Char. On what submissive message art thou sent?
Lucy. Submission, Dauphin? 'tis a mere French word;
We English warriors wot not what it means.
I come to know what prisoners thou hast ta'en,
And to survey the bodies of the dead.
Char. For prisoners ask'st thou? hell our prison is.
But tell me whom thou seek'st.
Lucy. Where is the great Alcides of the field,
Valiant lord Talbot, earl of Shrewsbury?
Created, for his rare success in arms,
Great earl of Washford, Waterford, and Valence;
Lord Talbot of Goodrig and Urchinfield,
Lord Strange of Blackmere, lord Verdun of Alton,
Lord Cromwell, of Wingfield, Lord Furnival of Sheffield,
The thrice victorious lord of Falconbridge;
Knight of the noble order of Saint George,
Worthy Saint Michael, and the golden fleece;
Great mareshal to Henry the sixth,
Of all his wars within the realm of France?
Puc. Here is a silly stately style indeed!
The Turk, that two and fifty kingdoms hath,

Writes not so tedious a style as this.—
Him, that thou magnifiest with all these titles,
Stinking, and fly-blown, lies here at our feet.
Lucy. Is Talbot slain; the Frenchmen's only scourge,
Your kingdoms terrour and black Nemesis?
O, were mine eye-balls into bullets turn'd,
That I, in rage, might shoot them at your faces!
O, that I could but call these dead to life!
It were enough to fright the realm of France:
Were but his picture left among you here,
It would amaze the proudest of you all.
Give me their bodies; that I may bear them hence,
And give them burial as beseems their worth.
Puc. I think, this upstart is old Talbot's ghost,
He speaks with such a proud commanding spirit.
For God's sake, let him have 'em; to keep them here,
They would but stink, and putrefy the air.
Char. Go, take their bodies hence.
Lucy. I'll bear them hence:
But from their ashes shall be rear'd
A phœnix that shall make all France afeard.
Char. So we be rid of them, do with 'em what thou wilt.
And now to Paris, in this conquering vein;
All will be ours, now bloody Talbot's slain. [*Exeunt.*

ACT V.

SCENE I. London. *A Room in the Palace.*

Enter King HENRY, GLOSTER, *and* EXETER.

K. Hen. Have you perus'd the letters from the pope,
The emperor, and the earl of Armagnac?

Glo. I have, my lord; and their intent is this,—
They humbly sue unto your excellence,
To have a godly peace concluded of,
Between the realms of England and of France.

K. Hen. How doth your grace affect their motion?

Glo. Well, my good lord; and as the only means
To stop effusion of our Christian blood,
And 'stablish quietness on every side.

K. Hen. Ay, marry, uncle; for I always thought,
It was both impious and unnatural,
That such immanity[6] and bloody strife
Should reign among professors of one faith.

Glo. Beside, my lord,—the sooner to effect,
And surer bind, this knot of amity,—
The earl of Armagnac—near knit to Charles,
A man of great authority in France,—
Proffers his only daughter to your grace
In marriage, with a large and sumptuous dowry.

K. Hen. Marriage, uncle! alas! my years are young;
And fitter is my study and my books,
Than wanton dalliance with a paramour.
Yet, call the ambassadors; and, as you please,

[6] —— *immanity* —] i. e. barbarity, savageness.

So let them have their answers every one:
I shall be well content with any choice,
Tends to God's glory, and my country's weal.

Enter a Legate, *and Two* Ambassadors, *with* WINCHESTER, *in a Cardinal's Habit.*

Exe. What! is my lord of Winchester install'd,
And call'd unto a cardinal's degree![7]
Then, I perceive, that will be verified,
Henry the fifth did sometime prophecy,—
If once he come to be a cardinal,
He'll make his cap co-equal with the crown.

K. Hen. My lords ambassadors, your several suits
Have been consider'd and debated on.
Your purpose is both good and reasonable:
And, therefore, are we certainly resolv'd
To draw conditions of a friendly peace;
Which, by my lord of Winchester, we mean
Shall be transported presently to France.

Glo. And for the proffer of my lord your master,—
I have inform'd his highness so at large,
As—liking of the lady's virtuous gifts,
Her beauty, and the value of her dower,—
He doth intend she shall be England's queen.

K. Hen. In argument and proof of which contráct,
Bear her this jewel, [*To the* Amb.] pledge of my affection.
And so, my lord protector, see them guarded,
And safely brought to Dover; where, inshipp'd,

[7] *What! is my lord of Winchester install'd,*
And call'd unto a cardinal's degree!] This argues a great forgetfulness in the poet. In the first Act Gloster says:

I'll canvass thee in thy broad *cardinal's* hat:"

and it is strange that the Duke of Exeter should not know of his advancement.

Commit them to the fortune of the sea.

Exeunt King HENRY *and Train*; GLOSTER, EXETER, *and* Ambassadors.

Win. Stay, my lord legate; you shall first receive
The sum of money, which I promised
Should be delivered to his holiness
For clothing me in these grave ornaments.

Leg. I will attend upon your lordship's leisure.

Win. Now, Winchester will not submit, I trow,
Or be inferior to the proudest peer.
Humphrey of Gloster, thou shalt well perceive,
That, neither in birth,* or for authority,
The bishop will be overborne by thee:
I'll either make thee stoop, and bend thy knee,
Or sack this country with a mutiny. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE II.

France. *Plains in* Anjou.

Enter CHARLES, BURGUNDY, ALENÇON, LA PUCELLE, *and Forces, marching.*

Char. These news, my lords, may cheer our drooping spirits:
'Tis said, the stout Parisians do revolt,
And turn again unto the warlike French.

Alen. Then march to Paris, royal Charles of France,
And keep not back your powers in dalliance.

Puc. Peace be amongst them, if they turn to us;
Else, ruin combat with their palaces!

* *That, neither in birth.*] I would read—*for* birth. That is, thou shalt not rule me, though thy birth is legitimate, and thy authority supreme. JOHNSON.

Enter a Messenger.

Mess. Success unto our valiant general,
And happiness to his accomplices!
Char. What tidings send our scouts? I pr'ythee, speak.
Mess. The English army, that divided was
Into two parts, is now conjoin'd in one;
And means to give you battle presently.
Char. Somewhat too sudden, sirs, the warning is;
But we will presently provide for them.
Bur. I trust, the ghost of Talbot is not there;
Now he is gone, my lord, you need not fear.
Puc. Of all base passions, fear is most accurs'd:—
Command the conquest, Charles, it shall be thine;
Let Henry fret, and all the world repine.
Char. Then on, my lords; And France be fortunate! [*Exeunt.*

SCENE III.

The same. Before Angiers.

Alarums: Excursions. Enter La Pucelle.

Puc. The regent conquers, and the Frenchmen fly.—
Now help, ye charming spells, and periapts;[9]
And ye choice spirits that admonish me,
And give me signs of future accidents! [*Thunder.*
You speedy helpers, that are substitutes
Under the lordly monarch of the north,[1]
Appear, and aid me in this enterprize!

[9] —— *ye charming spells, and* periapts;] Charms sowed up. *Periapts* were worn about the neck as preservatives from disease or danger. Of these, the first chapter of *St. John's* Gospel was deemed the most efficacious.

[1] —— *monarch of the north,*] The north was always supposed

Enter Fiends.

This speedy quick appearance argues proof
Of your accustom'd diligence to me.
Now, ye familiar spirits, that are call'd
Out of the powerful regions under earth,
Help me this once, that France may get the field.
[*They walk about, and speak not.*
O, hold me not with silence over-long!
Where[2] I was wont to feed you with my blood,
I'll lop a member off, and give it you,
In earnest of a further benefit;
So you do condescend to help me now.—
[*They hang their heads.*
No hope to have redress?—My body shall
Pay recompense, if you will grant my suit.
[*They shake their heads.*
Cannot my body, nor blood-sacrifice,
Entreat you to your wonted furtherance?
Then take my soul; my body, soul, and all,
Before that England give the French the foil.
[*They depart.*
See! they forsake me. Now the time is come,
That France must vail her lofty-plumed crest,[3]
And let her head fall into England's lap.
My ancient incantations are too weak,
And hell too strong for me to buckle with:
Now, France, thy glory droopeth to the dust. [*Exit.*

Alarums. *Enter* French *and* English, *fighting.* La Pucelle *and* York *fight hand to hand.* La Pucelle *is taken.* *The* French *fly.*

York. Damsel of France, I think, I have you fast:

to be the particular habitation of bad spirits. Milton, therefore, assembles the rebel angels in the north. Johnson.

[2] *Where*—] i. e. *whereas.*

[3] —— vail *her lofty plumed crest,*] i. e. lower it.

Unchain your spirits now with spelling charms,
And try if they can gain your liberty.—
A goodly prize, fit for the devil's grace!
See, how the ugly witch doth bend her brows,
As if, with Circe, she would change my shape.
Puc. Chang'd to a worser shape thou canst not be.
York. O, Charles the Dauphin is a proper man;
No shape but his can please your dainty eye.
Puc. A plaguing mischief light on Charles, and thee!
And may ye both be suddenly surpriz'd
By bloody hands, in sleeping on your beds!
York. Fell, banning hag![4] enchantress, hold thy tongue.
Puc. I pr'ythee, give me leave to curse a while.
York. Curse, miscreant, when thou comest to the stake. [*Exeunt.*

Alarums. *Enter* SUFFOLK, *leading in Lady* MARGARET.

Suf. Be what thou wilt, thou art my prisoner. [*Gazes on her.*
O fairest beauty, do not fear, nor fly;
For I will touch thee but with reverent hands,
And lay them gently on thy tender side.
I kiss these fingers [*Kissing her hand.*] for eternal peace:
Who art thou? say, that I may honour thee.
Mar. Margaret my name; and daughter to a king,
The king of Naples, whosoe'er thou art.
Suf. An earl I am, and Suffolk am I call'd.
Be not offended, nature's miracle,
Thou art allotted to be ta'en by me:
So doth the swan her downy cygnets save,
Keeping them prisoners underneath her wings.

[4] *Fell,* banning *hag!*] To *ban* is to curse.

Yet, if this servile usage once offend,
Go, and be free again as Suffolk's friend.
[*She turns away as going.*
O, stay!—I have no power to let her pass;
My hand would free her, but my heart says—no.
As plays the sun upon the glassy streams,[5]
Twinkling another counterfeited beam,
So seems this gorgeous beauty to mine eyes.
Fain would I woo her, yet I dare not speak:
I'll call for pen and ink, and write my mind:
Fye, De la Poole! disable not thyself;[6]
Hast not a tongue? is she not here thy prisoner?
Wilt thou be daunted at a woman's sight?
Ay; beauty's princely majesty is such,
Confounds the tongue, and makes the senses rough.[7]

Mar. Say, earl of Suffolk,—if thy name be so,—
What ransome must I pay before I pass?
For, I perceive, I am thy prisoner.

Suf. How canst thou tell, she will deny thy suit,
Before thou make a trial of her love? [*Aside.*

Mar. Why speak'st thou not? what ransome must I pay?

Suf. She's beautiful; and therefore to be woo'd:
She is a woman; therefore to be won. [*Aside.*

Mar. Wilt thou accept of ransome, yea, or no?

Suf. Fond man! remember, that thou hast a wife;
Then how can Margaret be thy paramour? [*Aside.*

[5] *As plays the sun upon the glassy streams,* &c.] This comparison, made between things which seem sufficiently unlike, is intended to express the softness and delicacy of Lady Margaret's beauty, which delighted, but did not dazzle; which was bright, but gave no pain by its lustre. JOHNSON.

[6] —— *disable not thyself;*] Do not represent thyself so weak. To *disable* the judgment of another was, in that age, the same as to destroy its credit or authority. JOHNSON.

[7] —— *and makes the senses* rough.] The meaning of this word is not very obvious. Sir Thomas Hanmer reads—*crouch.*

Mar. I were best leave him, for he will not hear.
Suf. There all is marr'd; there lies a cooling card.
Mar. He talks at random; sure, the man is mad.
Suf. And yet a dispensation may be had.
Mar. And yet I would that you would answer me.
Suf. I'll win this lady Margaret. For whom?
Why, for my king: Tush! that's a wooden thing.[8]
Mar. He talks of wood: It is some carpenter.
Suf. Yet so my fancy[9] may be satisfied,
And peace established between these realms.
But there remains a scruple in that too:
For though her father be the king of Naples,
Duke of Anjou and Maine, yet is he poor,
And our nobility will scorn the match. [*Aside.*
Mar. Hear ye, captain? Are you not at leisure?
Suf. It shall be so, disdain they ne'er so much:
Henry is youthful, and will quickly yield.—
Madam, I have a secret to reveal.
Mar. What though I be enthrall'd? he seems a knight,
And will not any way dishonour me. [*Aside.*
Suf. Lady, vouchsafe to listen what I say.
Mar. Perhaps, I shall be rescu'd by the French;
And then I need not crave his courtesy. [*Aside.*
Suf. Sweet madam, give me hearing in a cause—
Mar. Tush! women have been captivate ere now. [*Aside.*
Suf. Lady, wherefore talk you so?
Mar. I cry you mercy, 'tis but *quid* for *quo*.
Suf. Say, gentle princess, would you not suppose
Your bondage happy, to be made a queen?
Mar. To be a queen in bondage, is more vile,
Than is a slave in base servility;
For princes should be free.

[8] —— *a* wooden *thing*.] Is an aukward business, an undertaking not likely to succeed.
[9] —— *my* fancy—] i. e. my love.

[illegible] last so shall you,
[illegible] shall be free.
Mar. Why [illegible] this freedom unto me?
Suf. I [illegible] make thee Henry's queen;
[illegible]
[illegible] thy mouth.
[illegible]
Mar. What?
Suf. His love.
Mar. [illegible] to be Henry's wife.
Suf. No, gentle madam: I unworthy am
To woo so fair a dame to be his wife,
And have no portion in the choice myself.
How say you, madam, are you so content?
Mar. An't be the pleasure of my lord the king.
Suf. Then call our captains and our colours forth:
And, madam, at your father's castle walls
We'll crave a parley, to confer with him.

Troops come forward.

A Parley sounded. Enter REIGNIER, *on the Walls.*

Suf. See, Reignier, see thy daughter prisoner.
Reig. To whom?
Suf. To me.
Reig. Suffolk, what remedy?
I am a soldier: and unapt to weep,
Or to exclaim on fortune's fickleness.
Suf. Yes, there is remedy enough, my lord:
Consent, and, for thy honour, give consent,)
Thy daughter shall be wedded to my king;
Whom I with pain have woo'd and won thereto;
And this her easy-held imprisonment
Hath gain'd thy daughter princely liberty.
Reig. Speaks Suffolk as he thinks?
Suf. Fair Margaret knows,

That Suffolk doth not flatter, face,[1] or feign.
Reig. Upon thy princely warrant, I descend,
To give thee answer of thy just demand.
[*Exit, from the Walls.*
Suf. And here I will expect thy coming.

Trumpets sounded. Enter REIGNIER, *below.*

Reig. Welcome, brave earl, into our territories;
Command in Anjou what your honour pleases.
Suf. Thanks, Reignier, happy for so sweet a child,
Fit to be made companion with a king:
What answer makes your grace unto my suit?
Reig. Since thou dost deign to woo her little worth,
To be the princely bride of such a lord;
Upon condition I may quietly
Enjoy mine own, the county Maine, and Anjou,
Free from oppression, or the stroke of war,
My daughter shall be Henry's, if he please.
Suf. That is her ransome, I deliver her;
And those two counties, I will undertake,
Your grace shall well and quietly enjoy.
Reig. And I again,—in Henry's royal name,
As deputy unto that gracious king,
Give thee her hand, for sign of plighted faith.
Suf. Reignier of France, I give thee kingly thanks,
Because this is in traffick of a king:
And yet, methinks, I could be well content
To be mine own attorney in this case. [*Aside.*
I'll over then to England with this news,
And make this marriage to be solemniz'd;
So, farewell, Reignier! Set this diamond safe
In golden palaces, as it becomes.
Reig. I do embrace thee, as I would embrace

[1] —— face,] To *face* is to carry a false appearance; to play the hypocrite.

The Christian prince, king Henry, were he here.
Mar. Farewell, my lord! Good wishes, praise, and prayers,
Shall Suffolk ever have of Margaret. [*Going.*
Suf. Farewell, sweet madam! But hark you, Margaret;
No princely commendations to my king?
Mar. Such commendations as become a maid,
A virgin, and his servant, say to him.
Suf. Words sweetly plac'd, and modestly directed.
But, madam, I must trouble you again,—
No loving token to his majesty?
Mar. Yes, my good lord; a pure unspotted heart,
Never yet taint with love, I send the king.
Suf. And this withal. [*Kisses her.*
Mar. That for thyself;—I will not so presume,
To send such peevish tokens[2] to a king.
[*Exeunt* REIGNIER *and* MARGARET.
Suf. O, wert thou for myself!—But, Suffolk, stay;
Thou may'st not wander in that labyrinth;
There Minotaurs, and ugly treasons, lurk.
Solicit Henry with her wond'rous praise:
Bethink thee on her virtues that surmount;
Mad,[3] natural graces that extinguish art;
Repeat their semblance often on the seas,
That, when thou com'st to kneel at Henry's feet,
Thou may'st bereave him of his wits with wonder.
[*Exit.*

SCENE IV.

Camp of the Duke of York, *in* Anjou.

Enter YORK, WARWICK, *and Others.*

York. Bring forth that sorceress, condemn'd to burn.

[2] *To send such* peevish *tokens*—] *Peevish,* for childish.
[3] Mad,—] i. e. wild, if *mad* be the word that ought to stand here, which some of the commentators doubt.

Enter La Pucelle, *guarded, and a* Shepherd.

Shep. Ah, Joan! this kills thy father's heart outright!
Have I sought every country far and near,
And, now it is my chance to find thee out,
Must I behold thy timeless[4] cruel death?
Ah, Joan, sweet daughter Joan, I'll die with thee!
Puc. Decrepit miser![5] base ignoble wretch!
I am descended of a gentler blood;
Thou art no father, nor no friend, of mine.
Shep. Out, out!—My lords, an please you, 'tis not so;
I did beget her, all the parish knows:
Her mother liveth yet, can testify,
She was the first fruit of my bachelorship.
War. Graceless! wilt thou deny thy parentage?
York. This argues what her kind of life hath been;
Wicked and vile; and so her death concludes.
Shep. Fye, Joan! that thou wilt be so obstacle![6]
God knows, thou art a collop of my flesh;
And for thy sake have I shed many a tear:
Deny me not, I pr'ythee, gentle Joan.
Puc. Peasant, avaunt!—You have suborn'd this man,
Of purpose to obscure my noble birth.
Shep. 'Tis true, I gave a noble to the priest,
The morn that I was wedded to her mother.—
Kneel down and take my blessing, good my girl.

[4] —— *timeless*—] is *untimely*.

[5] *Decrepit* miser!] *Miser* has no relation to avarice in this passage, but simply means a miserable creature.

[6] —— *that thou wilt be so* obstacle!] A vulgar corruption of *obstinate*, which I think has oddly lasted since our author's time till now. Johnson.

Wilt thou not stoop? Now cursed be the time
Of thy nativity! I would, the milk
Thy mother gave thee, when thou suck'dst her breast,
Had been a little ratsbane for thy sake!
Or else, when thou didst keep my lambs a-field,
I wish some ravenous wolf had eaten thee!
Dost thou deny thy father, cursed drab?
O, burn her, burn her; hanging is too good.
[*Exit.*

York. Take her away; for she hath liv'd too long,
To fill the world with vicious qualities.

Puc. First, let me tell you whom you have condemn'd:
Not me begotten of a shepherd swain,
But issu'd from the progeny of kings;
Virtuous, and holy; chosen from above,
By inspiration of celestial grace,
To work exceeding miracles on earth.
I never had to do with wicked spirits:
But you,—that are polluted with your lusts,
Stain'd with the guiltless blood of innocents,
Corrupt and tainted with a thousand vices,—
Because you want the grace that others have,
You judge it straight a thing impossible
To compass wonders, but by help of devils.
No, misconceived![7] Joan of Arc hath been
A virgin from her tender infancy,
Chaste and immaculate in very thought;
Whose maiden blood, thus rigorously effus'd,
Will cry for vengeance at the gates of heaven.

York. Ay, ay;—away with her to execution.

War. And hark ye, sirs; because she is a maid,
Spare for no fagots, let there be enough:
Place barrels of pitch upon the fatal stake,

[7] *No, misconceived!*] i. e. No, ye misconceivers, ye who mistake me and my qualities.

That so her torture may be shortened.
Puc. Will nothing turn your unrelenting hearts?—
Then, Joan, discover thine infirmity;
That warranteth by law to be thy privilege.—
I am with child, ye bloody homicides:
Murder not then the fruit within my womb,
Although ye hale me to a violent death.
York. Now heaven forefend! the holy maid with child?
War. The greatest miracle that e'er ye wrought:
Is all your strict preciseness come to this?
York. She and the Dauphin have been juggling:
I did imagine what would be her refuge.
War. Well, go to; we will have no bastards live;
Especially, since Charles must father it.
Puc. You are deceiv'd; my child is none of his;
It was Alençon, that enjoy'd my love.
York. Alençon! that notorious Machiavel!
It dies, an if it had a thousand lives.
Puc. O, give me leave, I have deluded you;
'Twas neither Charles, nor yet the duke I nam'd,
But Reignier, king of Naples, that prevail'd.
War. A married man! that's most intolerable.
York. Why, here's a girl! I think, she knows not well,
There were so many, whom she may accuse.
War. It's sign, she hath been liberal and free.
York. And, yet, forsooth, she is a virgin pure.—
Strumpet, thy words condemn thy brat, and thee:
Use no entreaty, for it is in vain.
Puc. Then lead me hence;—with whom I leave my curse:
May never glorious sun reflex his beams
Upon the country where you make abode!
But darkness and the gloomy shade of death
Environ you; till mischief, and despair,

Drive you to break your necks, or hang yourselves![8]
[*Exit, guarded.*

York. Break thou in pieces, and consume to ashes,
Thou foul accursed minister of hell!

Enter Cardinal BEAUFORT, *attended.*

Car. Lord regent, I do greet your excellence
With letters of commission from the king.
For know, my lords, the states of Christendom,
Mov'd with remorse[9] of these outrageous broils,
Have earnestly implor'd a general peace
Betwixt our nation and the aspiring French;
And here at hand the Dauphin, and his train,
Approacheth, to confer about some matter.

York. Is all our travail turn'd to this effect?
After the slaughter of so many peers,
So many captains, gentlemen, and soldiers,
That in this quarrel have been overthrown,
And sold their bodies for their country's benefit,
Shall we at last conclude effeminate peace?
Have we not lost most part of all the towns,
By treason, falsehood, and by treachery,
Our great progenitors had conquered?—
O, Warwick, Warwick! I foresee with grief
The utter loss of all the realm of France.

War. Be patient, York: if we conclude a peace,
It shall be with such strict and severe covenants,
As little shall the Frenchmen gain thereby.

[8] —— *till mischief, and despair,*
Drive you to break your necks, or hang yourselves!] Perhaps Shakspeare intended to remark, in this execration, the frequency of suicide among the English, which has been commonly imputed to the gloominess of their air. JOHNSON.

[9] —— *remorse*—] i. e. compassion, pity.

Enter CHARLES, *attended*; ALENÇON, Bastard, REIGNIER, *and Others.*

Char. Since, lords of England, it is thus agreed,
That peaceful truce shall be proclaim'd in France,
We come to be informed by yourselves
What the conditions of that league must be.

York. Speak, Winchester; for boiling choler chokes
The hollow passage of my poison'd voice,
By sight of these our baleful enemies.[1]

Win. Charles, and the rest, it is enacted thus:
That—in regard king Henry gives consent,
Of mere compassion, and of lenity,
To ease your country of distressful war,
And suffer you to breathe in fruitful peace,—
You shall become true liegemen to his crown:
And, Charles, upon condition thou wilt swear
To pay him tribute, and submit thyself,
Thou shalt be plac'd as viceroy under him,
And still enjoy thy regal dignity.

Alen. Must he be then as shadow of himself?
Adorn his temples with a coronet;[2]
And yet, in substance and authority,
Retain but privilege of a private man?
This proffer is absurd and reasonless.

Char. 'Tis known, already that I am possess'd
With more than half the Gallian territories,
And therein reverenc'd for their lawful king:
Shall I, for lucre of the rest unvanquish'd,
Detract so much from that prerogative,
As to be call'd but viceroy of the whole?
No, lord ambassador; I'll rather keep

[1] —— baleful *enemies.*] *Baleful* is *sorrowful;* but it had anciently the same meaning as *baneful.*

[2] —— *with a* coronet;] *Coronet* is here used for a *crown.*

That which I have, than, coveting for more,
Be cast from possibility of all.

York. Insulting Charles! hast thou by secret means
Used intercession to obtain a league;
And, now the matter grows to compromise,
Stand'st thou aloof upon comparison?[3]
Either accept the title thou usurp'st,
Of benefit[4] proceeding from our king,
And not of any challenge of desert,
Or we will plague thee with incessant wars.

Reig. My lord, you do not well in obstinacy
To cavil in the course of this contráct:
If once it be neglected, ten to one,
We shall not find like opportunity.

Alen. To say the truth, it is your policy,
To save your subjects from such massacre,
And ruthless slaughters, as are daily seen
By our proceeding in hostility:
And therefore take this compact of a truce,
Although you break it when your pleasure serves.
[*Aside, to* CHARLES.

War. How say'st thou, Charles? shall our condition stand?

Char. It shall:
Only reserv'd, you claim no interest
In any of our towns of garrison.

York. Then swear allegiance to his majesty;
As thou art knight, never to disobey,
Nor be rebellious to the crown of England,
Thou, nor thy nobles, to the crown of England.—
[CHARLES, *and the rest, give Tokens of fealty.*

[3] —— *upon comparison?*] Do you stand to compare your present state, a state which you have neither right or power to maintain, with the terms which we offer?

[4] *Of* benefit—] *Benefit* is here a term of law. Be content to live as the *beneficiary* of our king. JOHNSON.

So, now dismiss your army when ye please;
Hang up your ensigns, let your drums be still,
For here we entertain a solemn peace. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE V.

London. *A Room in the Palace.*

Enter King HENRY, *in conference with* SUFFOLK; GLOSTER *and* EXETER *following.*

K. Hen. Your wond'rous rare description, noble earl,
Of beauteous Margaret hath astonish'd me:
Her virtues, graced with external gifts,
Do breed love's settled passions in my heart:
And like as rigour in tempestuous gusts
Provokes the mightiest hulk against the tide;
So am I driven,[5] by breath of her renown,
Either to suffer shipwreck, or arrive
Where I may have fruition of her love.

Suf. Tush! my good lord! this superficial tale
Is but a preface of her worthy praise:
The chief perfections of that lovely dame,
(Had I sufficient skill to utter them,)
Would make a volume of enticing lines,
Able to ravish any dull conceit.
And, which is more, she is not so divine,
So full replete with choice of all delights,
But, with as humble lowliness of mind,
She is content to be at your command;
Command, I mean, of virtuous chaste intents,
To love and honour Henry as her lord.

K. Hen. And otherwise will Henry ne'er presume.

[5] *So am I driven,*] This simile is somewhat obscure; he seems to mean, that as a ship is driven against the tide by the wind, so he is driven by love against the current of his interest. JOHNSON.

Therefore, my lord protector, give consent,
That Margaret may be England's royal queen.
Glo. So should I give consent to flatter sin.
You know, my lord, your highness is betroth'd
Unto another lady of esteem;
How shall we then dispense with that contract,
And not deface your honour with reproach?
Suf. As doth a ruler with unlawful oaths;
Or one, that, at a triumph[6] having vow'd
To try his strength, forsaketh yet the lists
By reason of his adversary's odds:
A poor earl's daughter is unequal odds,
And therefore may be broke without offence.
Glo. Why, what, I pray, is Margaret more than that?
Her father is no better than an earl,
Although in glorious titles he excel.
Suf. Yes, my good lord, her father is a king,
The king of Naples, and Jerusalem;
And of such great authority in France,
As his alliance will confirm our peace,
And keep the Frenchmen in allegiance.
Glo. And so the earl of Armagnac may do
Because he is near kinsman unto Charles.
Exe. Beside, his wealth doth warrant liberal dower;
While Reignier sooner will receive, than give.
Suf. A dower, my lords! disgrace not so your king,
That he should be so abject, base, and poor,
To choose for wealth, and not for perfect love.
Henry is able to enrich his queen,
And not to seek a queen to make him rich:
So worthless peasants bargain for their wives,

[6] —— *at a triumph*—] A *triumph*, in the age of Shakspeare, signified a public exhibition, such as a *mask*, a *revel*, &c.

As market-men for oxen, sheep, or horse.
Marriage is a matter of more worth,
Than to be dealt in by attorneyship;[7]
Not whom we will, but whom his grace affects,
Must be companion of his nuptial bed:
And therefore, lords, since he affects her most,
It most of all these reasons bindeth us,
In our opinions she should be preferr'd.
For what is wedlock forced, but a hell,
An age of discord and continual strife?
Whereas the contrary bringeth forth bliss,
And is a pattern of celestial peace.
Whom should we match, with Henry, being a king,
But Margaret, that is daughter to a king?
Her peerless feature, joined with her birth,
Approves her fit for none, but for a king:
Her valiant courage, and undaunted spirit,
(More than in women commonly is seen,)
Will answer our hope in issue of a king;
For Henry, son unto a conqueror,
Is likely to beget more conquerors,
If with a lady of so high resolve,
As is fair Margaret, he be link'd in love.
Then yield, my lords; and here conclude with me,
That Margaret shall be queen, and none but she.

K. Hen. Whether it be through force of your report,
My noble lord of Suffolk; or for that
My tender youth was never yet attaint
With any passion of inflaming love,
I cannot tell; but this I am assur'd,
I feel such sharp dissention in my breast,
Such fierce alarums both of hope and fear,
As I am sick with working of my thoughts.

[7] —— *by attorneyship;*] By the intervention of another man's choice; or the discretional agency of another.

Take, therefore, shipping; post, my lord, to France;
Agree to any covenants: and procure
That lady Margaret do vouchsafe to come
To cross the seas to England, and be crown'd
King Henry's faithful and anointed queen:
For your expences and sufficient charge,
Among the people gather up a tenth.
Be gone, I say; for, till you do return,
I rest perplexed with a thousand cares.—
And you, good uncle, banish all offence:
If you do censure me by what you were,[8]
Not what you are, I know it will excuse
This sudden execution of my will.
And so conduct me, where from company,
I may revolve and ruminate my grief.[9] [*Exit.*

Glo. Ay, grief, I fear me, both at first and last.
[*Exeunt* GLOSTER *and* EXETER.

Suf. Thus Suffolk hath prevail'd: and thus he goes,
As did the youthful Paris once to Greece;
With hope to find the like event in love,
But prosper better than the Trojan did.
Margaret shall now be queen, and rule the king;
But I will rule both her, the king, and realm.
[*Exit.*[1]

[8] *If you do* censure *me,* &c.] To *censure* is here simply to *judge. If in judging me you consider the past frailties of your own youth.*

[9] —— *ruminate my* grief.] *Grief* in the first line is taken generally for *pain* or *uneasiness;* in the second specially for *sorrow.*

[1] Of this play there is no copy earlier than that of the folio in 1623, though the two succeeding parts are extant in two editions in quarto. That the second and third parts were published without the first, may be admitted as no weak proof that the copies were surreptitiously obtained, and that the printers of that time gave the publick those plays, not such as the author designed, but such as they could get them. That this play was written before the two others is indubitably collected from the series of events; that it was written and played before *Henry the Fifth* is apparent,

because in the epilogue there is mention made of this play, and not of the other parts:

" Henry the sixth in swaddling bands crown'd king,
" Whose state so many had the managing,
" That they lost France, and made his England bleed:
" Which oft our stage hath shown."

France is lost in this play. The two following contain, as the old title imports, the contention of the houses of York and Lancaster.

The second and third parts of *Henry VI.* were printed in 1600. When *Henry V.* was written, we know not, but it was printed likewise in 1600, and therefore before the publication of the first and second parts. The first part of *Henry VI.* had been often *shown on the stage*, and would certainly have appeared in its place, had the author been the publisher. JOHNSON.

That the second and third parts (as they are now called) were printed without the first, is a proof, in my apprehension, that they were not written by the author of the first: and the title of *The Contention of the Houses of York and Lancaster*, being affixed to the two pieces which were printed in quarto 1600, is a proof that they were a distinct work, commencing where the other ended, but not written at the same time; and that this play was never known by the name of *The First Part of King Henry VI.* till Heminge and Condell gave it this title in their volume, to distinguish it from the two subsequent plays; which being *altered* by Shakspeare, assumed the new titles of *The Second and Third Parts of King Henry VI.* that they might not be confounded with the original pieces on which they were formed. This first part was, I conceive, originally called *The Historical Play of King Henry VI.* MALONE.

H. Fuseli R.A. del. R.H. Cromek sc.

K. Henry. *Lord Cardinal if thou thinkst on Heavens bliss*
Hold up thy Hand. ——

Published by F. & C. Rivington London Sept.r 10. 1803.

KING HENRY VI.

PART II.*

* SECOND PART OF KING HENRY VI.] This and *The Third Part of King Henry VI.* contain that troublesome period of this prince's reign which took in the whole contention betwixt the houses of York and Lancaster: and under that title were these two plays first acted and published. The present scene opens with King Henry's marriage, which was in the twenty-third year of his reign [A. D. 1445:] and closes with the first battle fought at St. Albans, and won by the York faction, in the thirty-third year of his reign [A. D. 1455]: so that it comprizes the history and transactions of ten years. THEOBALD.

This play was altered by *Crowne*, and acted in the year 1681.

STEEVENS.

The Contention of the Two famous Houses of Yorke and Lancaster in two parts, was published in quarto, in 1600; and the first part was entered on the Stationers' books, (as Mr. Steevens has observed,) March 12, 1593-4. On these two plays, which I believe to have been written by some preceding author, before the year 1590, Shakspeare formed, as I conceive, this and the following drama; altering, retrenching, or amplifying, as he thought proper. The reasons on which this hypothesis is founded, I shall subjoin at large at the end of *The Third Part of King Henry VI.* At present it is only necessary to apprize the reader of the method observed in the printing of these plays. All the lines printed in the usual manner, are found in the original quarto plays (or at least with such minute variations as are not worth noticing): and those, I conceive, Shakspeare adopted as he found them. The lines to which inverted commas are prefixed, were, if my hypothesis be well founded, retouched, and greatly improved by him; and those with asterisks were his own original production; the embroidery with which he ornamented the coarse stuff that had been aukwardly made up for the stage by some of his contemporaries. The speeches which he new-modelled, he improved, sometimes by amplification, and sometimes by retrenchment.

These two pieces, I imagine, were produced in their present form in 1591. Dr. Johnson observes very justly, that these two parts were not written without a *dependance* on the first. Undoubtedly not; the old play of *King Henry VI.* (or, as it is now called, *The First Part,*) certainly had been exhibited before these were written in *any form*. But it does not follow from this concession, either that *The Contention of the Two Houses,* &c. in two parts, was written by the author of the former play, or that Shakspeare was the author of these two pieces as they *originally appeared*. MALONE.

PERSONS REPRESENTED.

King Henry *the Sixth:*
Humphrey, *Duke of* Gloster, *his Uncle.*
Cardinal Beaufort, *Bishop of Winchester, great Uncle to the King.*
Richard Plantagenet, *Duke of* York:
Edward *and* Richard, *his Sons.*

Duke of Somerset,
Duke of Suffolk,
Duke of Buckingham,
Lord Clifford,
Young Clifford, *his Son,*
} *of the King's Party.*

Earl of Salisbury,
Earl of Warwick,
} *of the* York *Faction.*

Lord Scales, *Governor of the Tower.* *Lord* Say.
Sir Humphrey Stafford, *and his Brother.* *Sir* John Stanley.
A Sea-captain, Master, and Master's Mate, and Walter Whitmore.
Two Gentlemen, Prisoners with Suffolk.
A Herald. Vaux.
Hume *and* Southwell, *Two Priests.*
Bolingbroke, *a Conjurer.* *A Spirit raised by him.*
Thomas Horner, *an Armourer.* Peter, *his Man.*
Clerk of Chatham. *Mayor of* Saint Albans.
Simpcox, *an Impostor.* *Two Murderers.*
Jack Cade, *a Rebel:*
George, John, Dick, Smith, *the Weaver,* Michael, &c. *his followers.*
Alexander Iden, *a* Kentish *Gentleman.*
Margaret, *Queen to King* Henry.
Eleanor, *Duchess of* Gloster.
Margery Jourdain, *a Witch.* *Wife to* Simpcox.
Lords, Ladies, & Attendants; Petitioners, Aldermen, a Beadle, Sheriff, & Officers; Citizens, Prentices, Falconers, Guards, Soldiers, Messengers, &c.

SCENE, dispersedly in various parts of England.

SECOND PART OF

KING HENRY VI.

ACT I.

SCENE I. London. *A Room of State in the Palace.*

Flourish of Trumpets: then Hautboys. Enter, on one side, King HENRY, *Duke of* GLOSTER, SALISBURY, WARWICK, *and Cardinal* BEAUFORT; *on the other, Queen* MARGARET, *led in by* SUFFOLK; YORK, SOMERSET, BUCKINGHAM, *and Others following.*

Suff. As by your high[1] imperial majesty
I had in charge at my depart for France,
As procurator to your excellence,
To marry princess Margaret for your grace;
So, in the famous ancient city, Tours,—
In presence of the kings of France and Sicil,
The dukes of Orleans, Calaber, Bretaigne, and Alençon,
Seven earls, twelve barons, twenty reverend bishops,—

[1] *As by your high,* &c.] It is apparent that this play begins where the former ends, and continues the series of transactions of which it presupposes the first part already known. This is a sufficient proof that the second and third parts were not written without dependance on the first, though they were printed as containing a complete period of history. JOHNSON.

I have perform'd my task, and was espous'd:
And humbly now upon my bended knee,
In sight of England and her lordly peers,
Deliver up my title in the queen
To your most gracious hands, that are the substance
Of that great shadow I did represent;
The happiest gift that ever marquess gave,
The fairest queen that ever king receiv'd.

K. Hen. Suffolk, arise.—Welcome, queen Margaret:
I can express no kinder sign of love,
Than this kind kiss.—O Lord, that lends me life,
Lend me a heart replete with thankfulness!
For thou hast given me, in this beauteous face,
' A world of earthly blessings to my soul,
* If sympathy of love unite our thoughts.

' *Q. Mar.* Great king of England, and my gracious lord;
' The mutual conference[2] that my mind hath had—
' By day, by night; waking, and in my dreams;
' In courtly company, or at my beads,—
' With you mine alder-liefest sovereign,[3]
' Makes me the bolder to salute my king
' With ruder terms; such as my wit affords,
' And over-joy of heart doth minister.

' *K. Hen.* Her sight did ravish: but her grace in speech,
' Her words y-clad with wisdom's majesty,
' Makes me, from wondering fall to weeping joys;
' Such is the fulness of my heart's content.—
' Lords, with one cheerful voice welcome my love.

[2] *The mutual conference* —] I am the bolder to address you having already familiarized you to my imagination. JOHNSON.

[3] —— *mine* alder-liefest *sovereign*,] *Alder-liefest* is a corruption of the German word *alder-liebste*, beloved above all things, dearest of all.

All. Long live queen Margaret, England's happiness!

Q. Mar. We thank you all. [*Flourish.*

Suf. My lord protector, so it please your grace,
Here are the articles of contracted peace,
Between our sovereign and the French king Charles,
For eighteen months concluded by consent.

Glo. [*Reads.*] Imprimis, *It is agreed between the French king, Charles, and William de la Poole, marquess of Suffolk, ambassador for Henry king of England,—that the said Henry shall espouse the lady Margaret, daughter unto Reignier king of Naples, Sicilia, and Jerusalem; and crown her queen of England, ere the thirtieth of May next ensuing.*——
Item,—*That the duchy of Anjou and the county of Maine, shall be released and delivered to the king her father*——

K. Hen. Uncle, how now?

Glo. Pardon me, gracious lord;
Some sudden qualm hath struck me at the heart,
And dimm'd mine eyes, that I can read no further.

K. Hen. Uncle of Winchester, I pray, read on.

Win. Item,—*It is further agreed between them,—that the dutchies of Anjou and Maine shall be released and delivered over to the king her father; and she sent over of the king of England's own proper cost and charges, without having dowry.*

K. Hen. They please us well.—Lord marquess, kneel down;
We here create thee the first duke of Suffolk,
And girt thee with the sword.—
Cousin of York, we here discharge your grace
From being regent in the parts of France,
Till term of eighteen months be full expir'd.—
Thanks, uncle Winchester, Gloster, York, and Buckingham,
Somerset, Salisbury, and Warwick;

We thank you all for this great favour done,
In entertainment to my princely queen.
Come, let us in; and with all speed provide
To see her coronation be perform'd.

[*Exeunt* King, Queen, *and* SUFFOLK.

Glo. Brave peers of England, pillars of the state,
' To you duke Humphrey must unload his grief,
' Your grief, the common grief of all the land.
' What! did my brother Henry spend his youth,
' His valour, coin, and people, in the wars?
' Did he so often lodge in open field,
' In winter's cold, and summer's parching heat,
' To conquer France, his true inheritance?
' And did my brother Bedford toil his wits,
' To keep by policy what Henry got?
' Have you yourselves, Somerset, Buckingham,
' Brave York, Salisbury, and victorious Warwick,
' Receiv'd deep scars in France and Normandy?
' Or hath mine uncle Beaufort, and myself,
' With all the learned council of the realm,
' Studied so long, sat in the council-house,
' Early and late, debating to and fro
' How France and Frenchmen might be kept in awe?
' And hath his highness in his infancy
' Been crown'd in Paris, in despite of foes?
' And shall these labours, and these honours, die?
' Shall Henry's conquest, Bedford's vigilance,
' Your deeds of war, and all our counsel, die?
' O peers of England, shameful is this league!
' Fatal this marriage, cancelling your fame:
' Blotting your names from books of memory:
' Razing the characters of your renown;
' Defacing monuments of conquer'd France;
' Undoing all, as all had never been!
' *Car.* Nephew, what means this passionate discourse?
' This peroration with such circumstance?[4]

‘ For France, 'tis ours; and we will keep it still.
* *Glo.* Ay, uncle, we will keep it, if we can;
* But now it is impossible we should:
Suffolk, the new-made duke that rules the roast,
‘ Hath given the dutchies of Anjou and Maine
* Unto the poor king Reignier, whose large style
* Agrees not with the leanness of his purse.
* *Sal.* Now, by the death of him that died for all,
* These counties were the keys of Normandy:—
But wherefore weeps Warwick, my valiant son?
‘ *War.* For grief, that they are past recovery:
‘ For, were there hope to conquer them again,
‘ My sword should shed hot blood, mine eyes no tears.
‘ Anjou and Maine! myself did win them both;
‘ Those provinces these arms of mine did conquer:
‘ And are the cities,[5] that I got with wounds,
‘ Deliver'd up again with peaceful words?
‘ Mort Dieu!
* *York.* For Suffolk's duke—may he be suffocate,
* That dims the honour of this warlike isle!
* France should have torn and rent my very heart,
* Before I would have yielded to this league.
‘ I never read but England's kings have had
‘ Large sums of gold, and dowries, with their wives:
‘ And our king Henry gives away his own,
‘ To match with her that brings no vantages.
* *Glo.* A proper jest, and never heard before,
* That Suffolk should demand a whole fifteenth,
* For costs and charges in transporting her!
* She should have staid in France, and starv'd in France,
* Before——

[4] *This peroration with such circumstance?*] This speech crouded with so many instances of aggravation. JOHNSON.

[5] *And are the cities,* &c.] The indignation of Warwick is natural, and I wish it had been better expressed; there is a kind of jingle intended in *wounds* and *words.* JOHNSON.

* *Car.* My lord of Gloster, now you grow too hot;
* It was the pleasure of my lord the king.
* *Glo.* My lord of Winchester, I know your mind;
' 'Tis not my speeches that you do mislike,
' But 'tis my presence that doth trouble you.
' Rancour will out: Proud prelate, in thy face
' I see thy fury: If I longer stay,
' We shall begin our ancient bickerings.—
Lordings, farewell; and say, when I am gone,
I prophesied—France will be lost ere long. [*Exit.*
Car. So, there goes our protector in a rage.
'Tis known to you, he is mine enemy:
* Nay, more, an enemy unto you all;
* And no great friend, I fear me, to the king.
* Consider, lords, he is the next of blood,
* And heir apparent to the English crown;
* Had Henry got an empire by his marriage,
* And all the wealthy kingdoms of the west,
* There's reason he should be displeas'd at it.
* Look to it, lords, let not his smoothing words
* Bewitch your hearts; be wise, and circumspect.
' What though the common people favour him,
' Calling him—*Humphrey, the good duke of Gloster*;
' Clapping their hands, and crying with a loud voice—
' *Jesu maintain your royal excellence!*
' With—*God preserve the good duke Humphrey!*
' I fear me, lords, for all this flattering gloss,
' He will be found a dangerous protector.
* *Buck.* Why should he then protect our sovereign,
* He being of age to govern of himself?—
' Cousin of Somerset, join you with me,
' And all together—with the duke of Suffolk,—
' We'll quickly hoise duke Humphrey from his seat.
* *Car.* This weighty business will not brook delay;
* I'll to the duke of Suffolk presently. [*Exit.*
' *Som.* Cousin of Buckingham, though Humphrey's pride,

'And greatness of his place be grief to us,
'Yet let us watch the haughty cardinal;
'His insolence is more intolerable
'Than all the princes in the land beside;
'If Gloster be displac'd, he'll be protector.

Buck. Or thou, or I, Somerset will be protector,
* Despight duke Humphrey, or the cardinal.

[*Exeunt* BUCKINGHAM *and* SOMERSET.

Sal. Pride went before, ambition follows him.
'While these do labour for their own preferment,
'Behoves it us to labour for the realm.
'I never saw but Humphrey duke of Gloster
'Did bear him like a noble gentleman.
'Oft have I seen the haughty cardinal—
'More like a soldier, than a man o'the church,
'As stout, and proud, as he were lord of all,—
'Swear like a ruffian, and demean himself
'Unlike the ruler of a common-weal.—
'Warwick, my son, the comfort of my age!
'Thy deeds, thy plainness, and thy house-keeping,
'Hath won the greatest favour of the commons,
'Excepting none but good duke Humphrey.—
'And, brother York, thy acts in Ireland,
'In bringing them to civil discipline;
'Thy late exploits, done in the heart of France,
'When thou wert regent for our sovereign,
'Have made thee fear'd, and honour'd, of the people:—
'Join we together, for the publick good;
'In what we can to bridle and suppress
'The pride of Suffolk, and the cardinal,
'With Somerset's and Buckingham's ambition;
'And, as we may, cherish duke Humphrey's deeds,
'While they do tend the profit of the land.

* *War.* So God help Warwick, as he loves the land,
* And common profit of his country!

* *York.* And so says York, for he hath greatest cause.

Sal. Then let's make haste away, and look unto the main.

War. Unto the main! O father, Maine is lost;
That Maine, which by main force Warwick did win,
* And would have kept, so long as breath did last:
Main chance, father, you meant; but I meant Maine;
Which I will win from France, or else be slain.

[*Exeunt* WARWICK *and* SALISBURY.

York. Anjou and Maine are given to the French;
* Paris is lost; the state of Normandy
* Stands on a tickle point, now they are gone:
* Suffolk concluded on the articles;
* The peers agreed; and Henry was well pleas'd,
* To change two dukedoms for a duke's fair daughter.
* I cannot blame them all; What is't to them?
* 'Tis thine they give away, and not their own.
* Pirates may make cheap pennyworths of their pillage,
* And purchase friends, and give to courtezans,
* Still revelling, like lords, till all be gone:
* While as the silly owner of the goods
* Weeps over them, and wrings his hapless hands,
* And shakes his head, and trembling stands aloof,
* While all is shar'd, and all is borne away:
* Ready to starve, and dare not touch his own.
* So York must sit, and fret, and bite his tongue,
* While his own lands are bargain'd for, and sold.
* Methinks, the realms of England, France, and Ireland,
* Bear that proportion to my flesh and blood,
* As did the fatal brand Althea burn'd,
* Unto the prince's heart of Calydon.[6]
Anjou and Maine, both given unto the French!
Cold news for me; for I had hope of France,

[6] —— *the prince's heart of Calydon.*] According to the fable, Meleager's life was to continue only so long as a certain firebrand should last. His mother Althea having thrown it into the fire, he expired in great torments.

Even as I have of fertile England's soil.
A day will come, when York shall claim his own;
And therefore I will take the Nevils' parts,
And make a show of love to proud duke Humphrey,
And, when I spy advantage, claim the crown,
For that's the golden mark I see to hit:
Nor shall proud Lancaster usurp my right,
Nor hold his sceptre in his childish fist,
Nor wear the diadem upon his head,
Whose church-like humours fit not for a crown.
Then, York, be still awhile, till time do serve:
Watch thou, and wake, when others be asleep,
To pry into the secrets of the state;
Till Henry, surfeiting in joys of love,
With his new bride, and England's dear-bought queen,
And Humphrey with the peers be fall'n at jars:
Then will I raise aloft the milk-white rose,
With whose sweet smell the air shall be perfum'd;
And in my standard bear the arms of York,
To grapple with the house of Lancaster;
And, force perforce, I'll make him yield the crown,
Whose bookish rule hath pull'd fair England down.
[*Exit.*

SCENE II.

The same. A Room in the Duke of Gloster's *House.*

Enter Gloster *and the* Duchess.

Duch. Why droops my lord, like over-ripen'd corn,
Hanging the head at Ceres' plenteous load?
* Why doth the great duke Humphrey knit his brows,
* As frowning at the favours of the world?
* Why are thine eyes fix'd to the sullen earth,
* Gazing on that which seems to dim thy sight?
' What see'st thou there? king Henry's diadem,

* Enchas'd with all the honours of the world?
* If so, gaze on, and grovel on thy face,
* Until thy head be circled with the same.
' Put forth thy hand, reach at the glorious gold:—
' What, is't too short? I'll lengthen it with mine:
* And, having both together heav'd it up,
* We'll both together lift our heads to heaven;
* And never more abase our sight so low,
* As to vouchsafe one glance unto the ground.
' *Glo.* O Nell, sweet Nell, if thou dost love thy lord.
' Banish the canker of ambitious thoughts:
' And may that thought, when I imagine ill
' Against my king and nephew, virtuous Henry,
' Be my last breathing in this mortal world!
' My troublous dream this night doth make me sad.
Duch. What dream'd my lord? tell me, and I'll requite it
' With the sweet rehearsal of my morning's dream.
' *Glo.* Methought, this staff, mine office-badge in court,
' Was broke in twain; by whom, I have forgot,
' But, as I think, it was by the cardinal;
' And, on the pieces of the broken wand
' Were plac'd the heads of Edmond duke of Somerset,
' And William de la Poole first duke of Suffolk.
' This was my dream; what it doth bode, God knows.
' *Duch.* Tut, this was nothing but an argument,
That he that breaks a stick of Gloster's grove,
' Shall lose his head for his presumption.
' But list to me, my Humphrey, my sweet duke:
Methought, I sat in seat of majesty,
In the cathedral church of Westminster,
And in that chair where kings and queens are crown'd;
Where Henry, and dame Margaret, kneel'd to me,
' And on my head did set the diadem.

‘ *Glo.* Nay, Eleanor, then must I chide outright:
* Presumptuous dame, ill-nurtur'd Eleanor![7]
Art thou not second woman in the realm:
And the protector's wife, belov'd of him?
* Hast thou not worldly pleasure at command,
* Above the reach or compass of thy thought?
And wilt thou still be hammering treachery,
* To tumble down thy husband, and thyself,
* From top of honour to disgrace's feet?
Away from me, and let me hear no more.
‘ *Duch.* What, what, my lord! are you so cholerick
‘ With Eleanor, for telling but her dream?
‘ Next time, I'll keep my dreams unto myself,
‘ And not be check'd.
‘ *Glo.* Nay, be not angry, I am pleas'd again.

Enter a Messenger.

‘ *Mes.* My lord protector, 'tis his highness' pleasure,
‘ You do prepare to ride unto Saint Albans,
‘ Whereas[8] the king and queen do mean to hawk.
Glo. I go.—Come, Nell, thou wilt ride with us?
‘ *Duch.* Yes, good my lord, I'll follow presently.
[*Exeunt* GLOSTER *and* Messenger.
‘ Follow I must, I cannot go before,
* While Gloster bears this base and humble mind.
* Were I a man, a duke, and next of blood,
* I would remove these tedious stumbling-blocks,
* And smooth my way upon their headless necks:
* And, being a woman, I will not be slack
* To play my part in fortune's pageant.

[7] —— ill-nurtur'd —] *Ill-nurtur'd*, is *ill-educated*.
[8] Whereas —] *Whereas* is the same as *where;* and seems to be brought into use only on account of its being a dissyllable.

'Where are you there? Sir John![9] nay, fear not, man,
'We are alone; here's none but thee, and I.

Enter HUME.

Hume. Jesu preserve your royal majesty!
'*Duch.* What say'st thou, majesty! I am but grace.
Hume. But, by the grace of God, and Hume's advice,
'Your grace's title shall be multiplied.
Duch. What say'st thou, man? hast thou as yet conferr'd
With Margery Jourdain, the cunning witch;
And Roger Bolingbroke, the conjurer?
And will they undertake to do me good?
'*Hume.* This they have promised,—to show your highness
A spirit rais'd from depth of under ground,
'That shall make answer to such questions,
'As by your grace shall be propounded him.
'*Duch.* It is enough; I'll think upon the questions:
'When from Saint Albans we do make return,
'We'll see these things effected to the full.
'Here, Hume, take this reward; make merry, man,
'With thy confederates in this weighty cause.
[*Exit* Duchess.
* *Hume.* Hume must make merry with the duchess' gold;
'Marry, and shall. But how now, sir John Hume?
'Seal up your lips, and give no words but—mum!
'The business asketh silent secrecy.
* Dame Eleanor gives gold, to bring the witch:
* Gold cannot come amiss, were she a devil.

[9] —— *Sir John!*] A title frequently bestowed on the clergy.

'Yet have I gold, flies from another coast:
'I dare not say, from the rich cardinal,
'And from the great and new-made duke of Suffolk;
'Yet I do find it so: for, to be plain,
'They, knowing dame Eleanor's aspiring humour,
'Have hired me to undermine the duchess,
'And buz these conjurations in her brain.
* They say, A crafty knave does need no broker;[1]
* Yet am I Suffolk and the cardinal's broker.
* Hume, if you take not heed, you shall go near
* To call them both—a pair of crafty knaves.
* Well, so it stands: And thus, I fear, at last,
* Hume's knavery, will be the duchess' wreck;
* And her attainture will be Humphrey's fall:
* Sort how it will,[2] I shall have gold for all. [*Exit.*

SCENE III.

The same. A Room in the Palace.

Enter PETER, *and Others, with Petitions.*

'1 *Pet.* My masters, let's stand close; my lord 'protector will come this way by and by, and then 'we may deliver our supplications in the quill.[3]

'2 *Pet.* Marry, the Lord protect him, for he's a 'good man! Jesu bless him!

Enter SUFFOLK, *and Queen* MARGARET.

* 1 *Pet.* Here 'a comes, methinks, and the queen
* with him: I'll be the first, sure.

[1] —— *A crafty knave does need no broker;*] This is a proverbial sentence.

[2] *Sort how it will,*] Let the issue be what it will.

[3] —— *in* the *quill.*] Perhaps our supplications *in the quill,* or *in quill,* means no more than our *written* or *penn'd* supplications.

'2 *Pet.* Come back, fool; this is the duke of 'Suffolk, and not my lord protector.

'*Suf.* How now, fellow? would'st any thing with 'me?

'1 *Pet.* I pray, my lord, pardon me! I took ye 'for my lord protector.

'*Q. Mar.* [Reading the superscription.] *To my 'lord protector!* are your supplications to his lord-'ship? Let me see them: What is thine?

'1 *Pet.* Mine is, an't please your grace, against 'John Goodman, my lord cardinal's man, for keep-'ing my house, and lands, and wife and all, from 'me.

Suf. Thy wife too? that is some wrong, indeed.—What's your's?—What's here! [*Reads.*] *Against the duke of Suffolk, for enclosing the commons of Melford.*—How now, sir knave?

2 *Pet.* Alas, sir, I am but a poor petitioner of our whole township.

Peter. [*Presenting his petition.*] Against my master, Thomas Horner, for saying, That the duke of York was rightful heir to the crown.

'*Q. Mar.* What say'st thou? Did the duke of 'York say, he was rightful heir to the crown?

'*Peter.* That my master was?[4] No, forsooth: 'my master said, That he was; and that the king 'was an usurper.

Suf. Who is there? [*Enter* Servants.]—Take this fellow in, and send for his master with a pursuivant presently:—we'll hear more of your matter before the king. [*Exeunt* Servants, *with* PETER.

'*Q. Mar.* And as for you, that love to be protected

[4] *That my* master *was?*] Peter supposes that the Queen had asked, whether the duke of York had said that his *master* (for so he understands the pronoun *he* in her speech) was rightful heir to the crown.

‘ Under the wings of our protector's grace,
‘ Begin your suits anew, and sue to him.
[*Tears the petition.*
‘ Away, base cullions!—Suffolk, let them go.
* *All.* Come, let's be gone. [*Exeunt* Petitioners.
* *Q. Mar.* My lord of Suffolk, say, is this the guise,
* Is this the fashion in the court of England?
* Is this the government of Britain's isle,
* And this the royalty of Albion's king?
* What, shall king Henry be a pupil still,
* Under the surly Gloster's governance?
* Am I a queen in title and in style,
* And must be made a subject to a duke?
‘ I tell thee, Poole, when in the city Tours
‘ Thou ran'st a tilt in honour of my love,
‘ And stol'st away the ladies' hearts of France;
‘ I thought king Henry had resembled thee,
‘ In courage, courtship, and proportion:
‘ But all his mind is bent to holiness,
* To number *Ave-Maries* on his beads:
* His champions are—the prophets and apostles;
* His weapons, holy saws of sacred writ;
* His study is his tilt-yard, and his loves
* Are brazen images of canoniz'd saints.
* I would, the college of cardinals
* Would choose him pope, and carry him to Rome,
* And set the triple crown upon his head;
* That were a state fit for his holiness.
‘ *Suf.* Madam, be patient: as I was cause
‘ Your highness came to England, so will I
‘ In England work your grace's full content.
Q. Mar. Beside the haught protector, have we Beaufort,
* The imperious churchman; Somerset, Buckingham,
* And grumbling York: and not the least of these,

* But can do more in England than the king.
* *Suf.* And he of these, that can do most of all,
* Cannot do more in England than the Nevils:
* Salisbury, and Warwick, are no simple peers.
' *Q. Mar.* Not all these lords do vex me half so much,
' As that proud dame, the lord protector's wife.
' She sweeps it through the court with troops of ladies,
' More like an empress than duke Humphrey's wife;
Strangers in court do take her for the queen:
* She bears a duke's revenues on her back,
* And in her heart she scorns her poverty:
* Shall I not live to be aveng'd on her?
* Contemptuous base-born callat as she is,
' She vaunted 'mongst her minions t'other day,
The very train of her worst wearing-gown
Was better worth than all my father's lands,
* Till Suffolk gave two dukedoms for his daughter.
' *Suf.* Madam, myself have lim'd a bush for her;
* And plac'd a quire of such enticing birds,
* That she will light to listen to the lays,
* And never mount to trouble you again.
* So, let her rest: And, madam, list to me;
* For I am bold to counsel you in this.
* Although we fancy not the cardinal,
* Yet must we join with him, and with the lords,
* Till we have brought duke Humphrey in disgrace.
* As for the duke of York,—this late complaint[5]
* Will make but little for his benefit:
* So, one by one, we'll weed them all at last,
* And you yourself shall steer the happy helm.

[5] —— *this late complaint*—] That is, The complaint of Peter the armourer's man against his master, for saying that York was the rightful king. JOHNSON.

Enter King HENRY, YORK, *and* SOMERSET, *conversing with him*; *Duke and Duchess of* GLOSTER, *Cardinal* BEAUFORT, BUCKINGHAM, SALISBURY, *and* WARWICK.

K. Hen. For my part, noble lords, I care not which;
Or Somerset, or York, all's one to me.
York. If York have ill demean'd himself in France,
Then let him be denay'd the regentship.
Som. If Somerset be unworthy of the place,
Let York be regent, I will yield to him.
War. Whether your grace be worthy, yea, or no,
Dispute not that: York is the worthier.
Car. Ambitious Warwick, let thy betters speak.
War. The cardinal's not my better in the field.
Buck. All in this presence are thy betters, Warwick.
War. Warwick may live to be the best of all.
* *Sal.* Peace, son;——and show some reason, Buckingham,
* Why Somerset should be preferr'd in this.
* *Q. Mar.* Because the king, forsooth, will have it so.
' *Glo.* Madam, the king is old enough himself
' To give his censure;[6] these are no women's matters.
Q. Mar. If he be old enough what needs your grace
' To be protector of his excellence?
' *Glo.* Madam, I am protector of the realm;
' And, at his pleasure, will resign my place.
Suf. Resign it then, and leave thine insolence.
' Since thou wert king, (as who is king, but thou?)
' The commonwealth hath daily run to wreck:

[6] —— *his censure:*] Through all these plays *censure* is used in an indifferent sense, simply for judgment or opinion.

* The Dauphin hath prevail'd beyond the seas;
* And all the peers and nobles of the realm
* Have been as bondmen to thy sovereignty.
  * *Car.* The commons hast thou rack'd; the clergy's bags
* Are lank and lean with thy extortions.
  * *Som.* Thy sumptuous buildings, and thy wife's attire,
* Have cost a mass of publick treasury.
  * *Buck.* Thy cruelty in execution,
* Upon offenders, hath exceeded law,
* And left thee to the mercy of the law.
  * *Q. Mar.* Thy sale of offices, and towns in France,—
* If they were known, as the suspect is great,—
* Would make thee quickly hop without thy head.
[*Exit* GLOSTER. *The Queen drops her Fan.*
' Give me my fan: What, minion! can you not?
[*Gives the* Duchess *a box on the ear.*
' I cry you mercy, madam; Was it you?
  ' *Duch.* Was't I? yea, I it was, proud French-woman:
' Could I come near your beauty with my nails,
I'd set my ten commandments in your face.
  K. Hen. Sweet aunt, be quiet; 'twas against her will.
  ' *Duch.* Against her will! Good king, look to't in time;
' She'll hamper thee, and dandle thee like a baby:
* Though in this place most master wear no breeches,
She shall not strike dame Eleanor unreveng'd.
[*Exit* Duchess.
  * *Buck.* Lord cardinal, I will follow Eleanor,
* And listen after Humphrey, how he proceeds:
* She's tickled now; her fume can need no spurs,
* She'll gallop fast enough to her destruction.
[*Exit* BUCKINGHAM.

Re-enter GLOSTER.

* *Glo.* Now, lords, my choler being over-blown,
* With walking once about the quadrangle,
* I come to talk of commonwealth affairs.
* As for your spiteful false objections,
* Prove them, and I lie open to the law:
* But God in mercy so deal with my soul,
* As I in duty love my king and country!
* But, to the matter that we have in hand:—
* I say, my sovereign, York is meetest man
* To be your regent in the realm of France.
* *Suf.* Before we make election, give me leave
' To show some reason, of no little force,
' That York is most unmeet of any man.
' *York.* I'll tell thee, Suffolk, why I am unmeet.
' First, for I cannot flatter thee in pride:
* Next, if I be appointed for the place,
* My lord of Somerset will keep me here,
* Without discharge, money, or furniture,
* Till France be won into the Dauphin's hands.
* Last time, I danc'd attendance on his will,
* Till Paris was besieg'd, famish'd, and lost.
* *War.* That I can witness; and a fouler fact
* Did never traitor in the land commit.
Suf. Peace, head-strong Warwick!
War. Image of pride, why should I hold my peace?

Enter Servants *of* SUFFOLK, *bringing in* HORNER *and* PETER.

Suf. Because here is a man accus'd of treason:
Pray God, the duke of York excuse himself!
* *York.* Doth any one accuse York for a traitor?
* *K. Hen.* What mean'st thou, Suffolk? tell me: What are these?

' *Suf.* Please it your majesty, this is the man
' That doth accuse his master of high treason:
' His words were these;—that Richard, duke of York,
' Was rightful heir unto the English crown;
' And that your majesty was an usurper.

' *K. Hen.* Say, man, were these thy words?

Hor. An't shall please your majesty, I never said nor thought any such matter: God is my witness, I am falsely accused by the villain.

' *Pet.* By these ten bones,[7] my lords, [*Holding up his Hands.*] he did speak them to me in the ' garret one night, as we were scouring my lord of ' York's armour.

* *York.* Base dunghill villain, and mechanical,
* I'll have thy head for this thy traitor's speech:—
' I do beseech your royal majesty,
' Let him have all the rigour of the law.

Hor. Alas, my lord, hang me, if ever I spake the words. My accuser is my prentice; and when I did correct him for his fault the other day, he did vow upon his knees he would be even with me: I have good witness of this; therefore, I beseech your majesty, do not cast away an honest man for a villain's accusation.

K. Hen. Uncle, what shall we say to this in law?

' *Glo.* This doom, my lord, if I may judge.
' Let Somerset be regent o'er the French,
' Because in York this breeds suspicion:
' And let these have a day appointed them
' For single combat in convenient place;
' For he hath witness of his servant's malice:
' This is the law, and this duke Humphrey's doom.

[7] *By these ten bones,* &c.] We have just heard a Duchess threaten *to set her ten commandments* in the face of a Queen. The jests in this play turn rather too much on the enumeration of fingers. This adjuration is, however, very ancient.

K. Hen. Then be it so. My lord of Somerset,
We make your grace lord regent o'er the French.
Som. I humbly thank your royal majesty.
Hor. And I accept the combat willingly.
Pet. Alas, my lord, I cannot fight; * for God's
* sake, pity my case! the spite of man prevaileth
* against me. O, Lord have mercy upon me! I
* shall never be able to fight a blow: O Lord, my
* heart!
Glo. Sirrah, or you must fight, or else be hang'd.
' *K. Hen.* Away with them to prison: and the day
' Of combat shall be the last of the next month.—
* Come, Somerset, we'll see thee sent away.
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE IV.

The same. The Duke of Gloster's *Garden.*

Enter MARGERY JOURDAIN, HUME, SOUTHWELL, *and* BOLINGBROKE.

* *Hume.* Come, my masters; the duchess, I tell
* you, expects performance of your promises.
* *Boling.* Master Hume, we are therefore pro-
* vided: Will her ladyship behold and hear our ex-
* orcisms?[8]
* *Hume.* Ay; What else? fear you not her cou-
* rage.
* *Boling.* I have heard her reported to be a wo-
* man of an invincible spirit: But it shall be con-
* venient, master Hume, that you be by her aloft,
* while we be busy below; and so, I pray you, go

[8] —— *our* exorcisms?] The word *exorcise*, and its derivatives, are used by Shakspeare in an uncommon sense. In all other writers it means to lay spirits, but in these plays it invariably means to raise them.

* in God's name, and leave us. [*Exit* HUME.] Mo-
' ther Jourdain, be you prostrate, and grovel on the
' earth:—* John Southwell, read you; and let us
* to our work.

Enter Duchess, *above*.

* *Duch.* Well said, my masters; and welcome
* all. To this geer; the sooner the better.
* *Boling.* Patience, good lady; wizards know
their times:
Deep night, dark night, the silent of the night,
' The time of night when Troy was set on fire;
' The time when screech-owls cry, and ban-dogs
howl,[9]
' And spirits walk, and ghosts break up their graves,
' That time best fits the work we have in hand.
' Madam, sit you, and fear not; whom we raise,
We will make fast within a hallow'd verge.
[*Here they perform the Ceremonies appertaining, and make the Circle*; Bolingbroke, *or* Southwell, *reads*, Conjuro te, &c. *It thunders and lightens terribly*; *then the Spirit riseth.*
* *Spir.* Adsum.
* *M. Jourd.* Asmath,
* By the eternal God, whose name and power
* Thou tremblest at, answer that I shall ask;
* For, till thou speak, thou shalt not pass from
hence.
* *Spir.* Ask what thou wilt: That I had said and
done![1]

[9] —— ban-dogs *howl,*] A *ban-dog* is a *village-dog*, or *mastiff*, which was formerly called a *band-dog*, per syncopen, *bandog*.

[1] —— *That I had said and done!*] It was anciently believed that spirits, who were raised by incantations, remained above ground, and answered questions with reluctance. See both Lucan and Statius.

Boling. *First, of the king. What shall of him become?* [*Reading out of a Paper.*

Spir. The duke yet lives, that Henry shall depose;
But him outlive, and die a violent death.

[*As the* Spirit *speaks,* SOUTHWELL *writes the answer.*

Boling. *What fate awaits the duke of* Suffolk?

Spir. By water shall he die, and take his end.

Boling. *What shall befall the duke of* Somerset?

Spir. Let him shun castles;
Safer shall he be upon the sandy plains
Than where castles mounted stand.
' Have done, for more I hardly can endure.

Boling. Descend to darkness, and the burning lake:
' False fiend, avoid!

[*Thunder and Lightning.* Spirit *descends.*

Enter YORK *and* BUCKINGHAM, *hastily, with their Guards, and Others.*

' *York.* Lay hands upon these traitors, and their trash.
' Beldame, I think, we watch'd you at an inch.—
' What, madam, are you there? the king and commonweal
' Are deeply indebted for this piece of pains;
' My lord protector will, I doubt it not,
' See you well guerdon'd for these good deserts.

* *Duch.* Not half so bad as thine to England's king,
* Injurious duke; that threat'st where is no cause.

* *Buck.* True, madam, none at all. What call you this? [*Shewing her the papers.*

' Away with them; let them be clapp'd up close,
' And kept asunder:—You, madam, shall with us:—
' Stafford, take her to thee.—

[*Exit* Duchess *from above.*

‘ We'll see your trinkets here all forth-coming;
‘ All.—Away!
[*Exeunt Guards, with* South. Boling. *&c.*
* *York.* Lord Buckingham, methinks, you watch'd her well:
* A pretty plot, well chosen to build upon!
Now, pray, my lord, let's see the devil's writ.
What have we here? [*Reads.*
The duke yet lives, that Henry shall depose;
But him outlive, and die a violent death.
* Why, this is just,
* *Aio te, Æacida, Romanos vincere posse.*
Well, to the rest:
Tell me,[2] *what fate awaits the duke of Suffolk?*
By water shall he die, and take his end.—
What shall betide the duke of Somerset?—
Let him shun castles;
Safer shall he be upon the sandy plains,
Than where castles mounted stand.
* Come, come, my lords;
* These oracles are hardily attain'd,
* And hardly understood.
‘ The king is now in progress toward Saint Albans,
‘ With him, the husband of this lovely lady:
‘ Thither go these news, as fast as horse can carry them;
‘ A sorry breakfast for my lord protector.
‘ *Buck.* Your grace shall give me leave, my lord of York,
‘ To be the post, in hope of his reward.
‘ *York.* At your pleasure, my good lord.—Who's
‘ within there, ho!

[2] *Tell me,* &c.] Yet these two words were not in the paper read by Bolingbroke, which York has now in his hand; nor are they in the original play. Here we have a species of inaccuracy peculiar to Shakspeare, of which he has been guilty in other places.

Enter a Servant.

' Invite my lords of Salisbury, and Warwick,
' To sup with me to-morrow night.—Away!
[*Exeunt.*

ACT II.

SCENE I. Saint Albans.

Enter King HENRY, *Queen* MARGARET, GLOSTER, Cardinal, *and* SUFFOLK, *with* Falconers *hollaing.*

' *Q. Mar.* Believe me, lords, for flying at the brook,[3]
' I saw not better sport these seven years' day:
' Yet, by your leave, the wind was very high;
And, ten to one, old Joan had not gone out.
' *K. Hen.* But what a point, my lord, your falcon made,
' And what a pitch she flew above the rest!—
' To see how God in all his creatures works!
* Yea, man and birds, are fain[4] of climbing high.
Suf. No marvel, an it like your majesty,
My lord protector's hawks do tower so well;
They know their master loves to be aloft,
* And bears his thoughts above his falcon's pitch.
' *Glo.* My lord, 'tis but a base ignoble mind
' That mounts no higher than a bird can soar.
' *Car.* I thought as much; he'd be above the clouds.
' *Glo.* Ay, my lord cardinal; How think you by that?

[3] —— *for flying at the brook,*] The falconer's term for hawking at water-fowl.

[4] —— *are* fain—] *Fain,* in this place, signifies *fond.*

Were it not good, your grace could fly to heaven?
* *K. Hen.* The treasury of everlasting joy!
' *Car.* Thy heaven is on earth; thine eyes and thoughts
' Beat on a crown,[5] the treasure of thy heart;
Pernicious protector, dangerous peer,
That smooth'st it so with king and commonweal!
' *Glo.* What, cardinal, is your priesthood grown peremptory?
* *Tantæne animis cœlestibus iræ?*
' Churchmen so hot? good uncle, hide such malice;
' With such holiness can you do it?
' *Suf.* No malice, sir; no more than well becomes
' So good a quarrel, and so bad a peer.
Glo. As who, my lord?
Suf. Why, as you, my lord;
An't like your lordly lord-protectorship.
Glo. Why, Suffolk, England knows thine insolence.
Q. Mar. And thy ambition, Gloster.
K. Hen. I pr'ythee, peace,
Good queen; and whet not on these furious peers,
For blessed are the peacemakers on earth.
Car. Let me be blessed for the peace I make,
Against this proud protector, with my sword!
Glo. 'Faith, holy uncle, 'would 'twere come to that! [*Aside to the* Cardinal.
' *Car.* Marry, when thou dar'st. [*Aside.*
' *Glo.* Make up no factious numbers for the matter,
' In thine own person answer thy abuse. [*Aside.*
' *Car.* Ay, where thou dar'st not peep: an if thou dar'st,
' This evening on the east side of the grove. [*Aside.*
' *K. Hen.* How now, my lords?

[5] —— *thine eyes and thoughts*
Beat on *a crown,*] To *beat* is a term in falconry, signifying to flutter.

‘ *Car.* Believe me, cousin Gloster,
‘ Had not your man put up the fowl so suddenly,
‘ We had had more sport.—Come with thy two-hand sword. [*Aside to* GLO.
Glo. True, uncle.
Car. Are you advis'd?—the east side of the grove?
Glo. Cardinal, I am with you. [*Aside.*
K. Hen. Why, how now, uncle Gloster!
‘ *Glo.* Talking of hawking; nothing else, my lord.—
Now, by God's mother, priest, I'll shave your crown for this,
* Or all my fence shall fail.[6] [*Aside.*
* Car. *Medice teipsum*;
‘ Protector, see to't well, protect yourself. } [*Aside.*
K. Hen. The winds grow high; so do your stomachs, lords.
* How irksome is this musick to my heart!
* When such strings jar, what hope of harmony?
* I pray, my lords, let me compound this strife.

Enter an Inhabitant *of Saint* Albans, *crying*, A Miracle![7]

Glo. What means this noise?
Fellow, what miracle dost thou proclaim?
Inhab. A miracle! a miracle!
Suf. Come to the king, and tell him what miracle.
Inhab. Forsooth, a blind man at Saint Alban's shrine,

[6] —— *my* fence *shall fail.*] *Fence* is the art of defence.
[7] —— *crying, A* Miracle!] This scene is founded on a story which Sir Thomas More has related, and which he says was communicated to him by his father. The impostor's name is not mentioned, but he was detected by Humphrey Duke of Gloster, and in the manner here represented.

Within this half hour, hath receiv'd his sight;
A man, that ne'er saw in his life before.
' *K. Hen.* Now, God be prais'd! that to believing souls
' Gives light in darkness, comfort in despair!

Enter the Mayor *of Saint* Albans, *and his Brethren*; *and* SIMPCOX, *borne between two persons in a Chair*; *his Wife and a great Multitude following.*

* *Car.* Here come the townsmen on procession,
* To present your highness with the man.
* *K. Hen.* Great is his comfort in this earthly vale,
* Although by his sight his sin be multiplied.
* *Glo.* Stand by, my masters, bring him near the king,
* His highness' pleasure is to talk with him.
* *K. Hen.* Good fellow, tell us here the circumstance,
* That we for thee may glorify the Lord.
What, hast thou been long blind, and now restor'd?
Simp. Born blind, an't please your grace.
Wife. Ay, indeed, was he.
Suf. What woman is this?
Wife. His wife, an't like your worship.
Glo. Had'st thou been his mother, thou could'st have better told.
K. Hen. Where wert thou born?
Simp. At Berwick in the north, an't like your grace.
' *K. Hen.* Poor soul! God's goodness hath been great to thee:
' Let never day nor night unhallow'd pass,
' But still remember what the Lord hath done.
* *Q. Mar.* Tell me, good fellow, cam'st thou here by chance,
* Or of devotion, to this holy shrine?

' *Simp.* God knows, of pure devotion; being call'd
' A hundred times, and oftner, in my sleep
' By good Saint Alban; who said,—*Simpcox, come*;
' *Come, offer at my shrine, and I will help thee.*
* *Wife.* Most true, forsooth; and many time and oft
* Myself have heard a voice to call him so.
Car. What, art thou lame?
Simp. Ay, God Almighty help me!
Suf. How cam'st thou so?
Simp. A fall off of a tree.
Wife. A plum-tree, master.
Glo. How long hast thou been blind?
Simp. O, born so, master.
Glo. What, and would'st climb a tree?
Simp. But that in all my life, when I was a youth.
* *Wife.* Too true; and bought his climbing very dear.
* *Glo.* 'Mass, thou lov'dst plums well, that would'st venture so.
' *Simp.* Alas, good master, my wife desir'd some damsons,
' And made me climb, with danger of my life.
* *Glo.* A subtle knave! but yet it shall not serve.—
' Let me see thine eyes:—wink now;—now open them:—
' In my opinion yet thou see'st not well.
' *Simp.* Yes, master, clear as day; I thank God, and Saint Alban.
Glo. Say'st thou me so? What colour is this cloak of?
Simp. Red, master; red as blood.
Glo. Why, that's well said: What colour is my gown of?
Simp. Black, forsooth; coal-black, as jet.
K. Hen. Why then, thou know'st what colour jet is of?

Suf. And yet, I think, jet did he never see.
Glo. But cloaks, and gowns, before this day, a many.
* *Wife.* Never, before this day, in all his life.
Glo. Tell me, sirrah, what's my name?
Simp. Alas, master, I know not.
Glo. What's his name?
Simp. I know not.
Glo. Nor his?
Simp. No, indeed, master.
Glo. What's thine own name?
Simp. Saunder Simpcox, an if it please you, master.
Glo. Then, Saunder, sit thou there, the lyingest knave
In Christendom. If thou hadst been born blind,
Thou might'st as well have known our names, as thus
To name the several colours we do wear.
Sight may distinguish of colours; but suddenly
To nominate them all, 's impossible.—
My lords, Saint Alban here hath done a miracle;
And would ye not think that cunning to be great,
That could restore this cripple to his legs?
Simp. O, master, that you could!
Glo. My masters of Saint Albans, have you not beadles in your town, and things called whips?
May. Yes, my lord, if it please your grace.
Glo. Then send for one presently.
May. Sirrah, go fetch the beadle hither straight.
[*Exit an* Attendant.
Glo. Now fetch me a stool hither by and by. [*A Stool brought out.*] Now, sirrah, if you mean to save yourself from whipping, leap me over this stool, and run away.
Simp. Alas, master, I am not able to stand alone: You go about to torture me in vain.

Re-enter Attendant, *with the* Beadle.

Glo. Well, sir, we must have you find your legs.

Sirrah beadle, whip him till he leap over that same stool.

Bead. I will, my lord.—Come on, sirrah; off with your doublet quickly.

Simp. Alas, master, what shall I do? I am not able to stand.

[*After the* Beadle *hath hit him once, he leaps over the Stool, and runs away; and the People follow, and cry,* A Miracle!

* *K. Hen.* O God, see'st thou this, and bear'st so long?

* *Q. Mar.* It made me laugh, to see the villain run.

* *Glo.* Follow the knave; and take this drab away.

* *Wife.* Alas, sir, we did it for pure need.

Glo. Let them be whipped through every market town, till they come to Berwick, whence they came.

[*Exeunt* Mayor, Beadle, Wife, *&c.*

' *Car.* Duke Humphrey has done a miracle to-day.

' *Suf.* True; made the lame to leap, and fly away.

' *Glo.* But you have done more mircles than I;
' You made, in a day, my lord, whole towns to fly.

Enter BUCKINGHAM.

' *K. Hen.* What tidings with our cousin Buckingham?

' *Buck.* Such as my heart doth tremble to unfold.
' A sort of naughty persons, lewdly bent,[8]—
' Under the countenance and confederacy
' Of lady Eleanor, the protector's wife,
' The ringleader and head of all this rout,—
' Have practis'd dangerously against your state,
' Dealing with witches, and with conjurers:
' Whom we have apprehended in the fact;

[8] *A* sort——lewdly *bent,*] *Lewdly,* in this place, and in some others, does not signify *wantonly,* but *wickedly.* A *sort* is a *company.*

‘ Raising up wicked spirits from under ground,
‘ Demanding of king Henry's life and death,
‘ And other of your highness' privy council,
‘ As more at large your grace shall understand.
‘ *Car.* And so, my lord protector, by this means
‘ Your lady is forthcoming[9] yet at London.
‘ This news, I think, hath turn'd your weapon's edge;
‘ 'Tis like, my lord, you will not keep your hour.
[*Aside to* GLOSTER.
‘ *Glo.* Ambitious churchman, leave to afflict my heart!
* Sorrow and grief have vanquish'd all my powers:
* And, vanquish'd as I am, I yield to thee,
* Or to the meanest groom.
* *K. Hen.* O God, what mischiefs work the wicked ones;
* Heaping confusion on their own heads thereby!
* *Q. Mar.* Gloster, see here the tainture of thy nest;
* And, look, thyself be faultless, thou wert best.
‘ *Glo.* Madam, for myself, to heaven I do appeal,
‘ How I have lov'd my king, and commonweal:
‘ And, for my wife, I know not how it stands;
‘ Sorry I am to hear what I have heard:
‘ Noble she is; but if she have forgot
‘ Honour, and virtue, and convers'd with such
‘ As, like to pitch, defile nobility,
‘ I banish her, my bed, and company;
‘ And give her, as a prey, to law, and shame,
‘ That hath dishonour'd Gloster's honest name.
‘ *K. Hen.* Well, for this night, we will repose us here:
‘ To-morrow, toward London, back again,
‘ To look into this business thoroughly,
‘ And call these foul offenders to their answers;

[9] *Your lady is forthcoming* —] That is, Your lady is in custody.

‘ And poise the cause in justice' equal scales,
‘ Whose beam stands sure, whose rightful cause prevails. [*Flourish. Exeunt.*

SCENE II.

London. *The Duke of* York's *Garden.*

Enter York, Salisbury, *and* Warwick.

‘ *York.* Now, my good lords of Salisbury and Warwick,
‘ Our simple supper ended, give me leave,
‘ In this close walk, to satisfy myself,
‘ In craving your opinion of my title,
‘ Which is infallible, to England's crown.
* *Sal.* My lord, I long to hear it at full.
War. Sweet York, begin: and if thy claim be good,
The Nevils are thy subjects to command.
York. Then thus:—
‘ Edward the Third, my lords, had seven sons:
‘ The first, Edward the Black Prince, prince of Wales;
‘ The second, William of Hatfield; and the third,
‘ Lionel, duke of Clarence; next to whom,
‘ Was John of Gaunt, the duke of Lancaster:
‘ The fifth, was Edmund Langley, duke of York;
‘ The sixth, was Thomas of Woodstock, duke of Gloster,
‘ William of Windsor was the seventh, and last.
‘ Edward, the black prince, died before his father;
‘ And left behind him Richard, his only son,
‘ Who, after Edward the Third's death, reign'd as king;
‘ Till Henry Bolingbroke, duke of Lancaster,
‘ The eldest son and heir of John of Gaunt,
‘ Crown'd by the name of Henry the Fourth,

' Seiz'd on the realm; depos'd the rightful king;
' Sent his poor queen to France, from whence she came,
' And him to Pomfret; where, as all you know,
' Harmless Richard was murder'd traitorously.
* *War.* Father, the duke hath told the truth;
* Thus got the house of Lancaster the crown.
* *York.* Which now they hold by force, and not by right;
* For Richard, the first son's heir being dead,
* The issue of the next son should have reign'd.
* *Sal.* But William of Hatfield died without an heir.
* *York.* The third son, duke of Clarence, (from whose line
* I claim the crown,) had issue—Philippe, a daughter,
* Who married Edmund Mortimer, earl of March,
* Edmund had issue—Roger, earl of March:
* Roger had issue—Edmund, Anne, and Eleanor.
' *Sal.* This Edmund, in the reign of Bolingbroke,
' As I have read, laid claim unto the crown;
' And, but for Owen Glendower, had been king,
' Who kept him in captivity, till he died.
* But, to the rest.
' *York.* His eldest sister, Anne,
' My mother being heir unto the crown,
' Married Richard, earl of Cambridge; who was son
' To Edmund Langley, Edward the third's fifth son.
' By her I claim the kingdom: she was heir
' To Roger, earl of March; who was the son
' Of Edmund Mortimer, who married Philippe,
' Sole daughter unto Lionel, duke of Clarence:
' So, if the issue of the elder son
' Succeed before the younger, I am king.
' *War.* What plain proceedings are more plain than this?
' Henry doth claim the crown from John of Gaunt,
' The fourth son; York claims it from the third.

'Till Lionel's issue fails, his should not reign:
'It fails not yet; but flourishes in thee,
'And in thy sons, fair slips of such a stock.—
'Then, father Salisbury, kneel we both together;
'And, in this private plot,[1] be we the first,
'That shall salute our rightful sovereign
'With honour of his birthright to the crown.
Both. Long live our sovereign Richard, England's king!
'*York.* We thank you, lords. But I am not your king
'Till I be crown'd; and that my sword be stain'd
'With heart-blood of the house of Lancaster:
* And that's not suddenly to be perform'd;
* But with advice, and silent secrecy.
* Do you, as I do, in these dangerous days,
* Wink at the duke of Suffolk's insolence,
* At Beaufort's pride, at Somerset's ambition,
* At Buckingham, and all the crew of them,
* Till they have snar'd the shepherd of the flock,
* That virtuous prince, the good duke Humphrey:
* 'Tis that they seek; and they, in seeking that,
* Shall find their deaths, if York can prophesy.
* *Sal.* My lord, break we off; we know your mind at full.
'*War.* My heart assures me, that the earl of Warwick
'Shall one day make the duke of York a king.
'*York.* And, Nevil, this I do assure myself,—
'Richard shall live to make the earl of Warwick
'The greatest man in England, but the king.
[*Exeunt.*

[1] —— *private plot,*] Sequestered spot of ground.

SCENE III.

The same. A Hall of Justice.

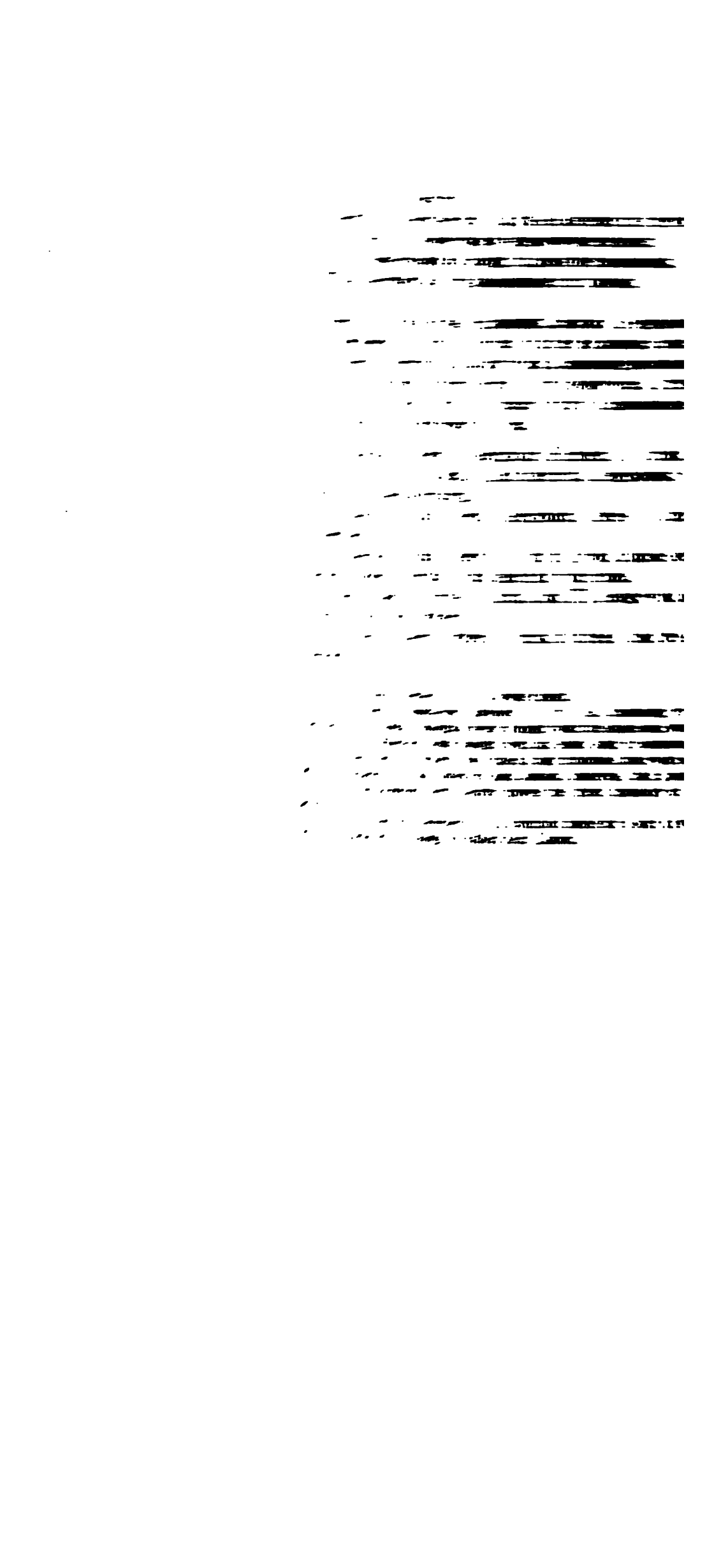
Trumpets sounded. Enter King HENRY, *Queen* MARGARET, GLOSTER, YORK, SUFFOLK, *and* SALISBURY; *the Duchess of* GLOSTER, MARGERY JOURDAIN, SOUTHWELL, HUME, *and* BOLINGBROKE, *under guard.*

'*K. Hen.* Stand forth, dame Eleanor Cobham, Gloster's wife:
'In sight of God, and us, your guilt is great;
'Receive the sentence of the law, for sins
'Such as by God's book are adjudg'd to death.—
* You four, from hence to prison back again;
[*To* JOURD. *&c.*
* From thence, unto the place of execution:
* The witch in Smithfield shall be burn'd to ashes,
* And you three shall be strangled on the gallows.—
'You, madam, for you are more nobly born,
'Despoiled of your honour in your life,
'Shall, after three days' open penance done,
'Live in your country here, in banishment,
'With sir John Stanley, in the isle of Man.
'*Duch.* Welcome is banishment, welcome were my death.
* *Glo.* Eleanor, the law, thou seest, hath judged thee;
* I cannot justify whom the law condemns.—
[*Exeunt the* Duchess, *and the other Prisoners, guarded.*
'Mine eyes are full of tears, my heart of grief.
'Ah, Humphrey, this dishonour in thine age
'Will bring thy head with sorrow to the ground!—
'I beseech your majesty, give me leave to go;

' Sorrow would solace, and mine age would ease.[2]
' *K. Hen.* Stay, Humphrey duke of Gloster: ere thou go,
' Give up thy staff; Henry will to himself
' Protector be: and God shall be my hope,
' My stay, my guide, and lantern to my feet;
' And go in Peace, Humphrey; no less belov'd,
' Than when thou wert protector to thy king.
* *Q. Mar.* I see no reason, why a king of years
* Should be to be protected like a child.—
' God and king Henry govern England's helm:
' Give up your staff, sir, and the king his realm.
' *Glo.* My staff?—here, noble Henry, is my staff:
' As willingly do I the same resign,
' As ere thy father Henry made it mine;
And even as willingly at thy feet I leave it,
As others would ambitiously receive it.
' Farewell, good king: when I am dead and gone,
May honourable peace attend thy throne! [*Exit.*
* *Q. Mar.* Why, now is Henry king, and Margaret queen;
* And Humphrey, duke of Gloster, scarce himself,
* That bears so shrewd a main; two pulls at once,—
* His lady banish'd, and a limb lopp'd off;
* This staff of honour raught:[3]—There let it stand,
' Where it best fits to be, in Henry's hand.
* *Suf.* Thus droops this lofty pine, and hangs his sprays;
* Thus Eleanor's pride dies in her youngest days.
' *York.* Lords, let him go.—Please it your majesty,
' This is the day appointed for the combat;
' And ready are the appellant and defendant,
' The armourer and his man, to enter the lists,

[2] *Sorrow would solace, and mine age would ease.*] That is, Sorrow would have, sorrow requires, solace, and age requires ease.

[3] *This staff of honour* raught:] *Raught* is the antient preterite of the verb *reach*, and is frequently used by Spenser.



2 *Pren.* Be merry, Peter, and fear not thy master; fight for credit of the prentices.

Peter. I thank you all: * drink, and pray for me, * I pray you; for, I think, I have taken my last * draught in this world.*—Here, Robin, an if I die, I give thee my apron; and, Will, thou shalt have my hammer:—and here, Tom, take all the money that I have.—O Lord, bless me, I pray God! for I am never able to deal with my master, he hath learnt so much fence already.

Sal. Come, leave your drinking, and fall to blows. —Sirrah, what's thy name?

Peter. Peter, forsooth.

Sal. Peter! what more?

Peter. Thump.

Sal. Thump! then see thou thump thy master well.

Hor. Masters, I am come hither, as it were, upon my man's instigation, to prove him a knave, and myself an honest man: * and touching the duke of * York,—will take my death, I never meant him any ill, nor the king, nor the queen: *And therefore, Peter, have at thee with a downright blow, as Bevis of Southampton, fell upon Ascapart.

* *York.* Despatch:—this knave's tongue begins to double.

* Sound trumpets, alarum to the combatants.

[*Alarum. They fight, and* PETER *strikes down his Master.*

Hor. Hold, Peter, hold! I confess, I confess treason. [*Dies.*

* *York.* Take away his weapon:—Fellow, thank * God, and the good wine in thy master's way.

' *Peter.* O God! have I overcome mine enemies in ' this presence? O Peter, thou hast prevailed in ' right!

K. Hen. Go, take hence that traitor from our sight;

For, by his death, we do perceive his guilt:[7]
And God, in justice, hath reveal'd to us
The truth and innocence of this poor fellow,
Which he had thought to have murder'd wrongfully.—
Come, fellow, follow us for thy reward. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE IV.

The same. A Street.

Enter GLOSTER *and* Servants, *in mourning Cloaks.*

* *Glo.* Thus, sometimes, hath the brightest day
a cloud;
* And after summer, evermore succeeds
* Barren winter, with his wrathful nipping cold:
* So cares and joys abound, as seasons fleet.
Sirs, what's o'clock?
Serv. Ten, my lord.
' *Glo.* Ten is the hour that was appointed me,
' To watch the coming of my punish'd duchess:
' Uneath[8] may she endure the flinty streets,
' To tread them with her tender-feeling feet.
Sweet Nell, ill can thy noble mind abrook
The abject people, gazing on thy face,
With envious[9] looks still laughing at thy shame;
That erst did follow thy proud chariot wheels,
When thou didst ride in triumph through the streets.
* But, soft! I think, she comes; and I'll prepare
* My tear-stain'd eyes to see her miseries.

[7] *For, by his death, we do perceive his guilt:*] According to the ancient usage of the duel, the vanquished person not only lost his life but his reputation, and his death was always regarded as a certain evidence of his guilt.

[8] *Uneath* —] i. e. Scarcely, or not easily.

[9] —— *envious* —] i. e. malicious.

Enter the Duchess of GLOSTER, *in a white sheet, with papers pinn'd upon her back, her feet bare, and a taper burning in her hand*; *Sir* John Stanley, *a Sheriff, and Officers.*

Serv. So please your grace, we'll take her from the sheriff.

' *Glo.* No, stir not, for your lives; let her pass by.

Duch. Come you, my lord, to see my open shame?
Now thou dost penance too. Look, how they gaze!
' See, how the giddy multitude do point,
' And nod their heads, and throw their eyes on thee!
* Ah, Gloster, hide thee from their hateful looks;
' And, in thy closet pent up, rue my shame,
And ban thine enemies, both mine and thine.

Glo. Be patient, gentle Nell; forget this grief.

Duch. Ah, Gloster, teach me to forget myself:
For, whilst I think I am thy married wife,
And thou a prince, protector of this land,
' Methinks, I should not thus be led along,
Mail'd up in shame,[1] with papers on my back;
* And follow'd with a rabble, that rejoice
* To see my tears, and hear my deep-fet[2] groans.
The ruthless flint doth cut my tender feet;
And, when I start, the envious people laugh,
And bid me be advised how I tread.
' Ah, Humphrey, can I bear this shameful yoke?
* Trow'st thou, that e'er I'll look upon the world;
* Or count them happy, that enjoy the sun?
* No; dark shall be my light, and night my day;
* To think upon my pomp, shall be my hell.
Sometime I'll say, I am duke Humphrey's wife;
And he a prince, and ruler of the land:

[1] *Mail'd up in shame,*] Wrapped up, bundled up in disgrace; alluding to the sheet of penance.

[2] —— *deep*-fet —] i. e. deep-*fetched.*

Yet so he rul'd, and such a prince he was,
As he stood by, whilst I, his forlorn duchess,
' Was made a wonder, and a pointing stock,
To every idle rascal follower.
But be thou mild, and blush not at my shame;
Nor stir at nothing, till the axe of death
Hang over thee, as, sure, it shortly will.
For Suffolk,—he that can do all in all
' With her, that hateth thee, and hates us all,—
And York, and impious Beaufort, that false priest,
Have all lim'd bushes to betray thy wings,
And, fly thou how thou canst, they'll tangle thee:
* But fear not thou, until thy foot be snar'd,
* Nor never seek prevention of thy foes.
* *Glo.* Ah, Nell, forbear; thou aimest all awry;
* I must offend, before I be attainted:
* And had I twenty times so many foes,
* And each of them had twenty times their power,
* All these could not procure me any scathe,[3]
* So long as I am loyal, true, and crimeless.
' Would'st have me rescue thee from this reproach?
' Why, yet thy scandal were not wip'd away,
' But I in danger for the breach of law.
' Thy greatest help is quiet,[4] gentle Nell:
' I pray thee, sort thy heart to patience;
' These few days' wonder will be quickly worn.

Enter a Herald.

Her. I summon your grace to his majesty's parliament, holden at Bury the first of this next month.

Glo. And my consent ne'er ask'd herein before!

[3] —— *any* scathe,] *Scathe* is harm, or mischief.

[4] *Thy greatest help is quiet,*] The poet has not endeavoured to raise much compassion for the Duchess, who indeed suffers but what she had deserved. JOHNSON.

This is close dealing.—Well, I will be there.
[*Exit* Herald.
My Nell, I take my leave:—and, master sheriff,
Let not her penance exceed the king's commission.
' *Sher.* An't please your grace, here my commission stays:
' And sir John Stanley is appointed now
' To take her with him to the isle of Man.
' *Glo.* Must you, sir John, protect my lady here?
' *Stan.* So am I given in charge, may't please your grace.
Glo. Entreat her not the worse, in that I pray
You use her well: the world may laugh again:[5]
And I may live to do you kindness, if
You do it her. And so, sir John, farewell.
Duch. What gone, my lord; and bid me not farewell?
' *Glo.* Witness my tears, I cannot stay to speak.
[*Exeunt* GLOSTER *and* Servants.
' *Duch.* Art thou gone too? * All comfort go with thee!
* For none abides with me: my joy is—death;
* Death, at whose name I oft have been afeard,
* Because I wish'd this world's eternity.—
' Stanley, I pr'ythee, go, and take me hence;
' I care not whither, for I beg no favour,
' Only convey me where thou art commanded.
* *Stan.* Why, madam, that is to the isle of Man;
* There to be used according to your state.
* *Duch.* That's bad enough, for I am but reproach:
* And shall I then be us'd reproachfully?
* *Stan.* Like to a duchess, and duke Humphrey's lady,
* According to that state you shall be used.

[5] —— *the world may laugh again*;] That is, the world may look again favourably upon me. JOHNSON.

'*Duch.* Sheriff, farewell, and better than I fare;
'Although thou hast been conduct of my shame![6]
'*Sher.* It is my office; and, madam, pardon me.
'*Duch.* Ay, ay, farewell; thy office is discharg'd—
'Come, Stanley, shall we go?
'*Stan.* Madam, your penance done, throw off this sheet,
'And go we to attire you for our journey.
'*Duch.* My shame will not be shifted with my sheet:
* No, it will hang upon my richest robes,
* And show itself, attire me how I can.
* Go, lead the way; I long to see my prison.[7]

[*Exeunt.*

ACT III.

SCENE I. The Abbey at Bury.

Enter to the Parliament, King HENRY, *Queen* MARGARET, *Cardinal* BEAUFORT, SUFFOLK, YORK, BUCKINGHAM, *and Others.*

'*K. Hen.* I muse,[8] my lord of Gloster is not come:
'Tis not his wont to be the hindmost man,
'Whate'er occasion keeps him from us now.
'*Q. Mar.* Can you not see? or will you not observe
'The strangeness of his alter'd countenance?
'With what a majesty he bears himself;
'How insolent of late he is become,

[6] —— conduct *of my shame!*] i. e. conductor.

[7] —— *I long to see my prison.*] This impatience of a high spirit is very natural. It is not so dreadful to be imprisoned, as it is desirable in a state of disgrace to be sheltered from the scorn of gazers. JOHNSON.

[8] *I muse,*] i. e. wonder.

'How proud, perémptory, and unlike himself?
'We know the time, since he was mild and affable;
'And, if we did but glance a far-off look,
'Immediately he was upon his knee,
'That all the court admir'd him for submission;
'But meet him now, and, be it in the morn,
'When every one will give the time of day,
'He knits his brow, and shows an angry eye,
'And passeth by with stiff unbowed knee,
'Disdaining duty that to us belongs.
'Small curs are not regarded, when they grin;
'But great men tremble, when the lion roars;
'And Humphrey is no little man in England.
'First, note, that he is near you in descent;
'And should you fall, he is the next will mount.
'Me seemeth[9] then, it is no policy,—
'Respecting what a rancorous mind he bears,
'And his advantage following your decease,—
'That he should come about your royal person,
'Or be admitted to your highness' council.
'By flattery hath he won the commons' hearts;
'And, when he please to make commotion,
'Tis to be fear'd, they all will follow him.
'Now 'tis the spring, and weeds are shallow-rooted;
'Suffer them now, and they'll o'ergrow the garden,
'And choke the herbs for want of husbandry.
'The reverent care, I bear unto my lord,
'Made me collect[1] these dangers in the duke.
'If it be fond,[2] call it a woman's fear;
'Which fear if better reasons can supplant,
'I will subscribe and say—I wrong'd the duke.
'My lord of Suffolk,—Buckingham,—and York,—

[9] *Me seemeth* —] That is, it seemeth to me, a word more grammatical than *methinks*, which has, I know not how, intruded into its place. JOHNSON.

[1] —— *collect* —] i. e. assemble by observation.

[2] *If it be* fond,] i. e. weak, foolish.

' Reprove my allegation, if you can;
' Or else conclude my words effectual.
' *Suf.* Well hath your highness seen into this duke;
' And, had I first been put to speak my mind,
I think, I should have told your grace's tale.[3]
* The duchess, by his subornation,
* Upon my life, began her devilish practices:
* Or if he were not privy to those faults,
* Yet, by reputing of his high descent,[4]
* (As next the king, he was successive heir,)
* And such high vaunts of his nobility,
* Did instigate the bedlam brain-sick duchess,
* By wicked means to frame our sovereign's fall.
Smooth runs the water, where the brook is deep;
* And in his simple show he harbours treason.
The fox barks not, when he would steal the lamb.
No, no, my sovereign; Gloster is a man
Unsounded yet, and full of deep deceit.
* *Car.* Did he not, contrary to form of law,
* Devise strange deaths for small offences done?
York. And did he not, in his protectorship,
* Levy great sums of money through the realm,
* For soldiers' pay in France, and never sent it?
* By means whereof, the towns each day revolted.
* *Buck.* Tut! these are petty faults to faults unknown,
* Which time will bring to light in smooth duke Humphrey.
* *K. Hen.* My lords, at once: The care you have of us,
* To mow down thorns that would annoy our foot,

[3] —— *your grace's tale.*] Suffolk uses *highness* and *grace* promiscuously to the Queen. *Majesty* was not the settled title till the time of King James the First. JOHNSON.

[4] *Yet, by* reputing *of his high descent,*] *Reputing of his high descent,* is *valuing himself upon it.*

* Is worthy praise: But shall I speak my conscience?
* Our kinsman Gloster is as innocent
* From meaning treason to our royal person,
* As is the sucking lamb, or harmless dove:
* The duke is virtuous, mild; and too well given,
* To dream on evil, or to work my downfall.
* *Q. Mar.* Ah, what's more dangerous than this fond affiance!
* Seems he a dove? his feathers are but borrow'd,
* For he's disposed as the hateful raven.
* Is he a lamb? his skin is surely lent him,
* For he's inclin'd as are the ravenous wolves.
* Who cannot steal a shape, that means deceit?
* Take heed, my lord; the welfare of us all
* Hangs on the cutting short that fraudful man.

Enter SOMERSET.

* *Som.* All health unto my gracious sovereign!
K. Hen. Welcome, lord Somerset. What news from France?
' *Som.* That all your interest in those territories
' Is utterly bereft you; all is lost.
K. Hen. Cold news, lord Somerset: But God's will be done!
York. Cold news for me; for I had hope of France,
As firmly as I hope for fertile England.
* Thus are my blossoms blasted in the bud,
* And caterpillars eat my leaves away:
* But I will remedy this gear[5] ere long,
* Or sell my title for a glorious grave. [*Aside.*

Enter GLOSTER.

* *Glo.* All happiness unto my lord the king!
Pardon, my liege, that I have staid so long.

[5] —— *this* gear—] *Gear* was a general word for things or matters.

Suf. Nay, Gloster, know, that thou art come too soon,
‘ Unless thou wert more loyal than thou art:
I do arrest thee of high treason here.
Glo. Well, Suffolk, yet thou shalt not see me blush,
Nor change my countenance for this arrest;
* A heart unspotted is not easily daunted.
* The purest spring is not so free from mud,
* As I am clear from treason to my sovereign:
Who can accuse me? wherein am I guilty?
York. 'Tis thought, my lord, that you took bribes of France,
And, being protector, staied the soldiers' pay;
By means whereof, his highness hath lost France.
Glo. Is it but thought so? What are they that think it?
‘ I never robb'd the soldiers of their pay,
‘ Nor ever had one penny bribe from France.
‘ So help me God, as I have watch'd the night,—
‘ Ay, night by night,—in studying good for England!
‘ That doit that e'er I wrested from the king,
‘ Or any groat I hoarded to my use,
‘ Be brought against me at my trial day!
‘ No! many a pound of mine own proper store,
‘ Because I would not tax the needy commons,
‘ Have I dispursed to the garrisons,
‘ And never ask'd for restitution.
* *Car.* It serves you well, my lord, to say so much.
* *Glo.* I say no more than truth, so help me God!
York. In your protectorship, you did devise
Strange tortures for offenders, never heard of,
That England was defam'd by tyranny.
Glo. Why, 'tis well known, that whiles I was protector,

Pity was all the fault that was in me;
* For I should melt at an offender's tears,
* And lowly words were ransome for their fault.
' Unless it were a bloody murderer,
' Or foul felonious thief that fleec'd poor passengers,
' I never gave them cóndign punishment:
' Murder, indeed, that bloody sin, I tortur'd
' Above the felon, or what trespass else.
' *Suf.* My lord, these faults are easy,[6] quickly answer'd:
' But mightier crimes are laid unto your charge,
' Whereof you cannot easily purge yourself.
' I do arrest you in his highness' name;
' And here commit you to my lord cardinal
' To keep, until your further time of trial.
' *K. Hen.* My lord of Gloster, 'tis my special hope,
' That you will clear yourself from all suspects;
My conscience tells me, you are innocent.
Glo. Ah, gracious lord, these days are dangerous!
* Virtue is chok'd with foul ambition,
* And charity chas'd hence by rancour's hand;
* Foul subornation is predominant,
* And equity exíl'd your highness' land.
* I know, their complot is to have my life;
' And, if my death might make this island happy,
' And prove the period of their tyranny,
' I would expend it with all willingness:
' But mine is made the prologue to their play;
' For thousands more, that yet suspect no peril,
' Will not conclude their plotted tragedy.
' Beaufort's red sparkling eyes blab his heart's malice,
' And Suffolk's cloudy brow his stormy hate;
' Sharp Buckingham unburdens with his tongue
' The envious load that lies upon his heart;

[6] —— *these faults are* easy,] *Easy* is an adjective used adverbially.

‘ And dogged York, that reaches at the moon,
‘ Whose overweening arm I have pluck'd back,
‘ By false accuse[7] doth level at my life:—
‘ And you, my sovereign lady, with the rest,
‘ Causeless have laid disgraces on my head;
* And, with your best endeavour, have stirr'd up
* My liefest[8] liege to be mine enemy:—
* Ay, all of you have laid your heads together,
* Myself had notice of your conventicles,
‘ I shall not want false witness to condemn me,
‘ Nor store of treasons to augment my guilt;
‘ The ancient proverb will be well affected,—
A staff is quickly found to beat a dog.
* *Car.* My liege, his railing is intolerable:
* If those that care to keep your royal person
* From treason's secret knife, and traitors' rage,
* Be thus upbraided, chid, and rated at,
* And the offender granted scope of speech,
* 'Twill make them cool in zeal unto your grace.
Suf. Hath he not twit our sovereign lady here,
‘ With ignominious words, though clerkly couch'd,
‘ As if she had suborned some to swear
‘ False allegations to o'erthrow his state?
‘ *Q. Mar.* But I can give the loser leave to chide.
Glo. Far truer spoke, than meant: I lose, indeed;—
‘ Beshrew the winners, for they played me false!
* And well such losers may have leave to speak.
Buck. He'll wrest the sense, and hold us here all day:—
‘ Lord cardinal, he is your prisoner.
‘ *Car.* Sirs, take away the duke, and guard him sure.
Glo. Ah, thus king Henry throws away his crutch,

[7] —— *accuse*—] i. e. accusation.
[8] —— *liefest*—] Is *dearest*. JOHNSON.

Before his legs be firm to bear his body:
' Thus is the shepherd beaten from thy side,
' And wolves are gnarling who shall gnaw thee first.
' Ah, that my fear were false! ah, that it were!
' For, good king Henry, thy decay I fear.
[*Exeunt* Attendants, *with* GLOSTER.

K. Hen. My lords, what to your wisdoms seemeth best,
Do, or undo, as if ourself were here.

Q. Mar. What, will your highness leave the parliament?

K. Hen. Ay, Margaret; my heart is drown'd with grief,
* Whose flood begins to flow within mine eyes;
* My body round engirt with misery;
* For what's more miserable than discontent?—
* Ah, uncle Humphrey! in thy face I see
* The map of honour, truth, and loyalty;
* And yet, good Humphrey, is the hour to come,
* That e'er I prov'd thee false, or fear'd thy faith.
* What low'ring star now envies thy estate,
* That these great lords, and Margaret our queen,
* Do seek subversion of thy harmless life?
* Thou never didst them wrong, nor no man wrong:
* And as the butcher takes away the calf,
* And binds the wretch, and beats it when it strays,
* Bearing it to the bloody slaughter-house;
* Even so, remorseless, have they borne him hence.
* And as the dam runs lowing up and down,
* Looking the way her harmless young one went,
* And can do nought but wail her darling's loss;
* Even so myself bewails good Gloster's case,
* With sad unhelpful tears; and with dimm'd eyes
* Look after him, and cannot do him good;
* So mighty are his vowed enemies.
' His fortunes I will weep; and, 'twixt each groan,
' Say—*Who's a traitor,* Gloster *he is none.* [*Exit.*

* *Q. Mar.* Free lords,[9] cold snow melts with the sun's hot beams.
* Henry my lord is cold in great affairs,
* Too full of foolish pity: and Gloster's show
* Beguiles him, as the mournful crocodile
* With sorrow snares relenting passengers;
* Or as the snake, roll'd in a flowering bank,[1]
* With shining checker'd slough, doth sting a child,
* That, for the beauty, thinks it excellent.
* Believe me, lords, were none more wise than I,
* (And yet, herein, I judge mine own wit good,)
' This Gloster should be quickly rid the world,
' To rid us from the fear we have of him.
* *Car.* That he should die, is worthy policy;
* But yet we want a colour for his death:
* 'Tis meet, he be condemn'd by course of law.
* *Suf.* But, in my mind, that were no policy:
* The king will labour still to save his life,
* The commons haply rise to save his life;
* And yet we have but trivial argument,
* More than mistrust, that shows him worthy death.
* *York.* So that, by this, you would not have him die.
* *Suf.* Ah, York, no man alive so fain as I.
* *York.* 'Tis York that hath more reason for his death.—
* But, my lord cardinal, and you, my lord of Suffolk,—
* Say as you think, and speak it from your souls,—
* Wer't not all one, an empty eagle were set
* To guard the chicken from a hungry kite,

[9] Free *lords,* &c.] By this she means (as may be seen by the sequel) you, who are not bound up to such precise regards of religion as is the King; but are men of the world, and know how to live.

[1] —— in *a flowering bank,*] i. e. in the flowers growing on a bank.

* As place duke Humphrey for the king's protector?
Q. Mar. So the poor chicken should be sure of death.
' *Suf.* Madam, 'tis true: And wer't not madness then,
' To make the fox surveyor of the fold?
' Who being accus'd a crafty murderer,
' His guilt should be but idly posted over,
' Because his purpose is not executed.
' No; let him die, in that he is a fox,
' By nature prov'd an enemy to the flock,
' Before his chaps be stain'd with crimson blood;
' As Humphrey, prov'd by reasons, to my liege.[2]
' And do not stand on quillets, how to slay him:
' Be it by gins, by snares, by subtilty,
' Sleeping, or waking, 'tis no matter how,
' So he be dead; for that is good deceit
' Which mates him first, that first intends deceit.[3]
* *Q. Mar.* Thrice-noble Suffolk, 'tis resolutely spoke.
* *Suf.* Not resolute, except so much were done;
* For things are often spoke, and seldom meant:
* But, that my heart accordeth with my tongue,—

[2] *No; let him die, in that he is a fox,*
By nature prov'd an enemy to the flock,
Before his chaps be stain'd with crimson blood;
As Humphrey, prov'd by reasons, to my liege.] The meaning of the speaker is not hard to be discovered, but his expression is very much perplexed. He means that the fox may be lawfully killed, as being known to be by nature an enemy to sheep, even before he has actually killed them; so Humphrey may be properly destroyed, as being proved by arguments to be the King's enemy, before he has committed any actual crime.

Some may be tempted to read *treasons* for *reasons*, but the drift of the argument is to show that there may be *reason* to kill him before any *treason* has broken out. JOHNSON.

[3] ——*for that is good deceit*
Which mates *him first, that first intends deceit.*] *Mates* him, means *confounds* him; from *amatir* or *mater*, Fr.

* Seeing the deed is meritorious,
* And to preserve my sovereign from his foe,—
* Say but the word, and I will be his priest.[4]
* *Car.* But I would have him dead, my lord of Suffolk,
* Ere you can take due orders for a priest:
* Say, you consent, and censure well the deed,[5]
* And I'll provide his executioner,
* I tender so the safety of my liege.
* *Suf.* Here is my hand, the deed is worthy doing.
* *Q. Mar.* And so say I.
* *York.* And I: and now we three have spoke it,
* It skills not[6] greatly who impugns our doom.

Enter a Messenger.

' *Mess.* Great lords, from Ireland am I come amain,
' To signify—that rebels there are up,
' And put the Englishmen unto the sword:
* Send succours, lords, and stop the rage betime,
* Before the wound do grow incurable;
* For, being green, there is great hope of help.
* *Car.* A breach, that craves a quick expedient stop![7]
' What counsel give you in this weighty cause?
' *York.* That Somerset be sent as regent thither:
' 'Tis meet that lucky ruler be employ'd;
' Witness the fortune he hath had in France.
' *Som.* If York, with all his far-fet policy,
' Had been the regent there instead of me,
' He never would have staid in France so long.

[4] —— *I will be his priest.*] I will be the attendant on his last scene; I will be the last man whom he will see.

[5] —— *and censure well the deed,*] That is, approve the deed, judge the deed good.

[6] *It skills not*—] It is of no importance.

[7] —— expedient *stop!*] i. e. expeditious.

' *York.* No, not to lose it all, as thou hast done:
' I rather would have lost my life betimes,
* Than bring a burden of dishonour home,
* By staying there so long, till all were lost.
* Show me one scar charácter'd on thy skin:
* Men's flesh preserv'd so whole, do seldom win.
* *Q. Mar.* Nay then, this spark will prove a raging fire,
* If wind and fuel be brought to feed it with:—
* No more, good York;—sweet Somerset, be still;—
* Thy fortune, York, hadst thou been regent there,
* Might happily have prov'd far worse than his.
York. What, worse than naught? nay, then a shame take all!
' *Som.* And, in the number, thee, that wishest shame!
' *Car.* My lord of York, try what your fortune is.
' The uncivil Kernes of Ireland are in arms,
' And temper clay with blood of Englishmen:
' To Ireland will you lead a band of men,
' Collected choicely, from each county some,
' And try your hap against the Irishmen?
* *York.* I will, my lord, so please his majesty.
* *Suf.* Why, our authority is his consent;
* And, what we do establish, he confirms:
* Then, noble York, take thou this task in hand.
' *York.* I am content: Provide me soldiers, lords,
' Whiles I take order for mine own affairs.
' *Suf.* A charge, lord York, that I will see perform'd.
' But now return we to the false duke Humphrey.
' *Car.* No more of him; for I will deal with him,
' That, henceforth, he shall trouble us no more.
' And so break off; the day is almost spent:
' Lord Suffolk, you and I must talk of that event.
' *York.* My lord of Suffolk, within fourteen days,
' At Bristol I expect my soldiers;

‘ For there I'll ship them all for Ireland.
Suf. I'll see it truly done, my lord of York.
[*Exeunt all but* York.
‘ *York.* Now, York, or never, steel thy fearful thoughts,
‘ And change misdoubt to resolution:
* Be that thou hop'st to be; or what thou art
* Resign to death, it is not worth the enjoying:
* Let pale-fac'd fear keep with the mean-born man,
* And find no harbour in a royal heart.
* Faster than spring-time showers, comes thought on thought;
* And not a thought, but thinks on dignity.
* My brain, more busy than the labouring spider,
* Weaves tedious snares to trap mine enemies.
* Well, nobles, well, 'tis politickly done,
* To send me packing with an host of men:
* I fear me, you but warm the starved snake,
* Who, cherish'd in your breasts, will sting your hearts.
'Twas men I lack'd, and you will give them me:
‘ I take it kindly; yet, be well assur'd
‘ You put sharp weapons in a madman's hands.
‘ Whiles I in Ireland nourish a mighty band,
* I will stir up in England some black storm,
* Shall blow ten thousand souls to heaven, or hell:
* And this fell tempest shall not cease to rage
* Until the golden circuit on my head,
* Like to the glorious sun's transparent beams,
* Do calm the fury of this mad-bred flaw.[8]
‘ And, for a minister of my intent,
‘ I have seduc'd a head-strong Kentishman,
‘ John Cade of Ashford,
‘ To make commotion, as full well he can,
‘ Under the title of John Mortimer.

[8] —— *mad-bred* flaw.] *Flaw* is a sudden violent gust of wind.

* In Ireland have I seen this stubborn Cade
* Oppose himself against a troop of Kernes;[9]
* And fought so long, till that his thighs with darts
* Were almost like a sharp-quill'd porcupine:
* And, in the end being rescu'd, I have seen him
* Caper upright like a wild Morisco,[1]
* Shaking the bloody darts, as he his bells.
* Full often, like a shag-hair'd crafty Kerne,
* Hath he conversed with the enemy;
* And undiscover'd come to me again,
* And given me notice of their villainies.
* This devil here shall be my substitute;
* For that John Mortimer, which now is dead,
* In face, in gait, in speech, he doth resemble:
' By this I shall perceive the commons' mind,
' How they affect the house and claim of York.
' Say, he be taken, rack'd, and tortured;
' I know, no pain, they can inflict upon him,
' Will make him say—I mov'd him to those arms.
' Say, that he thrive, (as 'tis great like he will,)
' Why, then from Ireland come I with my strength,
' And reap the harvest which that rascal sow'd:
' For, Humphrey being dead, as he shall be,
' And Henry put apart, the next for me. [*Exit.*

SCENE II.

Bury. *A Room in the Palace.*

Enter certain Murderers, *hastily.*

1 *Mur.* Run to my lord of Suffolk; let him know,
* We have despatch'd the duke, as he commanded.

[9] —— *a troop of* Kernes;] *Kernes* were light-armed Irish foot-soldiers.

[1] —— *a wild* Morisco,] A Moor in a military dance, now called Morris, that is, a Moorish dance.

* 2 *Mur.* O, that it were to do!—What have we done?
* Didst ever hear a man so penitent?

Enter SUFFOLK.

' 1 *Mur.* Here comes my lord.
' *Suf.* Now, sirs, have you
' Despatch'd this thing?
' 1 *Mur.* Ay, my good lord, he's dead.
' *Suf.* Why, that's well said. Go, get you to my house;
' I will reward you for this venturous deed.
' The king and all the peers are here at hand:—
' Have you laid fair the bed? are all things well,
' According as I gave directions?
' 1 *Mur.* 'Tis, my good lord.
' *Suf.* Away, be gone! [*Exeunt* Murderers.

Enter King HENRY, *Queen* MARGARET, *Cardinal* BEAUFORT, SOMERSET, *Lords, and Others.*

' *K. Hen.* Go, call our uncle to our presence straight:
' Say, we intend to try his grace to-day,
' If he be guilty, as 'tis published.
' *Suf.* I'll call him presently, my noble lord. [*Exit.*
' *K. Hen.* Lords, take your places;—And, I pray you all,
' Proceed no straiter 'gainst our uncle Gloster,
' Than from true evidence, of good esteem,
' He be approv'd in practice culpable.
* *Q. Mar.* God forbid any malice should prevail,
* That faultless may condemn a nobleman!
* Pray God, he may acquit him of suspicion!
* *K. Hen.* I thank thee, Margaret; these words content me much.—

Re-enter SUFFOLK.

' How now? why look'st thou pale? why tremblest thou?
' Where is our uncle? what is the matter, Suffolk?
Suf. Dead in his bed, my lord; Gloster is dead.
* *Q. Mar.* Marry, God forefend!
* *Car.* God's secret judgment:—I did dream to-night,
* The duke was dumb, and could not speak a word.
[*The King swoons.*
' *Q. Mar.* How fares my lord?—Help, lords! the king is dead.
* *Som.* Rear up his body; wring him by the nose.
* *Q. Mar.* Run, go, help, help!—O, Henry, ope thine eyes!
* *Suf.* He doth revive again;—Madam, be patient.
* *K. Hen.* O heavenly God!
* *Q. Mar.* How fares my gracious lord?
Suf. Comfort, my sovereign! gracious Henry, comfort!
K. Hen. What, doth my lord of Suffolk comfort me?
Came he right now[2] to sing a raven's note,
* Whose dismal tune bereft my vital powers;
And thinks he, that the chirping of a wren,
' By crying comfort from a hollow breast,
' Can chase away the first-conceived sound?
* Hide not thy poison with such sugar'd words.
* Lay not thy hands on me; forbear, I say;
* Their touch affrights me, as a serpent's sting.
Thou baleful messenger, out of my sight!
' Upon thy eye-balls murderous tyranny
' Sits in grim majesty, to fright the world.
' Look not upon me, for thine eyes are wounding:—

[2] —— *right now*—] Just now, even now.

' Yet do not go away;—Come, basilisk,
' And kill the innocent gazer with thy sight:
* For in the shade of death I shall find joy;
* In life, but double death, now Gloster's dead.
Q. Mar. Why do you rate my lord of Suffolk thus?
* Although the duke was enemy to him,
* Yet he, most christian like, laments his death:
* And for myself,—foe as he was to me,
* Might liquid tears, or heart-offending groans,
* Or blood-consuming sighs recall his life,
* I would be blind with weeping, sick with groans,
* Look pale as primrose, with blood-drinking sighs,
* And all to have the noble duke alive.
' What know I how the world may deem of me?
' For it is known, we were but hollow friends;
' It may be judg'd, I made the duke away:
* So shall my name with slander's tongue be wounded,
* And princes' courts be fill'd with my reproach.
* This get I by his death: Ah me, unhappy!
* To be a queen, and crown'd with infamy!
' *K. Hen.* Ah, woe is me for Gloster, wretched man!
Q. Mar. Be woe for me,[3] more wretched than he is.
What, dost thou turn away, and hide thy face?
I am no loathsome leper, look on me.
* What, art thou, like the adder, waxen deaf?
* Be poisonous too, and kill thy forlorn queen.
* Is all thy comfort shut in Gloster's tomb?
* Why, then dame Margaret was ne'er thy joy:
* Erect his statue then, and worship it,
* And make my image but an alehouse sign.
Was I, for this, nigh wreck'd upon the sea;
' And twice by aukward wind from England's bank

[3] *Be woe for me,*] That is, Let not woe be to thee for Gloster, but for me.

‘ Drove back again unto my native clime?
What boded this, but well-forewarning wind
Did seem to say,—Seek not a scorpion's nest,
* Nor set no footing on this unkind shore?
* What did I then, but curs'd the gentle gusts,
* And he that loos'd them from their brazen caves;
* And bid them blow towards England's blessed shore,
* Or turn our stern upon a dreadful rock?
* Yet Æolus would not be a murderer,
* But left that hateful office unto thee:
* The pretty vaulting sea refus'd to drown me;
* Knowing, that thou would'st have me drown'd on shore,
* With tears as salt as sea through thy unkindness:
* The splitting rocks cow'rd in the sinking sands,[4]
* And would not dash me with their ragged sides;
* Because thy flinty heart, more hard than they,
* Might in thy palace perish Margaret.[5]
* As far as I could ken thy chalky cliffs,
* When from the shore the tempest beat us back,
* I stood upon the hatches in the storm:
* And when the dusky sky began to rob
* My earnest-gaping sight of thy land's view,
* I took a costly jewel from my neck,—
* A heart it was, bound in with diamonds,—
* And threw it towards thy land;—the sea receiv'd it;
* And so, I wish'd, thy body might my heart:
* And even with this, I lost fair England's view,
* And bid mine eyes be packing with my heart;
* And call'd them blind and dusky spectacles,
* For losing ken of Albion's wished coast.
* How often have I tempted Suffolk's tongue

[4] *The splitting rocks,* &c.] The sense seems to be this.—The rocks hid themselves in the sands, which sunk to receive them into their bosom. STEEVENS.

[5] *Might in thy palace* perish *Margaret.*] The verb *perish* is here used actively.

* (The agent of thy foul inconstancy,)
* To sit and witch me, as Ascanius did,
* When he to madding Dido, would unfold
* His father's acts, commenc'd in burning Troy?[6]
* Am I not witch'd like her? or thou not false like him?
* Ah me, I can no more! Die, Margaret!
* For Henry weeps, that thou dost live so long.

Noise within. Enter WARWICK *and* SALISBURY. *The Commons press to the door.*

'*War.* It is reported, mighty sovereign,
'That good duke Humphrey traitorously is murder'd
'By Suffolk and the cardinal Beaufort's means,
'The commons, like an angry hive of bees,
'That want their leader, scatter up and down,
'And care not who they sting in his revenge.
'Myself have calm'd their spleenful mutiny,
'Until they hear the order of his death.
K. Hen. That he is dead, good Warwick, 'tis too true;
But how he died, God knows, not Henry:
'Enter his chamber, view his breathless corpse,
And comment then upon his sudden death.
War. That I shall do, my liege:—Stay, Salisbury,
With the rude multitude, till I return.
[WARWICK *goes into an inner Room, and* SALISBURY *retires.*
* *K. Hen.* O thou that judgest all things, stay my thoughts;

[6] *His father's acts commenc'd in burning Troy?*] The poet here is unquestionably alluding to Virgil (*Æneid I.*) but he strangely blends facts with fiction. In the first place, it was Cupid in the semblance of Ascanius, who sat in Dido's lap, and was fondled by her. But then it was not Cupid who related to her the process of Troy's destruction; but it was Æneas himself who related this history.

* My thoughts, that labour to persuade my soul,
* Some violent hands were laid on Humphrey's life!
* If my suspect be false, forgive me, God;
* For judgment only doth belong to thee!
* Fain would I go to chafe his paly lips
* With twenty thousand kisses, and to drain
* Upon his face an ocean of salt tears;
* To tell my love unto his dumb deaf trunk,
* And with my fingers feel his hand unfeeling:
* But all in vain are these mean obsequies;
* And, to survey his dead and earthy image,
* What were it but to make my sorrow greater?

The folding Doors of an inner Chamber are thrown open, and GLOSTER *is discovered dead in his bed:* WARWICK *and others standing by it.*

* *War.* Come hither, gracious sovereign, view this body.
* *K. Hen.* That is to see how deep my grave is made:
* For, with his soul, fled all my worldly solace;
* For seeing him, I see my life in death.[7]
' *War.* As surely as my soul intends to live
' With that dread King that took our state upon him
' To free us from his father's wrathful curse,
' I do believe that violent hands were laid
' Upon the life of this thrice-famed duke.
Suf. A dreadful oath, sworn with a solemn tongue!
' What instance gives lord Warwick for his vow?
' *War.* See, how the blood is settled in his face!
Oft have I seen a timely-parted ghost,[8]

[7] *For seeing him, I see my life in death.*] i. e. *I see my life destroyed or endangered by his death.*

[8] *Oft have I seen a* timely-*parted* ghost, *&c.*] All that is true of the body of a dead man is here said by Warwick of the soul. I would read:

Oft have I seen a timely-parted corse.

But of two common words, how or why was one changed for

'Of ashy semblance, meager, pale, and bloodless,
'Being all descended to the labouring heart;
'Who, in the conflict that it holds with death,
'Attracts the same for aidance 'gainst the enemy;
'Which with the heart there cools and ne'er returneth
'To blush and beautify the cheek again.
'But, see, his face is black, and full of blood;
'His eye-balls further out than when he liv'd,
'Staring full ghastly like a strangled man:
'His hair uprear'd, his nostrils stretch'd with struggling;
'His hands abroad display'd,[9] as one that grasp'd
'And tugg'd for life, and was by strength subdu'd.
'Look on the sheets, his hair, you see, is sticking;
'His well-proportioned beard made rough and rugged,
'Like to the summer's corn by tempest lodg'd.
'It cannot be, but he was murder'd here;
'The least of all these signs were probable.
'*Suf.* Why, Warwick, who should do the duke to death?
'Myself, and Beaufort, had him in protection;
'And we, I hope, sir, are no murderers.
'*War.* But both of you were vow'd duke Humphrey's foes;
'And you, forsooth, had the good duke to keep:
'Tis like, you would not feast him like a friend;

the other? I believe the transcriber thought that the epithet *timely-parted* could not be used of the body, but that, as in *Hamlet* there is mention of *peace-parted souls*, so here *timely-parted* must have the same substantive. He removed one imaginary difficulty, and made many real. If the soul is parted from the body, the body is likewise parted from the soul.

I cannot but stop a moment to observe, that this horrible description is scarcely the work of any pen but Shakspeare's.

JOHNSON.

[9] *His hands* abroad *display'd,*] i. e. the fingers being widely distended.

'And 'tis well seen he found an enemy.
'*Q. Mar.* Then you, belike, suspect these noblemen
'As guilty of duke Humphrey's timeless death.
War. Who finds the heifer dead, and bleeding fresh,
And sees fast by a butcher with an axe,
But will suspect, 'twas he that made the slaughter?
Who finds the partridge in the puttock's nest,
But may imagine how the bird was dead,
Although the kite soar with unbloodied beak?
Even so suspicious is this tragedy.
'*Q. Mar.* Are you the butcher, Suffolk; where's your knife?
Is Beaufort term'd a kite? where are his talons?
Suf. I wear no knife, to slaughter sleeping men;
But here's a vengeful sword, rusted with ease,
That shall be scoured in his rancorous heart,
That slanders me with murder's crimson badge:—
Say, if thou dar'st, proud lord of Warwickshire,
That I am faulty in duke Humphrey's death.
[*Exeunt* Cardinal, Som. *and Others.*
War. What dares not Warwick, if false Suffolk dare him?
Q. Mar. He dares not calm his contumelious spirit,
Nor cease to be an arrogant controller,
Though Suffolk dare him twenty thousand times.
War. Madam, be still; with reverence may I say;
For every word, you speak in his behalf,
Is slander to your royal dignity.
'*Suf.* Blunt-witted lord, ignoble in demeanour!
If ever lady wrong'd her lord so much,
Thy mother took into her blameful bed
Some stern untutor'd churl, and noble stock
Was graft with crab-tree slip; whose fruit thou art,
And never of the Nevils' noble race.
War. But that the guilt of murder bucklers thee,

And I should rob the deathsman of his fee,
Quitting thee thereby of ten thousand shames,
And that my sovereign's presence makes me mild,
I would, false murderous coward, on thy knee
Make thee beg pardon for thy passed speech,
And say—It was thy mother that thou meant'st,
That thou thyself was born in bastardy:
And, after all this fearful homage done,
Give thee thy hire, and send thy soul to hell,
Pernicious bloodsucker of sleeping men!

Suf. Thou shalt be waking, while I shed thy blood,
If from this presence thou dar'st go with me.

War. Away even now, or I will drag thee hence:
* Unworthy though thou art, I'll cope with thee,
* And do some service to duke Humphrey's ghost.

[*Exeunt* SUFFOLK *and* WARWICK

* *K. Hen.* What stronger breast-plate than a heart untainted?
* Thrice is he arm'd, that hath his quarrel just;
* And he but naked, though lock'd up in steel,
* Whose conscience with injustice is corrupted.

[*A Noise within.*

Q. Mar. What noise is this?

Re-enter SUFFOLK *and* WARWICK, *with their Weapons drawn.*

K. Hen. Why, how now, lords? your wrathful weapons drawn
' Here in our presence? dare you be so bold?—
' Why, what tumultuous clamour have we here?

Suf. The traitorous Warwick, with the men of Bury,
Set all upon me, mighty sovereign.

Noise of a Croud within. *Re-enter* SALISBURY.

* *Sal.* Sirs, stand apart; the king shall know your mind.— [*Speaking to those within.*
Dread lord, the commons send you word by me,
Unless false Suffolk straight be done to death,
Or banished fair England's territories,
' They will by violence tear him from your palace,
* And torture him with grievous ling'ring death.
They say, by him the good duke Humphrey died;
' They say, in him they fear your highness' death;
' And mere instinct of love, and loyalty,—
' Free from a stubborn opposite intent,
' As being thought to contradict your liking,—
' Makes them thus forward in his banishment.
* They say, in care of your most royal person,
* That, if your highness should intend to sleep,
* And charge—that no man should disturb your rest,
* In pain of your dislike, or pain of death;
* Yet notwithstanding such a strait edict,
* Were there a serpent seen, with forked tongue,
* That slily glided towards your majesty,
* It were but necessary you were wak'd;
* Lest, being suffer'd in that harmful slumber,
* The mortal worm [9] might make the sleep eternal:
* And therefore do they cry, though you forbid,
* That they will guard you, whe'r you will, or no,
* From such fell serpents as false Suffolk is;
* With whose envenomed and fatal sting,
* Your loving uncle, twenty times his worth,
* They say, is shamefully bereft of life.
Commons. [*Within.*] An answer from my king, my lord of Salisbury.
Suf. 'Tis like, the commons, rude unpolish'd hinds,
Could send such message to their sovereign:

[9] *The* mortal worm —] i. e. the *fatal*, the *deadly* worm.

But you, my lord, were glad to be employ'd,
To show how quaint an orator[1] you are:
But all the honour Salisbury hath won,
Is—that he was the lord ambassador,
Sent from a sort[2] of tinkers to the king.

Commons. [*Within.*] An answer from the king, or we'll all break in.

' *K. Hen.* Go, Salisbury, and tell them all from me,
' I thank them for their tender loving care:
' And had I not been 'cited so by them,
' Yet did I purpose as they do entreat;
' For sure, my thoughts do hourly prophesy
' Mischance unto my state by Suffolk's means.
' And therefore,—by His majesty I swear,
' Whose far unworthy deputy I am,—
' He shall not breathe infection in this air[3]
' But three days longer, on the pain of death.

[*Exit* SALISBURY.

' *Q. Mar.* O Henry, let me plead for gentle Suffolk!

' *K. Hen.* Ungentle queen, to call him gentle Suffolk.
' No more, I say; if thou dost plead for him,
' Thou wilt but add increase unto my wrath.
' Had I but said, I would have kept my word;
' But, when I swear, it is irrevocable:—
* If, after three days' space, thou here be'st found
* On any ground that I am ruler of,
* The world shall not be ransome for thy life.—
' Come, Warwick, come good Warwick, go with me;
' I have great matters to impart to thee.

[*Exeunt K.* HENRY, WARWICK, *Lords, &c.*

' *Q. Mar.* Mischance, and sorrow, go along with you!

[1] —— *how* quaint *an orator* —] *Quaint* for *dextrous, artificial.*
[2] —— *a sort* —] Is a *company.*
[3] *He shall not breathe infection in this air* —] That is, he shall not contaminate this air with his infected breath.

‘ Heart's discontent, and sour affliction,
‘ Be playfellows to keep you company!
‘ There's two of you; the devil make a third!
‘ And threefold vengeance tend upon your steps!
* *Suf.* Cease, gentle queen, these execrations,
* And let thy Suffolk take his heavy leave.
‘ *Q. Mar.* Fye, coward woman, and soft-hearted wretch!
‘ Hast thou not spirit to curse thine enemies?
Suf. A plague upon them! wherefore should I curse them?
Would curses kill, as doth the mandrake's groan,[4]
‘ I would invent as bitter-searching terms,
* As curst, as harsh, and horrible to hear,
Deliver'd strongly through my fixed teeth,
‘ With full as many signs of deadly hate,
As lean-fac'd Envy in her loathsome cave:
My tongue should stumble in mine earnest words:
Mine eyes should sparkle like the beaten flint;
My hair be fix'd on end, as one distract;
Ay, every joint should seem to curse and ban:
And even now my burden'd heart would break,
Should I not curse them. Poison be their drink!
Gall, worse than gall, the daintiest that they taste!
Their sweetest shade, a grove of cypress trees!
Their chiefest prospect, murdering basilisks!
Their softest touch, as smart as lizards' stings![5]
Their musick, frightful as the serpent's hiss;

[4] *Would curses kill, as doth the mandrake's groan,*] The fabulous accounts of the plant called a *mandrake* give it an inferior degree of animal life, and relate, that when it is torn from the ground it groans, and that this groan being certainly fatal to him that is offering such unwelcome violence, the practice of those who gather mandrakes is to tie one end of a string to the plant, and the other to a dog, upon whom the fatal groan discharges its malignity.

[5] —— *murdering* basilisks!——lizards' *stings!*] It has been said of the *basilisk* that it has the power of destroying by a single glance of the eye. A *lizard* has no sting, but is quite inoffensive.

And boding screech-owls make the concert full!
All the foul terrors in dark-seated hell—
Q. Mar. Enough, sweet Suffolk; thou torment'st thyself;
* And these dread curses—like the sun 'gainst glass,
* Or like an overcharged gun,—recoil,
* And turn the force of them upon thyself.
Suf. You bade me ban, and will you bid me leave?[6]
Now, by the ground that I am banish'd from,
Well could I curse away a winter's night,
Though standing naked on a mountain top,
Where biting cold would never let grass grow,
And think it but a minute spent in sport.
* *Q. Mar.* O, let me entreat thee, cease! Give me thy hand,
* That I may dew it with my mournful tears;
* Nor let the rain of heaven wet this place,
* To wash away my woeful monuments.
' O, could this kiss be printed in thy hand;
[*Kisses his hand.*
* That thou might'st think upon these by the seal,
' Through whom a thousand sighs are breath'd for thee![7]
' So, get thee gone, that I may know my grief;
' 'Tis but surmis'd whilst thou art standing by,
* As one that surfeits thinking on a want.
' I will repeal thee, or, be well assur'd,
' Adventure to be banished myself:

[6] *You bade me ban, and will you bid me leave?*] This inconsistency is very common in real life. Those who are vexed to impatience, are angry to see others less disturbed than themselves, but when others begin to rave, they immediately see in them what they could not find in themselves, the deformity and folly of useless rage. JOHNSON.

[7] *That thou might'st think upon these by the seal,*
Through whom a thousand sighs, &c.] That by the impression of my kiss for ever remaining on thy hand thou mightest think on those lips through which a thousand sighs will be breathed for thee.

* And banished I am, if but from thee.
* Go, speak not to me; even now be gone.—
* O, go not yet!—Even thus two friends condemn'd
* Embrace, and kiss, and take ten thousand leaves,
* Loather a hundred times to part than die.
* Yet now farewell; and farewell life with thee!
Suf. Thus is poor Suffolk ten times banished,
Once by the king, and three times thrice by thee.
* 'Tis not the land I care for, wert thou hence;
* A wilderness is populous enough,
* So Suffolk had thy heavenly company:
* For where thou art, there is the world itself,
* With every several pleasure in the world;
* And where thou art not, desolation.
* I can no more:—Live thou to joy thy life;
* Myself no joy in nought, but that thou liv'st.

Enter VAUX.

' *Q. Mar.* Whither goes Vaux so fast? what news, I pr'ythee?
' *Vaux.* To signify unto his majesty,
That cardinal Beaufort is at point of death:
' For suddenly a grievous sickness took him,
' That makes him gasp, and stare, and catch the air,
' Blaspheming God, and cursing men on earth.
' Sometime, he talks as if duke Humphrey's ghost
' Were by his side; sometime, he calls the king,
And whispers to his pillow, as to him,
* The secrets of his overcharged soul:
' And I am sent to tell his majesty,
' That even now he cries aloud for him.
' *Q. Mar.* Go, tell this heavy message to the king.
[*Exit* VAUX.
' Ah me! what is this world? what news are these?

'But wherefore grieve I at an hour's poor loss,
'Omitting Suffolk's exile, my soul's treasure?
'Why only, Suffolk, mourn I not for thee,
'And with the southern clouds contend in tears;
'Theirs for the earth's increase, mine for my sorrows?
'Now, get thee hence: The king, thou know'st, is coming?
'If thou be found by me, thou art but dead.
'*Suf.* If I depart from thee, I cannot live:
'And in thy sight to die, what were it else,
But like a pleasant slumber in thy lap?
Here could I breathe my soul into the air,
'As mild and gentle as the cradle-babe,
Dying with mother's dug between its lips:
Where,[8] from thy sight, I should be raging mad,
'And cry out for thee to close up mine eyes,
'To have thee with thy lips to stop my mouth;
'So should'st thou either turn my flying soul,
Or I should breathe it so into thy body,
And then it liv'd in sweet Elysium.
To die by thee, were but to die in jest;
From thee to die, were torture more than death:
O, let me stay, befall what may befall.
'*Q. Mar.* Away! though parting be a fretful corrosive,
'It is applied to a deathful wound.
'To France, sweet Suffolk: Let me hear from thee;
'For wheresoe'er thou art in this world's globe,
I'll have an Iris[9] that shall find thee out.
Suf. I go.
Q. Mar. And take my heart with thee.
Suf. A jewel, lock'd into the woeful'st cask
That ever did contain a thing of worth.

[8] *Where,*] In the preambles of almost all the statutes made during the first twenty years of Queen Elizabeth's reign, the word *where* is employed instead of *whereas*. It is so used here.

[9] *I'll have an Iris* —] Iris was the messenger of Juno.

Even as a splitted bark, so sunder we;
This way fall I to death.
Q. Mar. This way for me.
[*Exeunt, severally.*

SCENE III.

London. *Cardinal* Beaufort's *Bed-Chamber.*

Enter King HENRY, SALISBURY, WARWICK, *and Others. The* Cardinal *in bed*; *Attendants with him.*

* *K. Hen.* How fares my lord? speak, Beaufort, to thy sovereign.
' *Car.* If thou be'st death, I'll give thee England's treasure,
' Enough to purchase such another island,
' So thou wilt let me live, and feel no pain.
* *K. Hen.* Ah, what a sign it is of evil life,
* When death's approach is seen so terrible!
* *War.* Beaufort, it is thy sovereign speaks to thee.
* *Car.* Bring me unto my trial when you will.
' Died he not in his bed? where should he die?
Can I make men live, whe'r they will or no?—
* O! torture me no more, I will confess.—
' Alive again? then show me where he is;
' I'll give a thousand pound to look upon him.—
* He hath no eyes, the dust hath blinded them.—
' Comb down his hair; look! look! it stands upright,
' Like lime-twigs set to catch my winged soul!—
' Give me some drink; and bid the apothecary
' Bring the strong poison that I bought of him.
* *K. Hen.* O thou eternal Mover of the heavens,
* Look with a gentle eye upon this wretch!
* O, beat away the busy meddling fiend,
* That lays strong siege unto this wretch's soul,
* And from his bosom purge this black despair!

' *War.* See, how the pangs of death do make
him grin.
* *Sal.* Disturb him not, let him pass peaceably.
* *K. Hen.* Peace to his soul, if God's good plea-
sure be!
' Lord cardinal, if thou think'st on heaven's bliss,
' Hold up thy hand, make signal of thy hope.—
' He dies, and makes no sign; O God, forgive him!
' *War.* So bad a death argues a monstrous life.
' *K. Hen.* Forbear to judge, for we are sinners
all.—
' Close up his eyes, and draw the curtain close;
' And let us all to meditation. [*Exeunt.*[1]

ACT IV.

SCENE I. Kent. *The Sea-shore near* Dover.

Firing heard at Sea. Then enter from a Boat, a Captain, *a* Master, *a* Master's-Mate, WALTER WHITMORE, *and Others; with them* SUFFOLK, *and other Gentlemen, prisoners.*

* *Cap.* The gaudy, blabbing, and remorseful[2] day
* Is crept into the bosom of the sea;
* And now loud-howling wolves arouse the jades

[1] *Exeunt.*] This is one of the scenes which have been applauded by the criticks, and which will continue to be admired when prejudices shall cease, and bigotry give way to impartial examination. These are beauties that rise out of nature and of truth; the superficial reader cannot miss them, the profound can image nothing beyond them. JOHNSON.

[2] *The gaudy,* blabbing, *and* remorseful *day*—] The epithet *blabbing* applied to the day by a man about to commit murder, is exquisitely beautiful. Guilt is afraid of light, considers darkness as a natural shelter, and makes night the confidante of those actions which cannot be trusted to the *tell-tale day.* JOHNSON.

* That drag the tragick melancholy night;
* Who with their drowsy, slow, and flagging wings
* Clip dead men's graves,[3] and from their misty jaws
* Breathe foul contagious darkness in the air.
* Therefore, bring forth the soldiers of our prize;
* For, whilst our pinnace anchors in the Downs,
* Here shall they make their ransome on the sand,
* Or with their blood stain this discolour'd shore.—
' Master, this prisoner freely give I thee;—
' And thou that art his mate, make boot of this;—
' The other, [*Pointing to* SUFFOLK,] Walter Whitmore, is thy share.

' 1 *Gent.* What is my ransome, master? let me know.

' *Mast.* A thousand crowns, or else lay down your head.

' *Mate.* And so much shall you give, or off goes yours.

* *Cap.* What, think you much to pay two thousand crowns,
* And bear the name and port of gentlemen?—
* Cut both the villains' throats;—for die you shall;
* The lives of those which we have lost in fight,
* Cannot be counterpois'd with such a petty sum.

* 1 *Gent.* I'll give it, sir; and therefore spare my life.

* 2 *Gent.* And so will I, and write home for it straight.

' *Whit.* I lost mine eye in laying the prize aboard,
' And therefore, to revenge it, shalt thou die;
[*To* SUF.
' And so should these, if I might have my will.

[3] ——— *the jades*
That drag the tragick melancholy night;
Who with their drowsy, slow, and flagging wings
Clip dead men's graves,] The wings of the jades that drag night appears an unnatural image, till it is remembered that the chariot of the night is supposed, by Shakspeare, to be drawn by dragons.

* *Cap.* Be not so rash; take ransome, let him live.
' *Suf.* Look on my George, I am a gentleman;
' Rate me at what thou wilt, thou shalt be paid.
' *Whit.* And so am I; my name is—Walter Whitmore.
' How now? why start'st thou? what, doth death affright?
' *Suf.* Thy name affrights me, in whose sound is death.
' A cunning man did calculate my birth,
' And told me—that by *Water* I should die:
' Yet let not this make thee be bloody minded;
' Thy name is—*Gualtier*, being rightly sounded.
' Whit. *Gualtier*, or *Walter*, which it is, I care not;
' Ne'er yet did base dishonour blur our name,
' But with our sword we wip'd away the blot;
' Therefore, when merchant-like I sell revenge,
' Broke be my sword, my arms torn and defac'd,
' And I proclaim'd a coward through the world!
[*Lays hold on* SUFFOLK.
' *Suf.* Stay, Whitmore; for thy prisoner is a prince,
The duke of Suffolk, William de la Pole.
' *Whit.* The duke of Suffolk, muffled up in rags!
Suf. Ay, but these rags are no part of the duke;
Jove sometime went disguis'd, And why not I?
Cap. But Jove was never slain, as thou shalt be.
' *Suf.* Obscure and lowly swain, king Henry's blood,
The honourable blood of Lancaster,
' Must not be shed by such a jaded groom.'
Hast thou not kiss'd thy hand, and held my stirrup?

' —— *a* jaded *groom.*] *Jaded* groom, may mean a groom whom all men treat with contempt; as worthless as the most paltry kind of horse; or a groom who has hitherto been treated with no greater ceremony than a horse.

‘ Bare-headed plodded by my foot-cloth mule,
‘ And thought thee happy when I shook my head?
‘ How often hast thou waited at my cup,
‘ Fed from my trencher, kneel'd down at the board,
‘ When I have feasted with queen Margaret?
* Remember it, and let it make thee crest-fall'n;
* Ay, and allay this thy abortive pride:[5]
* How in our voiding lobby hast thou stood,
* And duly waited for my coming forth?
‘ This hand of mine hath writ in thy behalf,
‘ And therefore shall it charm thy riotous tongue.
* *Whit.* Speak, captain, shall I stab the forlorn swain?
* *Cap.* First let my words stab him, as he hath me.
* *Suf.* Base slave! thy words are blunt, and so art thou.
‘ *Cap.* Convey him hence, and on our long-boat's side
‘ Strike off his head.
Suf. Thou dar'st not for thy own.
Cap. Yes, Poole.
Suf. Poole?
Cap. Poole? Sir Poole? lord?
‘ Ay, kennel, puddle, sink; whose filth and dirt
‘ Troubles the silver spring where England drinks.
‘ Now will I dam up this thy yawning mouth,
‘ For swallowing the treasure of the realm:
‘ Thy lips, that kiss'd the queen, shall sweep the ground;
‘ And thou, that smil'dst at good duke Humphrey's death,
‘ Against the senseless winds shalt grin in vain,
* Who, in contempt, shall hiss at thee again:

[5] —— *abortive pride:*] Pride that has had birth too soon, pride issuing before its time.

* And wedded be thou to the hags of hell,
* For daring to affy[6] a mighty lord
* Unto the daughter of a worthless king,
* Having neither subject, wealth, nor diadem.
* By devilish policy art thou grown great,
* And, like ambitious Sylla, overgorg'd
* With gobbets of thy mother's bleeding heart.
* By thee, Anjou and Maine were sold to France:
* The false revolting Normans, thorough thee,
* Disdain to call us lord; and Picardy
* Hath slain their governors, surpriz'd our forts,
* And sent the ragged soldiers wounded home.
* The princely Warwick, and the Nevils all,—
* Whose dreadful swords were never drawn in vain,—
* As hating thee, are rising up in arms:
* And now the house of York—thrust from the crown,
* By shameful murder of a guiltless king,
* And lofty proud encroaching tyranny,—
* Burns with revenging fire; whose hopeful colours
* Advance our half-fac'd sun, striving to shine,
* Under the which is writ—*Invitis nubibus.*
* The commons here in Kent are up in arms:
* And, to conclude, reproach, and beggary,
* Is crept into the palace of our king,
* And all by thee:—Away! convey him hence.
* *Suf.* O that I were a god, to shoot forth thunder
* Upon these paltry, servile, abject drudges!
* Small things make base men proud: 'this villain here,
'Being captain of a pinnace,[7] threatens more
'Than Bargulus the strong Illyrian pirate.
'Drones suck not eagles' blood, but rob bee-hives.

[6] —— *to* affy —] To *affy* is to betroth in marriage.

[7] *Being captain of a* pinnace,] A *pinnace* did not anciently signify, as at present, a man of war's boat, but a ship of small burthen.

'It is impossible, that I should die
'By such a lowly vassal as thyself.
'Thy words move rage, and not remorse, in me:
'I go of message from the queen to France;
'I charge thee, waft me safely cross the channel.
'*Cap.* Walter,——
'*Whit.* Come, Suffolk, I must waft thee to thy death.
* Suf. *Gelidus timor occupat artus:*—'tis thee I fear.
'*Whit.* Thou shalt have cause to fear, before I leave thee.
'What, are ye daunted now? now will ye stoop?
'1 *Gent.* My gracious lord, entreat him, speak him fair.
'*Suf.* Suffolk's imperial tongue is stern and rough,
'Us'd to command, untaught to plead for favour.
'Far be it, we should honour such as these
'With humble suit: no, rather let my head
'Stoop to the block, than these knees bow to any,
'Save to the God of heaven, and to my king;
'And sooner dance upon a bloody pole,
'Than stand uncover'd to the vulgar groom.
* True nobility is exempt from fear:—
'More can I bear, than you dare execute,
'*Cap.* Hale him away, and let him talk no more.
'*Suf.* Come, soldiers, show what cruelty ye can,
'That this my death may never be forgot!—
'Great men oft die by vile bezonians:[8]
'A Roman sworder[9] and banditto slave,
'Murder'd sweet Tully; Brutus' bastard hand
'Stabb'd Julius Cæsar; savage islanders,
'Pompey the great:[1] and Suffolk dies by pirates.
[*Exit* SUF. *with* WHIT. *and Others.*

[8] ——*bezonians:*] *Bisognoso,* is a mean low man.
[9] *A Roman sworder,* &c.] i. e. Herennius a centurion, and Popilius Laenas, tribune of the soldiers.

Cap. And as for these whose ransome we have set,
It is our pleasure, one of them depart:—
Therefore come you with us, and let him go.
[*Exeunt all but the first* Gentleman.

Re-enter WHITMORE, *with* SUFFOLK'S *Body.*

'*Whit.* There let his head and lifeless body lie,
'Until the queen his mistress bury it. [*Exit.*
'1 *Gent.* O barbarous and bloody spectacle!
'His body will I bear unto the king:
'If he revenge it not, yet will his friends;
'So will the queen, that living held him dear.
[*Exit, with the Body.*

SCENE II.

Blackheath.

Enter GEORGE BEVIS *and* JOHN HOLLAND.

'*Geo.* Come, and get thee a sword, though made
'of a lath; they have been up these two days.
'*John.* They have the more need to sleep now then.
'*Geo.* I tell thee, Jack Cade the clothier means
'to dress the commonwealth, and turn it, and set
'a new nap upon it.
John. So he had need, for 'tis threadbare. Well, I say, it was never merry world in England, since gentlemen came up.[2]
* *Geo.* O miserable age! Virtue is not regarded
* in handycrafts-men.

[1] *Pompey the great:*] The poet seems to have confounded the story of Pompey with some other.
[2] —— *since gentlemen* came up.] Thus we familiarly say—a fashion *comes up.*

'*John.* The nobility think scorn to go in leather 'aprons.

* *Geo.* Nay more, the king's council are no good * workmen.

* *John.* True; And yet it is said,—Labour in * thy vocation: which is as much to say, as,—let * the magistrates be labouring men; and therefore * should we be magistrates.

* *Geo.* Thou hast hit it: for there's no better * sign of a brave mind, than a hard hand.

* *John.* I see them! I see them! There's Best's * son, the tanner of Wingham;——

* *Geo.* He shall have the skins of our enemies, * to make dog's leather of.

John. And Dick the butcher,——

* *Geo.* Then is sin struck down like an ox, and * iniquity's throat cut like a calf.

* *John.* And Smith the weaver.

* Geo. *Argo,* their thread of life is spun.

* *John.* Come, come, let's fall in with them.

Drum. Enter CADE, DICK *the Butcher,* SMITH *the Weaver, and Others in great number.*

'*Cade.* We John Cade, so termed of our sup- 'posed father,——

Dick. Or rather, of stealing a cade of herrings.[3] [*Aside.*

'*Cade.* —for our enemies shall fall before us,[4] 'inspired with the spirit of putting down kings and 'princes,—Command silence.

Dick. Silence!

Cade. My father was a Mortimer,—

[3] —— *a* cade *of herrings.*] That is, A barrel of herrings.

[4] —— *our enemies shall fall before us,*] He alludes to his name *Cade,* from *cado,* Lat. *to fall.* He has too much learning for his character. JOHNSON.

Dick. He was an honest man, and a good bricklayer. [*Aside.*

' *Cade.* My mother a Plantagenet,—

' *Dick.* I knew her well, she was a midwife. [*Aside.*

' *Cade.* My wife descended of the Lacies,—

Dick. She was, indeed, a pedlar's daughter, and sold many laces. [*Aside.*

' *Smith.* But, now of late, not able to travel with ' her furred pack,[5] she washes bucks here at home. [*Aside.*

' *Cade.* Therefore am I of an honourable house.

Dick. Ay, by my faith, the field is honourable;[6] and there was he born, under a hedge; for his father had never a house, but the cage.[7] [*Aside.*

* *Cade.* Valiant I am.

* *Smith.* 'A must needs; for beggary is valiant. [*Aside.*

Cade. I am able to endure much.

Dick. No question of that; for I have seen him whipped three market days together. [*Aside.*

Cade. I fear neither sword nor fire.

Smith. He need not fear the sword, for his coat is of proof.[8] [*Aside.*

Dick. But, methinks, he should stand in fear of fire, being burnt i'the hand for stealing of sheep. [*Aside.*

Cade. Be brave then; for your captain is brave, and vows reformation. There shall be, in England,

[5] —— *furred pack,*] A wallet or knapsack of skin with the hair outward.

[6] —— *the* field *is honourable;*] Perhaps a quibble between *field* in its heraldick, and in its common acceptation, was designed.

[7] —— *but the* cage.] A cage was formerly a term for a prison. We yet talk of jail-*birds*.

[8] —— *for his coat is of* proof.] A quibble between two senses of the word; one as being able to resist, the other as being *well-tried*, that is, long worn.

seven half-penny loaves sold for a penny: the three-hooped pot shall have ten hoops;[9] and I will make it felony, to drink small beer: all the realm shall be in common, and in Cheapside shall my palfry go to grass. And, when I am king, (as king I will be)——

All. God save your majesty!

'*Cade.* I thank you, good people:—there shall 'be no money;[1] all shall eat and drink on my 'score; and I will apparel them all in one livery, 'that they may agree like brothers, and worship me 'their lord.

'*Dick.* The first thing we do, let's kill all the 'lawyers.

Cade. Nay, that I mean to do. Is not this a lamentable thing, that of the skin of an innocent lamb should be made parchment? that parchment, being scribbled o'er, should undo a man? Some say, the bee stings: but I say, 'tis the bee's wax, for I did but seal once to a thing, and I was never mine own man since. How now? who's there?

Enter some, bringing in the Clerk of Chatham.

Smith. The clerk of Chatham: he can write and read, and cast accompt.

Cade. O monstrous!

Smith. We took him setting of boys' copies.

Cade. Here's a villain!

Smith. H'as a book in his pocket, with red letters in't.

[9] —— *the* three-hooped *pot shall have ten* hoops;] a hoop was a measure.

[1] —— *there shall be no money;*] To mend the world by banishing money is an old contrivance of those who did not consider that the quarrels and mischiefs which arise from money, as the sign or ticket of riches, must, if money were to cease, arise immediately from riches themselves, and could never be at an end till every man was contented with his own share of the goods of life.

Dick. Nay, 'tis too true; therefore he shall be king.

Smith. Sir, he made a chimney in my father's house, and the bricks are alive at this day to testify it; therefore, deny it not.

* *Staf.* And will you credit this base drudge's words,
* That speaks he knows not what?

* *All.* Ay, marry, will we; therefore get ye gone.

W. Staf. Jack Cade, the duke of York hath taught you this.

* *Cade.* He lies, for I invented it myself. [*Aside.*] —Go to, sirrah, Tell the king from me, that—for his father's sake, Henry the fifth, in whose time boys went to span-counter for French crowns,—I am content he shall reign; but I'll be protector over him.

' *Dick.* And, furthermore, we'll have the lord ' Say's head, for selling the dukedom of Maine.

' *Cade.* And good reason, for thereby is England ' maimed, and fain to go with a staff, but that my ' puissance holds it up. Fellow kings, I tell you, ' that that lord Say hath gelded the commonwealth, ' and made it an eunuch: and more than that, he ' can speak French, and therefore he is a traitor.

' *Staf.* O gross and miserable ignorance!

' *Cade.* Nay, answer, if you can: The Frenchmen ' are our enemies: go to then, I ask but this; Can ' he, that speaks with the tongue of an enemy, be ' a good counsellor, or no?

* *All.* No, no; and therefore we'll have his head.

* *W. Staf.* Well, seeing gentle words will not prevail,
* Assail them with the army of the king.

' *Staf.* Herald, away: and, throughout every town, ' Proclaim them traitors that are up with Cade; ' That those, which fly before the battle ends, ' May, even in their wives' and children's sight,

‘ Be hang'd up for example at their doors:—
‘ And you, that be the king's friends, follow me.
[*Exeunt the Two* STAFFORDS, *and Forces.*
* *Cade.* And you, that love the commons, follow me.—
* Now show yourselves men, 'tis for liberty.
* We will not leave one lord, one gentleman:
* Spare none, but such as go in clouted shoon;
* For they are thrifty honest men, and such
* As would (but that they dare not,) take our parts.
* *Dick.* They are all in order, and march toward us.
* *Cade.* But then are we in order, when we are
* most out of order. Come, march forward.
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE III.

Another Part of Blackheath.

Alarums. The two Parties enter, and fight, and both the STAFFORDS *are slain.*

‘ *Cade.* Where's Dick, the butcher of Ashford?
‘ *Dick.* Here, sir.
‘ *Cade.* They fell before thee like sheep and ‘ oxen, and thou behavedst thyself as if thou hadst ‘ been in thine own slaughter-house: therefore thus ‘ will I reward thee,—The Lent shall be as long ‘ again as it is; and thou shalt have a license to kill ‘ for a hundred lacking one.
‘ *Dick.* I desire no more.
* *Cade.* And, to speak truth, thou deservest no
* less. This monument of the victory will I bear;
* and the bodies shall be dragged at my horse' heels,
* till I do come to London, where we will have the
* mayor's sword borne before us.
* *Dick.* If we mean to thrive and do good, break
* open the gaols, and let out the prisoners.

* *Cade.* Fear not that, I warrant thee. Come,
* let's march towards London. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE IV.

London. *A Room in the Palace.*

Enter King HENRY, *reading a Supplication; the Duke of* BUCKINGHAM, *and Lord* SAY *with him: at a distance, Queen* MARGARET, *mourning over* SUFFOLK'S *Head.*

* *Q. Mar.* Oft have I heard—that grief softens the mind,
* And makes it fearful and degenerate;
* Think therefore on revenge, and cease to weep.
* But who can cease to weep, and look on this?
* Here may his head lie on my throbbing breast:
* But where's the body that I should embrace?
' *Buck.* What answer makes your grace to the
' rebel's supplication?
* *K. Hen.* I'll send some holy bishop to entreat:
' For God forbid, so many simple souls
' Should perish by the sword! And I myself,
' Rather than bloody war shall cut them short,
' Will parley with Jack Cade their general.—
' But stay, I'll read it over once again.
* *Q. Mar.* Ah, barbarous villains! hath this lovely face
* Rul'd, like a wandering planet,[5] over me;
* And could it not enforce them to relent,
* That were unworthy to behold the same?
' *K. Hen.* Lord Say, Jack Cade hath sworn to have thy head.

[5] *Rul'd, like a wandering planet,*] Predominated irresistibly over my passions, as the planets over the lives of those that are born under their influence.

' *Say.* Ay, but I hope, your highness shall have his.

K. Hen. How now, madam? Still
Lamenting, and mourning for Suffolk's death?
I fear, my love, if that I had been dead,
Thou wouldest not have mourn'd so much for me.

Q. Mar. No, my love, I should not mourn, but die for thee.

Enter a Messenger.

* *K. Hen.* How now! what news? why com'st thou in such haste?

' *Mess.* The rebels are in Southwark; Fly, my lord!
' Jack Cade proclaims himself lord Mortimer,
' Descended from the duke of Clarence' house;
' And calls your grace usurper, openly,
' And vows to crown himself in Westminster.
' His army is a ragged multitude
' Of hinds and peasants, rude and merciless:
' Sir Humphrey Stafford and his brother's death
' Hath given them heart and courage to proceed:
' All scholars, lawyers, courtiers, gentlemen,
' They call—false caterpillars, and intend their death.

* *K. Hen.* O graceless men! they know not what they do.

' *Buck.* My gracious lord, retire to Kenelworth,
' Until a power be rais'd to put them down.

* *Q. Mar.* Ah! were the duke of Suffolk now alive,
* These Kentish rebels would be soon appeas'd.

' *K. Hen.* Lord Say, the traitors hate thee,
' Therefore away with us to Kenelworth.

' *Say.* So might your grace's person be in danger;
' The sight of me is odious in their eyes:
' And therefore in this city will I stay,
' And live alone as secret as I may.

Enter another Messenger.

* 2 *Mess.* Jack Cade hath gotten London-bridge; the citizens
* Fly and forsake their houses:
* The rascal people, thirsting after prey,
* Join with the traitor; and they jointly swear,
* To spoil the city, and your royal court.
* *Buck.* Then linger not, my lord; away, take horse.
* *K. Hen.* Come, Margaret; God, our hope, will succour us.
* *Q. Mar.* My hope is gone, now Suffolk is deceas'd.
* *K. Hen.* Farewell, my lord; [*To Lord* Say.] trust not the Kentish rebels.
* *Buck.* Trust no body, for fear you be betray'd.
' *Say.* The trust I have is in mine innocence,
' And therefore am I bold and resolute. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE V.

The same. The Tower.

Enter Lord Scales, *and Others, on the Walls. Then enter certain* Citizens, *below.*

Scales. How now? is Jack Cade slain?

1 *Cit.* No, my lord, nor likely to be slain; for they have won the bridge, killing all those that withstand them: The lord mayor craves aid of your honour from the Tower, to defend the city from the rebels.

Scales. Such aid as I can spare, you shall command;
But I am troubled here with them myself,
The rebels have assay'd to win the Tower.

But get you to Smithfield, and gather head,
And thither I will send you Matthew Gough:
Fight for your king, your country, and your lives;
And so farewell, for I must hence again. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE VI.

The same. Cannon-street.

Enter JACK CADE, *and his Followers. He strikes his Staff on London-stone.*

Cade. Now is Mortimer lord of this city. And here, sitting upon London-stone, I charge and command, that, of the city's cost, the pissing-conduit run nothing but claret wine this first year of our reign. And now, henceforward, it shall be treason for any that calls me other than—lord Mortimer.

Enter a Soldier, *running.*

Sold. Jack Cade! Jack Cade!

Cade. Knock him down there. [*They kill him.*

* *Smith.* If this fellow be wise, he'll never call you * Jack Cade more; I think, he hath a very fair * warning.

Dick. My lord, there's an army gathered together in Smithfield.

Cade. Come then, let's go fight with them: But, first, go and set London-bridge on fire; and, if you can, burn down the Tower too. Come, let's away.
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE VII.

The same. Smithfield.

Alarum. Enter, on one side, CADE *and his Company; on the other, Citizens, and the King's Forces, headed by* MATTHEW GOUGH. *They fight; the Citizens are routed, and* MATTHEW GOUGH *is slain.*

Cade. So, sirs:—Now go some and pull down the Savoy; others to the inns of court; down with them all.

Dick. I have a suit unto your lordship.

Cade. Be it a lordship thou shalt have it for that word.

' *Dick.* Only, that the laws of England may ' come out of your mouth.

' *John.* Mass, 'twill be sore law then; for he was ' thrust in the mouth with a spear, and 'tis not ' whole yet. [*Aside.*

' *Smith.* Nay, John, it will be stinking law; for ' his breath stinks with eating toasted cheese. [*Aside.*

' *Cade.* I have thought upon it, it shall be so. ' Away, burn all the records of the realm; my ' mouth shall be the parliament of England.

* *John.* Then we are like to have biting statutes, * unless his teeth be pulled out. [*Aside.*

* *Cade.* And henceforward all things shall be in * common.

Enter a Messenger.

' *Mess.* My lord, a prize, a prize! here's the lord ' Say, which sold the towns in France; * he that * made us pay one and twenty fifteens,[6] and one * shilling to the pound, the last subsidy.

Enter GEORGE BEVIS, *with the Lord* SAY.

'*Cade.* Well, he shall be beheaded for it ten 'times.—Ah, thou say, thou serge,[7] nay, thou 'buckram lord! now art thou within point-blank of 'our jurisdiction regal. What canst thou answer 'to my majesty, for giving up of Normandy unto 'monsieur Basimecu, the dauphin of France? Be it 'known unto thee by these presence, even the presence 'of lord Mortimer, that I am the besom that must 'sweep the court clean of such filth as thou art. 'Thou hast most traitorously corrupted the youth of 'the realm, in erecting a grammar-school: and where-'as, before, our fore-fathers had no other books but 'the score and the tally, thou hast caused printing 'to be used;[8] and, contrary to the king, his crown, 'and dignity, thou hast built a paper-mill. It will 'be proved to thy face, that thou hast men about 'thee, that usually talk of a noun, and a verb; and 'such abominable words, as no Christian ear can en-'dure to hear. Thou hast appointed justices of 'peace, to call poor men before them about matters 'they were not able to answer. Moreover, thou 'hast put them in prison; and because they could 'not read, thou hast hanged them;[9] when, indeed, 'only for that cause they have been most worthy to 'live. Thou dost ride on a foot-cloth,[1] dost thou not?

[6] —— *one and twenty* fifteens,] A *fifteen* was the fifteenth part of all the moveables or personal property of each subject.

[7] —— *thou* say, *thou serge,*] *Say* was the old word for *silk*; on this depends the series of degradation, from *say* to *serge*, from *serge to buckram.*

[8] —— *printing to be used;*] Shakspeare is a little too early with this accusation.

[9] —— *because they could not read, thou hast hanged them:*] That is, they were hanged because they could not claim the benefit of clergy.

[1] *Thou dost ride on a* foot-cloth,] A *foot-cloth* was a kind of

Say. What of that?

Cade. Marry, thou oughtest not to let thy horse wear a cloak,[2] when honester men than thou go in their hose and doublets.

* *Dick.* And work in their shirt too; as myself,
* for example, that am a butcher.

Say. You men of Kent,—

Dick. What say you of Kent?

' *Say.* Nothing but this: 'Tis *bona terra, mala gens.*

' *Cade.* Away with him, away with him! he speaks
' Latin.

* *Say.* Hear me but speak, and bear me where you will.
' Kent, in the commentaries Cæsar writ,
' Is term'd the civil'st place of all this isle:
' Sweet is the country, because full of riches;
' The people liberal, valiant, active, wealthy;
' Which makes me hope you are not void of pity.
' I sold not Maine, I lost not Normandy;
* Yet, to recover them, would lose my life.
* Justice with favour have I always done;
* Prayers and tears have mov'd me, gifts could never.
* When have I aught exacted at your hands,
* Kent to maintain, the king, the realm, and you?
* Large gifts have I bestow'd on learned clerks,
* Because my book preferr'd me to the king:
* And—seeing ignorance is the curse of God,
* Knowledge the wing wherewith we fly to heaven,—
* Unless you be possess'd with devilish spirits,
* You cannot but forbear to murder me.

housing, which covered the body of the horse, and almost reached the ground. It was sometimes made of velvet, and bordered with gold lace.

[2] —— *to let thy horse wear a cloak,*] This is a reproach truly characteristical. Nothing gives so much offence to the lower ranks of mankind, as the sight of superfluities merely ostentatious.

* This tongue hath parley'd unto foreign kings
* For your behoof,—
* *Cade.* Tut! when struck'st thou one blow in
* the field?
* *Say.* Great men have reaching hands: oft have I struck
* Those that I never saw, and struck them dead.
* *Geo.* O monstrous coward! what, to come behind folks?
* *Say.* These cheeks are pale for watching[3] for your good.
* *Cade.* Give him a box o'the ear, and that will
* make 'em red again.
* *Say.* Long sitting to determine poor men's causes
Hath made me full of sickness and diseases.
* *Cade.* Ye shall have a hempen caudle then,
* and the pap of a hatchet.
' *Dick.* Why dost thou quiver, man?
' *Say.* The palsy, and not fear, provoketh me.
' *Cade.* Nay, he nods at us; as who should say, ' I'll be even with you. I'll see if his head will stand ' steadier on a pole, or no: Take him away, and be- ' head him.
* *Say.* Tell me, wherein I have offended most?
* Have I affected wealth, or honour; speak?
* Are my chests fill'd up with extorted gold?
* Is my apparel sumptuous to behold?
* Whom have I injur'd, that ye seek my death?
* These hands are free from guiltless blood-shedding,[4]
* This breast from harbouring foul deceitful thoughts.
* O, let me live!

[3] —— for *watching* —] That is, in consequence of watching.

[4] *These hands are free from guiltless blood-shedding,*] *Guiltless* is not an epithet to *blood-shedding*, but to *blood*. These hands are free from shedding *guiltless* or *innocent* blood.

* *Cade.* I feel remorse in myself with his words:
* but I'll bridle it; he shall die, an it be but for
* pleading so well for his life.[5] Away with him!
* he has a familiar under his tongue;[6] he speaks not
* o'God's name. 'Go, take him away, I say, and
'strike off his head presently; and then break into
'his son-in-law's house, sir James Cromer,[7] and
'strike off his head, and bring them both upon two
'poles hither.

All. It shall be done.

* *Say.* Ah, countrymen! if when you make your
prayers,
* God should be so obdurate as yourselves,
* How would it fare with your departed souls?
* And therefore yet relent, and save my life.

* *Cade.* Away with him, and do as I command
ye. [*Exeunt some, with Lord* SAY.
'The proudest peer in the realm shall not wear a
'head on his shoulders, unless he pay me tribute;
'there shall not a maid be married, but she shall
'pay to me her maidenhead ere they have it: Men
'shall hold of me *in capite*; and we charge and
'command, that their wives be as free as heart can
'wish, or tongue can tell.

'*Dick.* My lord, when shall we go to Cheapside, and take up commodities upon our bills?[8]

[5] —— *he shall die, an it be but for pleading so well for his life.*] This sentiment is not merely designed as an expression of ferocious triumph, but to mark the eternal enmity which the vulgar bear to those of more liberal education and superior rank. The vulgar are always ready to depreciate the talents which they behold with envy, and insult the eminence which they despair to reach. STEEVENS.

[6] —— *a* familiar *under his tongue;*] A *familiar* is a dæmon who was supposed to attend at call.

[7] —— *sir James Cromer,*] It was *William Crowmer,* sheriff of Kent, whom Cade put to death. Lord Say and he had been previously sent to the Tower, and both, or at least the former, convicted of treason, at Cade's mock commission of oyer and terminer at Guildhall.

'*Cade.* Marry, presently.
'*All.* O brave!

Re-enter Rebels, *with the heads of Lord* Say *and his Son-in-law.*

'*Cade.* But is not this braver?—Let them kiss
'one another, for they loved well, when they were
'alive. Now part them again, lest they consult about
'the giving up of some more towns in France. Sol-
'diers, defer the spoil of the city until night: for
'with these borne before us, instead of maces, will
'we ride through the streets; and, at every corner,
'have them kiss.—Away! *Exeunt.*

SCENE VIII.

Southwark.

Alarum. Enter CADE, *and all his Rabblement.*

* *Cade.* Up Fish-street! down Saint Magnus'
* corner! kill and knock down! throw them into
* Thames!— [*A Parley sounded, then a Retreat.*
* What noise is this I hear? Dare any be so bold to
* sound retreat or parley, when I command them
* kill?

Enter BUCKINGHAM, *and Old* CLIFFORD, *with Forces.*

'*Buck.* Ay, here they be that dare and will dis-
turb thee:
'Know, Cade, we come ambassadors from the king
'Unto the commons whom thou hast misled;

* —— *take up commodities upon our* bills?] Perhaps this is an equivoque alluding to the *brown bills*, or halberds; with which the commons were anciently armed.

'And here pronounce free pardon to them all,
'That will forsake thee, and go home in peace.
'*Clif.* What say ye, countrymen? will ye relent,
'And yield to mercy, whilst 'tis offer'd you;
'Or let a rabble lead you to your deaths?
'Who loves the king, and will embrace his pardon,
'Fling up his cap, and say—God save his majesty!
'Who hateth him, and honours not his father,
'Henry the fifth, that made all France to quake,
'Shake he his weapon at us, and pass by.
'*All.* God save the king! God save the king!
'*Cade.* What, Buckingham, and Clifford, are ye
'so brave?—And you, base peasants, do ye believe
'him? will you needs be hanged with the pardons
'about your necks? Hath my sword therefore broke
'through London Gates, that you should leave me
'at the White Hart in Southwark? I thought, ye
'would never have given out these arms, till you
'had recovered your ancient freedom: but you are all
'recreants, and dastards; and delight to live in sla-
'very to the nobility. Let them break your backs
'with burdens, take your houses over your heads,
'ravish your wives and daughters before your faces:
'For me,—I will make shift for one; and so—God's
'curse light upon you all!
'*All.* We'll follow Cade, we'll follow Cade.
'*Clif.* Is Cade the son of Henry the fifth,
'That thus you do exclaim—you'll go with him.
'Will he conduct you through the heart of France,
'And make the meanest of you earls and dukes?
'Alas, he hath no home, no place to fly to;
'Nor knows he how to live, but by the spoil,
'Unless by robbing of your friends, and us.
'Wer't not a shame, that whilst you live at jar,
'The fearful French, whom you late vanquished,
'Should make a start o'er seas, and vanquish you?
'Methinks, already, in this civil broil,

'I see them lording it in London streets,
'Crying—*Villageois!* unto all they meet.
'Better, ten thousand base-born Cades miscarry,
'Than you should stoop unto a Frenchman's mercy.
'To France, to France, and get what you have lost;
'Spare England, for it is your native coast:
'Henry hath money, you are strong and manly;
'God on our side, doubt not of victory.

'*All.* A Clifford! a Clifford! we'll follow the king, 'and Clifford.

'*Cade.* Was ever feather so lightly blown to and 'fro, as this multitude? the name of Henry the fifth 'hales them to an hundred mischiefs, and makes 'them leave me desolate. I see them lay their heads 'together, to surprize me: my sword make way for 'me, for here is no staying.—In despight of the 'devils and hell, have through the very midst of 'you! and heavens and honour be witness, that no 'want of resolution in me, but only my followers' 'base and ignominious treasons, makes me betake 'me to my heels. [*Exit.*

'*Buck.* What, is he fled? go some, and follow him; 'And he, that brings his head unto the king,
'Shall have a thousand crowns for his reward.—
[*Exeunt some of them.*
'Follow me, soldiers; we'll devise a mean
'To reconcile you all unto the king. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE IX.

Kenelworth *Castle.*

Enter King HENRY, *Queen* MARGARET, *and* SOMERSET, *on the Terrace of the Castle.*

* *K. Hen.* Was ever king that joy'd an earthly throne,

* And could command no more content than I?
* No sooner was I crept out of my cradle,
* But I was made a king, at nine months old:
* Was never subject long'd to be a king,
* As I do long and wish to be a subject.

Enter BUCKINGHAM *and* CLIFFORD.

* *Buck.* Health, and glad tidings, to your majesty!
* *K. Hen.* Why, Buckingham, is the traitor, Cade, surpriz'd?
* Or is he but retir'd to make him strong?

Enter, below, a great number of CADE's *Followers, with Halters about their Necks.*

' *Clif.* He's fled, my lord, and all his powers do yield;
' And humbly thus, with halters on their necks,
' Expect your highness' doom, of life, or death.
' *K. Hen.* Then, heaven, set ope thy everlasting gates,
' To entertain my vows of thanks and praise!—
' Soldiers, this day have you redeem'd your lives,
' And show'd how well you love your prince and country:
' Continue still in this so good a mind,
' And Henry, though he be infortunate,
' Assure yourselves, will never be unkind:
' And so, with thanks, and pardon to you all,
' I do dismiss, you to your several countries.
All. God save the king! God save the king!

Enter a Messenger.

* *Mess.* Please it your grace to be advértised,
* The duke of York is newly come from Ireland:
* And with a puissant and a mighty power,

* Of Gallowglasses, and stout Kernes,[9]
* Is marching hitherward in proud array;
* And still proclaimeth, as he comes along,
* His arms are only to remove from thee
' The duke of Somerset, whom he terms a traitor.
* *K. Hen.* Thus stands my state, 'twixt Cade and
York distress'd;
* Like to a ship, that, having 'scap'd a tempest,
* Is straightway calm'd and boarded with a pirate:
* But now is Cade driven back, his men dispers'd;
* And now is York in arms to second him.—
* I pray thee, Buckingham, go forth and meet
him;
* And ask him, what's the reason of these arms.
* Tell him, I'll send duke Edmund to the Tower;—
* And, Somerset, we will commit thee thither,
* Until his army be dismiss'd from him.
* *Som.* My lord,
* I'll yield myself to prison willingly,
* Or unto death, to do my country good.
* *K. Hen.* In any case, be not too rough in terms;
* For he is fierce, and cannot brook hard language.
* *Buck.* I will, my lord; and doubt not so to deal,
* As all things shall redound unto your good.
* *K. Hen.* Come, wife, let's in, and learn to go-
vern better;
* For yet may England curse my wretched reign.
[*Exeunt.*

[9] *Of* gallowglasses, *and stout* Kernes,] These were two orders of foot-soldiers among the Irish.

SCENE X.

Kent. Iden's *Garden.*[1]

Enter CADE.

* *Cade.* Fye on ambition! fye on myself; that
* have a sword, and yet am ready to famish! These
* five days have I hid me in these woods; and durst
* not peep out, for all the country is lay'd for me;
* but now I am so hungry, that if I might have a
* lease of my life for a thousand years, I could stay
* no longer. Wherefore, on a brick-wall have I
* climbed into this garden; to see if I can eat grass,
* or pick a sallet another while, which is not amiss
* to cool a man's stomach this hot weather. And, I
* think, this word sallet was born to do me good:
* for, many a time, but for a sallet, my brain-pan[2]
* had been cleft with a brown bill; and, many a time,
* when I have been dry, and bravely marching, it
* hath served me instead of a quart-pot to drink in;
* And now the word sallet must serve me to feed on.

Enter IDEN, *with* Servants.

' *Iden.* Lord, who would live turmoiled in the
court,
' And may enjoy such quiet walks as these?
' This small inheritance, my father left me,
' Contenteth me, and is worth a monarchy.
' I seek not to wax great by others' waning;
' Or gather wealth, I care not with what envy;

[1] Kent. *Iden's Garden.*] This Iden was the new sheriff of Kent, who had followed Cade from Rochester.

[2] —— *but for a* sallet, *my* brain-pan, &c.] A quibble from *salut*, Fr. as an helmet keeps the head safe.

'Sufficeth, that I have maintains my state,
'And sends the poor well pleased from my gate.

'*Cade.* Here's the lord of the soil come to seize 'me for a stray, for entering his fee-simple without 'leave. Ah, villain, thou wilt betray me, and get 'a thousand crowns of the king for carrying my 'head to him; but I'll make thee eat iron like an 'ostrich, and swallow my sword like a great pin, ere 'thou and I part.

'*Iden.* Why, rude companion, whatso'er thou be,
'I know thee not; Why then should I betray thee?
'Is't not enough, to break into my garden,
'And, like a thief, to come to rob my grounds,
'Climbing my walls in spite of me the owner,
'But thou wilt brave me with these saucy terms?

Cade. Brave thee? ay, by the best blood that ever was broached, and beard thee too. Look on me well: I have eat no meat these five days: yet, come thou and thy five men, and if I do not leave you all as dead as a door nail, I pray God, I may never eat grass more.

'*Iden.* Nay, it shall ne'er be said, while England stands,
That Alexander Iden, an esquire of Kent,
Took odds to combat a poor famish'd man.
'Oppose thy stedfast gazing eyes to mine,
'See if thou canst outface me with thy looks.
'Set limb to limb, and thou art far the lesser;
'Thy hand is but a finger to my fist;
'Thy leg a stick, compared with this truncheon;
'My foot shall fight with all the strength thou hast;
'And if mine arm be heaved in the air,
'Thy grave is digg'd already in the earth.
'As for more words, whose greatness answers words,
'Let this my sword report what speech forbears.

'*Cade.* By my valour, the most complete cham-
'pion that ever I heard.—'Steel, if thou turn the

' sight. If all not for the rich-coated clown in
' thines if next we thou seest in thy sheath, I be-
' seech God in my cheer. thou mayest be turned
' to mortals. [They fight. Cade falls.] O, I am
' slain famine and no other hath slain me: let
' ten thousand devils come against me, and give me
' but the ten hours I have fed, and I'd defy them
' all. Wither, garden: and be henceforth a bury-
' ing-place to all that do dwell in this house, because
' the unconquered soul of Cade is fled.

' *Iden.* Is't Cade that I have slain, that monstrous traitor?

' *Sword.* I will hallow thee for this thy deed,
' And hang thee o'er my tomb, when I am dead:
' Ne'er shall this blood be wiped from thy point;
' But thou shalt wear it as a herald's coat,
' To emblaze the honour that thy master got.

' *Cade.* Iden, farewell: and be proud of thy victory: Tell Kent from me, she hath lost her best man, and exhort all the world to be cowards; for I, that never feared any, am vanquished by famine, not by valour. [*Dies.*

' *Iden.* How much thou wrong'st me,[3] heaven, be my judge.
' Die, damned wretch, the curse of her that bare thee!
' And as I thrust thy body in with my sword,
' So wish I, I might thrust thy soul to hell.[4]

[3] *How much thou wrong'st me,*] That is, in supposing that I am proud of my victory.

[4] *So wish I, I might thrust thy soul to hell,* &c.] Not to dwell upon the wickedness of this horrid wish, with which Iden debases his character, the whole speech is wild and confused. To draw a man by the heels, headlong, is somewhat difficult; nor can I discover how the dunghill would be his grave, if his trunk were left to be fed upon by crows. These I conceive not to be the faults of corruption but negligence, and therefore do not attempt correction. JOHNSON.

'Hence will I drag thee headlong by the heels
'Unto a dunghill, which shall be thy grave,
'And there cut off thy most ungracious head;
'Which I will bear in triumph to the king,
'Leaving thy trunk for cows to feed upon.
[*Exit, dragging out the Body.*

ACT V.

SCENE I. The same. Fields between Dartford *and* Blackheath.

The King's *Camp on one side. On the other, enter* York *attended, with Drum and Colours: his Forces at some distance.*

'*York.* From Ireland thus comes York, to claim his right,
'And pluck the crown from feeble Henry's head:
'Ring, bells, aloud; burn, bonfires, clear and bright,
'To entertain great England's lawful king.
Ah, *sancta majestas!* who would not buy thee dear?
'Let them obey, that know not how to rule;
'This hand was made to handle nought but gold:
'I cannot give due action to my words,
'Except a sword, or scepter, balance it.[5]
'A scepter shall it have, have I a soul;
'On which I'll toss the flower-de-luce of France.

Enter Buckingham.

'Whom have we here? Buckingham, to disturb me?
'The king hath sent him, sure: I must dissemble.

[5] —— *balance it.*] That is, balance my hand.

'*Buck.* York, if thou meanest well, I greet thee well.

'*York.* Humphrey of Buckingham, I accept thy greeting.

'Art thou a messenger, or come of pleasure?

'*Buck.* A messenger from Henry, our dread liege,
'To know the reason of these arms in peace;
'Or why, thou—being a subject as I am,—
'Against thy oath and true allegiance sworn,
'Should'st raise so great a power without his leave,
'Or dare to bring thy force so near the court.

'*York.* Scarce can I speak, my choler is so great.
'O, I could hew up rocks, and fight with flint,
'I am so angry at these abject terms;
'And now, like Ajax Telamonius,
'On sheep or oxen could I spend my fury! *Aside.*
'I am far better born than is the king;
'More like a king, more kingly in my thoughts:
'But I must make fair weather yet a while,
'Till Henry be more weak, and I more strong.—

'O Buckingham, I pr'ythee thee, pardon me,
'That I have given no answer all this while;
'My mind was troubled with deep melancholy.
'The cause why I have brought this army hither,
'Is—to remove proud Somerset from the king,
'Seditious to his grace, and to the state.

'*Buck.* That is too much presumption on thy part:
'But if thy arms be to no other end,
'The king hath yielded unto thy demand;
'The duke of Somerset is in the Tower.

York. Upon thine honour, is he prisoner?

Buck. Upon mine honour, he is prisoner.

' *York.* Then, Buckingham, I do dismiss my powers.—
' Soldiers, I thank you all; disperse yourselves;
' Meet me to-morrow in Saint George's field,
' You shall have pay, and every thing you wish.
* And let my sovereign, virtuous Henry,
* Command my eldest son,—nay, all my sons,
* As pledges of my fealty and love,
* I'll send them all as willing as I live;
* Lands, goods, horse, armour, any thing I have
* Is his to use, so Somerset may die.
' *Buck.* York, I commend this kind submission:
' We twain will go into his highness' tent.

Enter King HENRY, *attended.*

' *K. Hen.* Buckingham doth York intend no harm to us,
' That thus he marcheth with thee arm in arm?
* *York.* In all submission and humility,
* York doth present himself unto your highness.
* *K. Hen.* Then what intend these forces thou dost bring?
' *York.* To heave the traitor Somerset from hence;
' And fight against that monstrous rebel, Cade,
' Who since I heard to be discomfited.

Enter IDEN, *with* CADE'S *Head.*

' *Iden.* If one so rude, and of so mean condition,
' May pass into the presence of a king,
' Lo, I present your grace a traitor's head,
' The head of Cade, whom I in combat slew.
' *K. Hen.* The head of Cade?—Great God, how just art thou!—
' O, let me view his visage being dead,
' That living wrought me such exceeding trouble.

' *York.* I thank thee, Clifford: Say, what news with thee?
' Nay, do not fright us with an angry look:
' We are thy sovereign, Clifford, kneel again;
' For thy mistaking so, we pardon thee.
' *Clif.* This is my king, York, I do not mistake;
' But thou mistak'st me much, to think I do:—
' To Bedlam with him! is the man grown mad?
' *K. Hen.* Ay, Clifford; a bedlam and ambitious humour
' Makes him oppose himself against his king.
' *Clif.* He is a traitor; let him to the Tower,
' And chop away that factious pate of his.
Q. Mar. He is arrested, but will not obey;
' His sons, he says, shall give their words for him.
' *York.* Will you not, sons?
Edw. Ay, noble father, if our words will serve.
' *Rich.* And if words will not, then our weapons shall.
* *Clif.* Why, what a brood of traitors have we here!
* *York.* Look in a glass, and call thy image so;
* I am thy king, and thou a false-heart traitor.—
' Call hither to the stake my two brave bears,
* That, with the very shaking of their chains,
* They may astonish these fell lurking curs;
* Bid Salisbury, and Warwick, come[6] to me.

Drums. Enter WARWICK *and* SALISBURY, *with Forces.*

' *Clif.* Are these thy bears? we'll bait thy bears to death,
' And manacle the bear-ward in their chains,

[6] *Call hither to the stake my two brave bears,—*
Bid Salisbury, and Warwick, come—] The Nevils, earls of Warwick, had a *bear and ragged staff* for their cognizance.

* If thou dar'st bring them to the baiting-place.
  * *Rich.* Oft have I seen a hot o'erweening cur
* Run back and bite, because he was withheld;
* Who, being suffer'd[7] with the bear's fell paw,
* Hath clapp'd his tail between his legs, and cry'd:
* And such a piece of service will you do,
* If you oppose yourselves to match lord Warwick.
  * *Clif.* Hence, heap of wrath, foul indigested lump,
* As crooked in thy manners as thy shape!
  * *York.* Nay, we shall heat you thoroughly anon.
  * *Clif.* Take heed, lest by your heat you burn yourselves.
  * *K. Hen.* Why, Warwick, hath thy knee forgot to bow?—
* Old Salisbury,—shame to thy silver hair,
* Thou mad misleader of thy brain-sick son!—
* What, wilt thou on thy death-bed play the ruffian,
* And seek for sorrow with thy spectacles?
* O, where is faith? O, where is loyalty?
* If it be banish'd from the frosty head,
* Where shall it find a harbour in the earth?—
* Wilt thou go dig a grave to find out war,
* And shame thine honourable age with blood?
* Why art thou old, and want'st experience?
* Or wherefore dost abuse it, if thou hast it?
* For shame! in duty bend thy knee to me,
* That bows unto the grave with mickle age.
  * *Sal.* My lord, I have consider'd with myself
* The title of this most renowned duke;
* And in my conscience do repute his grace
* The rightful heir to England's royal seat.
  * *K. Hen.* Hast thou not sworn allegiance unto me?

[7] —— *being* suffer'd—] Being suffer'd to approach to the bear's fell paw. Such may be the meaning. I am not, however, sure, but the poet meant, being in a state of *sufferance* or pain. MALONE.

* *Sal.* I have.
* *K. Hen.* Canst thou dispense with heaven for such an oath?
* *Sal.* It is great sin, to swear unto a sin;
* But greater sin, to keep a sinful oath.
* Who can be bound by any solemn vow
* To do a murderous deed, to rob a man,
* To force a spotless virgin's chastity,
* To reave the orphan of his patrimony,
* To wring the widow from her custom'd right;
* And have no other reason for this wrong,
* But that he was bound by a solemn oath?
Q. Mar. A subtle traitor needs no sophister.
' *K. Hen.* Call Buckingham, and bid him arm himself.
' *York.* Call Buckingham, and all the friends thou hast,
' I am resolv'd for death, or dignity.
' *Clif.* The first I warrant thee, if dreams prove true.
' *War.* You were best to go to bed, and dream again,
To keep thee from the tempest of the field.
Clif. I am resolv'd to bear a greater storm,
Than any thou canst conjure up to-day;
And that I'll write upon thy burgonet,[8]
Might I but know thee by thy household badge.
War. Now, by my father's badge old Nevil's crest,
The rampant bear chain'd to the ragged staff,
This day I'll wear aloft my burgonet,
(As on a mountain-top the cedar shows,
That keeps his leaves in spite of any storm,)
Even to affright thee with the view thereof.
Clif. And from thy burgonet I'll rend thy bear,
And tread it under foot with all contempt,

[8] —— *burgonet,*] Is a *helmet.*

‘ Despight the bear-ward that protects the bear.
‘ *Y. Clif.* And so to arms, victorious father,
‘ To quell the rebels, and their 'complices.
Rich. Fye! charity, for shame! speak not in spite,
For you shall sup with *Jesu Christ* to-night.
‘ *Y. Clif.* Foul stigmatick,[9] that's more than thou canst tell.
‘ *Rich.* If not in heaven, you'll surely sup in hell. [*Exeunt severally.*

SCENE II.

Saint Albans.

Alarums: Excursions. Enter WARWICK.

War. Clifford of Cumberland, 'tis Warwick calls!
And if thou dost not hide thee from the bear,
Now,—when the angry trumpet sounds alarm,
And dead men's cries do fill the empty air,—
Clifford, I say, come forth and fight with me!
Proud northern lord, Clifford of Cumberland,
Warwick is hoarse with calling thee to arms.

Enter YORK.

‘ How now, my noble lord? what, all a-foot?
‘ *York.* The deadly-handed Clifford slew my steed;
‘ But match to match I have encounter'd him,
‘ And made a prey for carrion kites and crows
‘ Even of the bonny beast he lov'd so well.

Enter CLIFFORD.

‘ *War.* Of one or both of us the time is come.

[9] *Foul* stigmatick,] A *stigmatick* is one on whom nature has set a mark of deformity, a stigma. A *stigmatick* originally and properly signified a person who has been branded with a hot iron for some crime.

York. Hold, Warwick, seek thee out some other chace,
For I myself must hunt this deer to death.
War. Then, nobly, York; 'tis for a crown thou fight'st.—
' As I intend, Clifford, to thrive to-day,
It grieves my soul to leave thee unassail'd.
[*Exit* WARWICK.
' *Clif.* What seest thou in me, York? why dost thou pause?
' *York.* With thy brave bearing should I be in love,
' But that thou art so fast mine enemy.
' *Clif.* Nor should thy prowess want praise and esteem,
' But that 'tis shown ignobly, and in treason.
' *York.* So let it help me now against thy sword,
' As I in justice and true right express it!
' *Clif.* My soul and body on the action both!—
' *York.* A dreadful lay![1]—address thee instantly.
[*They fight, and* CLIFFORD *falls.*
' Clif. *La fin couronne les oeuvres.* [*Dies.*[2]
' *York.* Thus war hath given thee peace, for thou art still.
' Peace with his soul, heaven, if it be thy will!
[*Exit.*

Enter young CLIFFORD.

' * *Y. Clif.* Shame and confusion! all is on the rout;

[1] *A dreadful lay!*] A dreadful wager; a tremendous stake.

[2] *Dies.*] Our author, in making Clifford fall by the hand of York, has departed from the truth of history; a practice not uncommon to him when he does his utmost to make his characters considerable. This circumstance, however, serves to prepare the reader or spectator for the vengeance afterwards taken by Clifford's son on York and Rutland.

It is remarkable, that at the beginning of the third part of this historical play, the poet has forgot this occurrence, and there represents Clifford's death as it really happened.

* Fear frames disorder, and disorder wounds
* Where it should guard. O war, thou son of hell,
* Whom angry heavens do make their minister,
* Throw in the frozen bosoms of our part
* Hot coals of vengeance!—Let no soldier fly:
* He that is truly dedicate to war,
* Hath no self-love; nor he, that loves himself,
* Hath not essentially, but by circumstance,
* The name of valour.—O, let the vile world end,
[*Seeing his dead Father.*
* And the premised flames[3] of the last day
* Knit earth and heaven together!
* Now let the general trumpet blow his blast,
* Particularities and petty sounds
* To cease![4] Wast thou ordain'd, dear father,
* To lose thy youth in peace, and to achieve[5]
* The silver livery of advised age;[6]
* And, in thy reverence, and thy chair-days, thus
* To die in ruffian battle?—Even at this sight,
* My heart is turn'd to stone: and, while 'tis mine,
* It shall be stony. York not our old men spares;
* No more will I their babes: tears virginal
* Shall be to me even as the dew to fire;
* And beauty, that the tyrant oft reclaims,
* Shall to my flaming wrath be oil and flax.
* Henceforth, I will not have to do with pity:
* Meet I an infant of the house of York,
* Into as many gobbets will I cut it,
* As wild Medea young Absyrtus did:[7]

[3] *And the premised flames*—] *Premised*, for sent before their time. The sense is, let the flames reserved for the last day be sent now.

[4] *To* cease!] Is to *stop*, a verb active.

[5] —— *to achieve*—] Is, to obtain.

[6] *The silver livery of* advised *age;*] *Advised* is *wise, experienced,* or *cautious, considerate.*

[7] *As wild Medea,* &c.] When Medea fled with Jason from Colchos, she murdered her brother Absyrtus, and cut his body

* In cruelty will I seek out my fame.
' Come, thou new ruin of old Clifford's house;
[*Taking up the Body.*
' As did Æneas old Anchises bear,
' So bear I thee upon my manly shoulders;
* But then Æneas bare a living load,
* Nothing so heavy as these woes of mine. [*Exit.*

Enter RICHARD PLANTAGENET *and* SOMERSET, *fighting, and* SOMERSET *is killed.*

Rich. So, lie thou there;—
' For, underneath an alehouse' paltry sign,
The Castle in Saint Albans, Somerset
Hath made the wizard famous in his death.—
* Sword, hold thy temper; heart, be wrathful still:
* Priests pray for enemies, but princes kill. [*Exit.*

Alarums: Excursions. Enter King HENRY, *Queen* MARGARET, *and others, retreating.*

' *Q. Mar.* Away, my lord! you are slow; for shame, away!
* *K. Hen.* Can we outrun the heavens? good Margaret, stay.
* *Q. Mar.* What are you made of? you'll not fight, nor fly:
* Now is it manhood, wisdom, and defence,
* To give the enemy way; and to secure us
* By what we can, which can no more but fly.
[*Alarum afar off.*
* If you be ta'en, we then should see the bottom
* Of all our fortunes: but if we haply scape,
* (As well we may, if not through your neglect,)
* We shall to London get; where you are lov'd;

into several pieces, that her father might be prevented for some time from pursuing her.

* And where this breach, now in our fortunes made,
* May readily be stopp'd.

Enter young CLIFFORD.

* *Y. Clif.* But that my heart's on future mischief set,
* I would speak blasphemy ere bid you fly;
* But fly you must; uncurable discomfit
* Reigns in the hearts of all our present parts.[8]
* Away, for your relief! and we will live
* To see their day, and them our fortune give:
* Away, my lord, away! [*Exeunt.*

SCENE III.

Fields near Saint Albans.

Alarum: Retreat. Flourish; then enter YORK, RICHARD PLANTAGENET, WARWICK, *and Soldiers, with Drum and Colours.*

' *York.* Of Salisbury, who can report of him;
* That winter lion, who, in rage, forgets
* Aged contusions and all brush of time;[9]
* And, like a gallant in the brow of youth,[1]
* Repairs him with occasion? this happy day
* Is not itself, nor have we won one foot,
* If Salisbury be lost.
' *Rich.* My noble father,
' Three times to-day I holp him to his horse,
' Three times bestrid him,[2] thrice I led him off,

[8] —— *all our present* parts.] i. e. *party*. TYRWHITT.
[9] —— brush *of time;*] i. e. the gradual detrition of time.
[1] —— *gallant in the* brow *of youth,*] The *brow* of *youth* is the *height* of youth, as the *brow* of a hill is its summit.
[2] *Three times bestrid him,*] That is, Three times I saw him fallen, and, striding over him, defended him till he recovered.

‘ Persuaded him from any further act:
‘ But still, where danger was, still there I met him;
* And like rich hangings in a homely house,
* So was his will in his old feeble body.
* But, noble as he is, look where he comes.

Enter SALISBURY.

‘ *Sal.* Now, by my sword, well hast thou fought to-day;
‘ By the mass, so did we all.—I thank you, Richard:
‘ God knows, how long it is I have to live;
‘ And it hath pleas'd him, that three times to-day
‘ You have defended me from imminent death.—
* Well, lords, we have not got that which we have:[3]
* 'Tis not enough our foes are this time fled,
* Being opposites of such repairing nature.[4]
‘ *York.* I know, our safety is to follow them;
‘ For, as I hear, the king is fled to London,
‘ To call a present court of parliament.
‘ Let us pursue him, ere the writs go forth:—
‘ What says lord Warwick? shall we after them?
War. After them! nay, before them, if we can.
Now by my faith, lords, 'twas a glorious day:
Saint Albans' battle, won by famous York,
Shall be eterniz'd in all age to come.—
Sound, drums and trumpets;—and to London all:
And more such days as these to us befall! [*Exeunt.*

[3] *Well, lords, we have not got that which we have;*] i. e. we have not secured, we are not sure of retaining, that which we have acquired.

[4] *Being* opposites *of such* repairing *nature.*] Being enemies that are likely so soon to rally and recover themselves from this defeat.

H. Fuseli R.A. del. T. Neagle Sc.

Henry, the Lieutenant of the Tower;
Enter Gloster. *Good day, my Lord! What,*
at your book so hard?

Published by C.& F. Rivington, London. Dec.1.1803.

KING HENRY VI.

PART III.*

* THIRD PART OF KING HENRY VI.] The action of this play (which was at first printed under this title, *The True Tragedy of Richard duke of York, and the good King Henry the Sixth; or, The Second Part of the Contention of York and Lancaster*, opens just after the first battle at Saint Albans, [May 23, 1455,] wherein the York faction carried the day; and closes with the murder of King Henry VI. and the birth of Prince Edward, afterwards King Edward V. [November 4, 1471.] So that this history takes in the space of full sixteen years. THEOBALD.

I have never seen the quarto copy of the *Second* part of THE WHOLE CONTENTION, &c. printed by *Valentine Simmes* for Thomas Millington, 1600; but the copy printed by W. W. for Thomas Millington, 1600, is now before me; and it is not precisely the same with that described by Mr. Pope and Mr. Theobald, nor does the undated edition (printed in fact, in 1619,) correspond with their description. The title of the piece printed in 1600, by W. W. is as follows: *The True Tragedie of Richarde Duke of Yorke, and the Death of good King Henrie the Sixt: With the whole Contention between the two Houses Lancaster and Yorke: as it was sundry Times acted by the Right Honourable* the Earle of Pembrooke his Servants. *Printed at London by W. W. for Thomas Millington, and are to be sold at his Shoppe under St. Peter's Church in Cornewall*, 1600. On this piece Shakspeare, as I conceive, in 1591, formed the drama before us. MALONE.

The present historical drama was altered by Crowne, and brought on the stage in the year 1680, under the title of *The Miseries of Civil War*. Surely the works of Shakspeare could have been little read at that period; for Crowne, in his Prologue, declares the play to be entirely his own composition:

"For by his feeble skill 'tis built alone,
"The divine Shakspeare *did not lay one stone.*"

whereas the very first scene is that of Jack Cade copied almost verbatim from *The Second Part of King Henry VI.* and several others from this third part, with as little variation. STEEVENS.

PERSONS REPRESENTED.

King Henry *the Sixth:*
Edward, *Prince of* Wales, *his Son.*
Lewis XI. *King of* France.
Duke of Somerset. *Duke of* Exeter. *Earl of* Oxford. *Earl of* Northumberland. *Earl of* Westmoreland. *Lord* Clifford. } *Lords on K.* Henry's *side.*
Richard Plantagenet, *Duke of* York:
Edward, *Earl of* March, *afterwards King* Edward IV.
Edmund, *Earl of* Rutland,
George, *afterwards Duke of* Clarence,
Richard, *afterwards Duke of* Glocester, } *his Sons.*
Duke of Norfolk,
Marquis of Montague,
Earl of Warwick,
Earl of Pembroke,
Lord Hastings,
Lord Stafford, } *of the Duke of* York's *party.*
Sir John Mortimer,
Sir Hugh Mortimer, } *Uncles to the Duke of* York.
Henry, *Earl of* Richmond, *a Youth.*
Lord Rivers, *Brother to Lady* Grey. *Sir* William Stanley. *Sir* John Montgomery. *Sir* John Somerville. *Tutor to* Rutland. *Mayor of* York. *Lieutenant of the* Tower. *A Nobleman. Two Keepers. A Huntsman. A Son that has killed his Father. A Father that has killed his Son.*

Queen Margaret.
Lady Grey, *afterwards Queen to* Edward IV.
Bona, *Sister to the* French *Queen.*

Soldiers, and other Attendants on King Henry *and King* Edward, *Messengers, Watchmen, &c.*

SCENE, during part of the third Act, in France; *during all the rest of the Play, in* England.

THIRD PART OF

KING HENRY VI.[1]

ACT I.

SCENE I. London. *The Parliament-House.*

Drums. Some Soldiers of York's *Party break in. Then, Enter the Duke of* York, Edward, Richard, Norfolk, Montague, Warwick, *and Others, with white Roses in their Hats.*

War. I wonder, how the king escap'd our hands.
York. While we pursu'd the horsemen of the north,
He slily stole away, and left his men:
Whereat the great lord of Northumberland,
Whose warlike ears could never brook retreat,
'Cheer'd up the drooping army; and himself,
'Lord Clifford, and lord Stafford, all a-breast,
'Charg'd our main battle's front, and, breaking in,
'Were by the swords of common soldiers slain.
Edw. Lord Stafford's father, duke of Buckingham,
'Is either slain, or wounded dangerous:
I cleft his beaver with a downright blow;
'That this is true, father, behold his blood.
[*Showing his bloody Sword.*

[1] *Third Part of King Henry VI.*] This play is only divided from the former for the convenience of exhibition; for the series of action is continued without interruption, nor are any two scenes of any play more closely connected than the first scene of this play with the last of the former. Johnson.

Mont. And, brother, here's the earl of Wiltshire's blood, [*To* York, *showing his.*
Whom I encounter'd as the battles join'd.
Rich. Speak thou for me, and tell them what I did.
[*Throwing down the Duke of* Somerset's *Head.*
* *York.* Richard hath best deserv'd of all my sons.—
What, is your grace dead, my lord of Somerset?
Norf. Such hope have all the line of John of Gaunt!
Rich. Thus do I hope to shake king Henry's head.
War. And so do I.—Victorious prince of York,
Before I see thee seated in that throne
Which now the house of Lancaster usurps,
I vow by heaven, these eyes shall never close.
This is the palace of the fearful king,
' And this the regal seat: possess it York:
For this is thine, and not king Henry's heirs'.
York. Assist me then, sweet Warwick, and I will;
' For hither we have broken in by force.
Norf. We'll all assist you; he, that flies, shall die.
York. Thanks, gentle Norfolk,—Stay by me, my lords;—
' And, soldiers, stay, and lodge by me this night.
War. And, when the king comes, offer him no violence,
' Unless he seek to thrust you out by force.
[*They retire.*
* *York.* The queen, this day, here holds her parliament,
* But little thinks we shall be of her council:
* By words, or blows, here let us win our right.
Rich. Arm'd as we are, let's stay within this house.
War. The bloody parliament shall this be call'd,
Unless Plantagenet, duke of York, be king;
And bashful Henry depos'd, whose cowardice
Hath made us by-words to our enemies.

'*York.* Then leave me not, my lords; be resolute;
I mean to take possession of my right.
War. Neither the king, nor he that loves him best,
'The proudest he that holds up Lancaster,
Dares stir a wing, if Warwick shake his bells.[2]
'I'll plant Plantagenet, root him up who dares:—
Resolve thee, Richard; claim the English crown.
[WARWICK *leads* YORK *to the Throne, who seats himself.*

Flourish. Enter King HENRY, CLIFFORD, NORTHUMBERLAND, WESTMORELAND, EXETER, *and Others, with red Roses in their Hats.*

K. Hen. My lords, look where the sturdy rebel sits,
Even in the chair of state! belike, he means,
(Back'd by the power of Warwick, that false peer,)
To aspire unto the crown, and reign as king.—
Earl of Northumberland, he slew thy father;—
And thine, lord Clifford; and you both have vow'd revenge
On him, his sons, his favourites, and his friends.
'*North.* If I be not, heavens, be reveng'd on me!
Clif. The hope thereof makes Clifford mourn in steel.
West. What, shall we suffer this? let's pluck him down:
'My heart for anger burns, I cannot brook it.
K. Hen. Be patient, gentle earl of Westmoreland.
Clif. Patience is for poltroons, and such as he;
He durst not sit there had your father liv'd.
My gracious lord, here in the parliament
Let us assail the family of York.
North. Well hast thou spoken, cousin; be it so.

[2] —— *if Warwick shake his bells.*] The allusion is to falconry. The hawks had sometimes little bells hung upon them, perhaps to *dare* the birds; that is, to fright them from rising.

K. Hen. Ah, know you not, the city favours them
And they have troops of soldiers at their beck?
Exe. But when the duke is slain, they'll quickly fly.
K. Hen. Far be the thought of this from Henry's hear.,
To make a shambles of the parliament-house!
Cousin of Exeter, frowns, words, and threats,
Shall be the war that Henry means to use.—
[*They advance to the duke.*
Thou factious duke of York, descend my throne,
And kneel for grace and mercy at my feet;
I am thy sovereign.
York. Thou art deceiv'd, I am thine.
Exe. For shame, come down; he made thee duke of York.
York. 'Twas my inheritance, as the earldom was.
Exe. Thy father was a traitor to the crown.
War. Exeter, thou art a traitor to the crown,
In following this usurping Henry.
Clif. Whom should he follow, but his natural king?
War. True, Clifford; and that's Richard, duke of York.
' *K. Hen.* And shall I stand, and thou sit in my throne?
' *York.* It must and shall be so. Content thyself.
War. Be duke of Lancaster, let him be king.
West. He is both king and duke of Lancaster;
And that the lord of Westmoreland shall maintain.
War. And Warwick shall disprove it. You forget,
That we are those, which chas'd you from the field,
And slew your fathers, and with colours spread
March'd through the city to the palace gates.
' *North.* Yes, Warwick, I remember it to my grief;
And, by his soul, thou and thy house shall rue it.

'*West.* Plantagenet, of thee, and these thy sons,
Thy kinsmen, and thy friends, I'll have more lives,
Than drops of blood were in my father's veins.
'*Clif.* Urge it no more; lest that, instead of words,
I send thee, Warwick, such a messenger,
As shall revenge his death, before I stir.
'*War.* Poor Clifford! how I scorn his worthless threats!
York. Will you, we show our title to the crown?
'If not, our swords shall plead it in the field.
K. Hen. What title hast thou, traitor, to the crown?
Thy father was, as thou art, duke of York;
Thy grandfather, Roger Mortimer, earl of March:
I am the son of Henry the fifth,
Who made the Dauphin and the French to stoop,
And seiz'd upon their towns and provinces.
War. Talk not of France, sith[3] thou hast lost it all.
K. Hen. The lord protector lost it, and not I;
When I was crown'd, I was but nine months old.
Rich. You are old enough now, and yet, methinks you lose:—
Father, tear the crown from the usurper's head.
Edw. Sweet father, do so; set it on your head.
Mont. Good brother, [*To* York.] as thou lov'st and honour'st arms,
Let's fight it out, and not stand cavilling thus.
Rich. Sound drums and trumpets, and the king will fly.
York. Sons, peace!
K. Hen. Peace thou! and give king Henry leave to speak.
War. Plantagenet shall speak first:—hear him, lords;

[3] —— *sith* —] i. e. since.

And be you silent and attentive too,
For he, that interrupts him, shall not live.
' *K. Hen.* Think'st thou, that I will leave my kingly
throne,
Wherein my grandsire, and my father sat?
No: first shall war unpeople this my realm;
' Ay, and their colours—often borne in France;
And now in England, to our heart's great sorrow,—
Shall be my winding sheet.—Why faint you, lords?
' My title's good, and better far than his.
War. But prove it, Henry, and thou shalt be king.
K. Hen. Henry the fourth by conquest got the
crown.
York. 'Twas by rebellion against his king.
K. Hen. I know not what to say; my title's weak.
Tell me, may not a king adopt an heir?
York. What then?
' *K. Hen.* An if he may, then am I lawful king:
' For Richard, in the view of many lords,
Resign'd the crown to Henry the fourth;
Whose heir my father was, and I am his.
York. He rose against him, being his sovereign,
And made him to resign his crown perforce.
War. Suppose, my lords, he did it unconstrain'd,
Think you, 'twere prejudicial to his crown?[4]
Exe. No; for he could not so resign his crown,
But that the next heir should succeed and reign.
K. Hen. Art thou against us, duke of Exeter?
Exe. His is the right, and therefore pardon me.
* *York.* Why whisper you, my lords, and answer not?
Exe. My conscience tells me he is lawful king.
K. Hen. All will revolt from me, and turn to him.
North. Plantagenet, for all the claim thou lay'st,
Think not, that Henry shall be so depos'd.

[4] —— *prejudicial to his* crown?] i. e. to the prerogative of the crown.

' *War.* Depos'd he shall be, in despight of all.
North. Thou art deceiv'd: 'tis not thy southern power,
' Of Essex, Norfolk, Suffolk, nor of Kent,—
Which makes thee thus presumptuous and proud,—
Can set the duke up, in despite of me.
Clif. King Henry, be thy title right or wrong,
Lord Clifford vows to fight in thy defence:
May that ground gape, and swallow me alive,
' Where I shall kneel to him that slew my father!
' *K. Hen.* O Clifford, how thy words revive my heart!
York. Henry of Lancaster, resign thy crown:—
What mutter you, or what conspire you, lords?
War. Do right unto this princely duke of York;
Or I will fill the house with armed men,
And, o'er the chair of state, where now he sits,
Write up his title with usurping blood.
[*He stamps, and the Soldiers show themselves.*
' *K. Hen.* My lord of Warwick, hear me but one word;—
' Let me, for this my life-time, reign as king.
York. Confirm the crown to me, and to mine heirs,
And thou shalt reign in quiet while thou liv'st.
K. Hen. I am content: Richard Plantagenet,
Enjoy my kingdom after my decease.
Clif. What wrong is this unto the prince your son?
War. What good is this to England, and himself?
West. Base, fearful, and despairing Henry!
' *Clif.* How hast thou injur'd both thyself and us?
West. I cannot stay to hear these articles.
North. Nor I.
Clif. Come, cousin, let us tell the queen these news.
* *West.* Farewell, faint-hearted and degenerate king,
* In whose cold blood no spark of honour bides.

North. Be thou a prey unto the house of York,
' And die in bands for this unmanly deed!
Clif. In dreadful war may'st thou be overcome!
Or live in peace, abandon'd, and despis'd!
[*Exeunt* NORTHUMBERLAND, CLIFFORD, *and* WESTMORELAND.
* *War.* Turn this way, Henry, and regard them not.
Exe. They seek revenge,[5] and therefore will not yield.
K. Hen. Ah, Exeter!
War. Why should you sigh, my lord?
K. Hen. Not for myself, lord Warwick, but my son,
Whom I unnaturally shall disinherit.
But, be it as it may:—I here entail
' The crown to thee, and to thine heirs for ever;
Conditionally, that here thou take an oath
To cease this civil war, and, whilst I live,
To honour me as thy king and sovereign;
* And neither by treason, nor hostility,
* To seek to put me down, and reign thyself.
York. This oath I willingly take, and will perform.
[*Coming from the Throne.*
War. Long live king Henry!—Plantagenet, embrace him.
' *K. Hen.* And long live thou, and these thy forward sons!
York. Now York and Lancaster are reconcil'd.
Exe. Accurs'd be he, that seeks to make them foes! [*Senet. The Lords come forward.*
' *York.* Farewell, my gracious lord; I'll to my castle.[6]
War. And I'll keep London, with my soldiers.

[5] *They seek revenge,*] They go away, not because they doubt the justice of this determination, but because they have been conquered, and seek to be revenged. They are not influenced by principle, but passion.

[6] —— *I'll to my castle.*] Sandal Castle, near Wakefield, in Yorkshire.

Norf. And I to Norfolk, with my followers.
Mont. And I unto the sea, from whence I came.
[*Exeunt* YORK, *and his Sons*, WARWICK, NORFOLK, MONTAGUE, *Soldiers and Attendants.*
* *K. Hen.* And I, with grief and sorrow, to the court.

Enter Queen MARGARET *and the Prince of* Wales.

Exe. Here comes the queen, whose looks bewray[7] her anger:
I'll steal away.
K. Hen. Exeter, so will I. [*Going.*
' *Q. Mar.* Nay, go not from me, I will follow thee.
K. Hen. Be patient, gentle queen, and I will stay.
' *Q. Mar.* Who can be patient in such extremes?
* Ah, wretched man! 'would I had died a maid,
* And never seen thee, never borne thee son,
* Seeing thou hast prov'd so unnatural a father!
* Hath he deserv'd to lose his birthright thus?
* Had'st thou but lov'd him half so well as I;
* Or felt that pain which I did for him once;
* Or nourish'd him, as I did with my blood;
* Thou wouldst have left thy dearest heart-blood there,
* Rather than made that savage duke thine heir,
* And disinherited thine only son.
* *Prince.* Father, you cannot disinherit me:
* If you be king, why should not I succeed?
* *K. Hen.* Pardon me, Margaret;—pardon me, sweet son;—
* The earl of Warwick, and the duke, enforc'd me.
* *Q. Mar.* Enforc'd thee! art thou king, and wilt be forc'd?
I shame to hear thee speak. Ah, timorous wretch!
Thou hast undone thyself, thy son, and me;

[7] —— *bewray* —] i. e. betray, discover.

‘ And given unto the house of York such head,
* As thou shalt reign but by their sufferance.
* To entail him and his heirs unto the crown,
* What is it, but to make thy sepulchre,[5]
* And creep into it far before thy time?
* Warwick is Chancellor, and the lord of Calais;
Stern Faulconbridge commands the narrow seas;
The duke is made protector of the realm;
‘ And yet shalt thou be safe? * such safety finds
* The trembling lamb, environed with wolves.
‘ Had I been there, which am a silly woman,
‘ The soldiers should have toss'd me on their pikes,
‘ Before I would have granted to that act.
* But thou preferr'st thy life before thine honour:
‘ And seeing thou dost, I here divorce myself,
‘ Both from thy table, Henry, and thy bed,
‘ Until that act of parliament be repeal'd,
‘ Whereby my son is disinherited.
The northern lords, that have forsworn thy colours,
Will follow mine, if once they see them spread:
‘ And spread they shall be; to thy foul disgrace,
‘ And utter ruin of the house of York.
‘ Thus do I leave thee:—Come, son, let's away;
‘ Our army's ready; come, we'll after them.

K. Hen. Stay, gentle Margaret, and hear me speak.

Q. Mar. Thou hast spoke too much already; get thee gone.

K. Hen. Gentle son Edward, thou wilt stay with me?

Q. Mar. Ay, to be murder'd by his enemies.

Prince. When I return with victory from the field,
I'll see your grace: till then, I'll follow her.

Q. Mar. Come, son, away; we may not linger thus.

[*Exeunt Queen* MARGARET, *and the* Prince.

[5] *What is it, but to make thy sepulchre,*] The queen's reproach is founded on a position long received among politicians, that the loss of a king's power is soon followed by loss of life.

' *K. Hen.* Poor queen! how love to me and to her son,
' Hath made her break out into terms of rage!
' Reveng'd may she be on that hateful duke;
* Whose haughty spirit, winged with desire,
* Will cost my crown, and, like an empty eagle,
* Tire on the flesh of me,[9] and of my son!
* The loss of those three lords[1] torments my heart:
* I'll write unto them, and entreat them fair;—
* Come, cousin, you shall be the messenger.
* *Exe.* And I, I hope, shall reconcile them all.
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE II.

A Room in Sandal *Castle, near* Wakefield, *in* Yorkshire.

Enter EDWARD, RICHARD, *and* MONTAGUE.

' *Rich.* Brother, though I be youngest, give me leave.
Edw. No, I can better play the orator.
Mont. But I have reasons strong and forcible.

Enter YORK.

' *York.* Why, how now, sons and brother, at a strife?
' What is your quarrel? how began it first?
' *Edw.* No quarrel, but a slight contention.
York. About what?
' *Rich.* About that which concerns your grace, and us;
' The crown of England, father, which is yours.

[9] Tire *on the flesh of me,*] To *tire* is to fasten, to fix the talons, from the French *tirer;* or rather, to *peck.*

[1] —— *those three lords* —] That is, of Northumberland, Westmoreland, and Clifford, who had left him in disgust.

' *York.* Mine, boy? not till king Henry be dead.
* *Rich.* Your right depends not on his life, or death.
* *Edw.* Now you are heir, therefore enjoy it now:
* By giving the house of Lancaster leave to breathe,
* It will outrun you, father, in the end.
' *York.* I took an oath, that he should quietly reign.
' *Edw.* But, for a kingdom, any oath may be broken:
' I'd break a thousand oaths, to reign one year.
' *Rich.* No; God forbid, your grace should be forsworn.
' *York.* I shall be, if I claim by open war.
' *Rich.* I'll prove the contrary, if you'll hear me speak.
' *York.* Thou canst not, son; it is impossible.
' *Rich.* An oath is of no moment,[2] being not took
' Before a true and lawful magistrate,
' That hath authority over him that swears:
' Henry had none, but did usurp the place;
' Then, seeing 'twas he that made you to depose,
' Your oath, my lord, is vain and frivolous.
' Therefore, to arms. * And, father, do but think,
* How sweet a thing it is to wear a crown;
* Within whose circuit is Elysium,
* And all that poets feign of bliss and joy.
* Why do we linger thus? I cannot rest,
* Until the white rose, that I wear, be died
* Even in the lukewarm blood of Henry's heart.
' *York.* Richard, enough; I will be king, or die.—
' Brother, thou shalt to London presently,
' And whet on Warwick to this enterprise.—

[2] *An oath is of no moment,*] The obligation of an oath is here eluded by very despicable sophistry. A lawful magistrate alone has the power to exact an oath, but the oath derives no part of its force from the magistrate. The plea against the obligation of an oath obliging to maintain an usurper, taken from the unlawfulness of the oath itself in the foregoing play, was rational and just.

'Thou, Richard, shalt unto the duke of Norfolk,
'And tell him privily of our intent.—
'You, Edward, shall unto my lord Cobham,
With whom the Kentishmen will willingly rise:
'In them I trust; for they are soldiers,
'Witty and courteous, liberal, full of spirit.—
'While you are thus employ'd, what resteth more,
'But that I seek occasion how to rise;
'And yet the king not privy to my drift,
'Nor any of the house of Lancaster?

Enter a Messenger.

'But, stay; What news? why com'st thou in such post?
'*Mess.* The queen, with all the northern earls and lords,[3]
'Intend here to besiege you in your castle:
'She is hard by with twenty thousand men;
'And therefore fortify your hold, my lord.
* *York.* Ay, with my sword. What! think'st thou, that we fear them?—
'Edward and Richard, you shall stay with me;—
'My brother Montague shall post to London:
* Let noble Warwick, Cobham, and the rest,
* Whom we have left protectors of the king,
* With powerful policy strengthen themselves,
* And trust not simple Henry, nor his oaths.
* *Mont.* Brother, I go; I'll win them, fear it not:
* And thus most humbly I do take my leave.
[*Exit.*

[3] *The queen, with all,* &c.] I know not whether the author intended any moral instruction, but he that reads this has a striking admonition against that precipitancy by which men often use unlawful means to do that which a little delay would put honestly in their power. Had York staid but a few moments, he had saved his cause from the stain of perjury. JOHNSON.
The whole, however, is a violation of historic truth.

Enter Sir JOHN *and Sir* HUGH MORTIMER.

York. Sir John, and Sir Hugh Mortimer, mine uncles!
'You are come to Sandal in a happy hour;
The army of the queen mean to besiege us.
Sir John. She shall not need, we'll meet her in the field.
'*York.* What, with five thousand men?
Rich. Ay, with five hundred, father, for a need.
A woman's general; what should we fear?
[*A March afar off.*
'*Edw.* I hear their drums; let's set our men in order;
'And issue forth, and bid them battle straight.
'*York.* Five men to twenty!—though the odds be great,
'I doubt not, uncle, of our victory.
'Many a battle have I won in France,
'When as the enemy hath been ten to one;
'Why should I not now have the like success?
[*Alarum. Exeunt.*

SCENE III.

Plains near Sandal *Castle.*

Alarums: Excursions. Enter RUTLAND, *and his* Tutor.

'*Rut.* Ah, whither shall I fly to 'scape their hands!
Ah, tutor! look, where bloody Clifford comes!

Enter CLIFFORD, *and Soldiers.*

Clif. Chaplain, away! thy priesthood saves thy life.
As for the brat of this accursed duke,

Whose father[4] slew my father,—he shall die.
Tut. And I, my lord, will bear him company.
Clif. Soldiers, away with him.
' *Tut.* Ah, Clifford! murder not this innocent child,
' Lest thou be hated both of God and man.
[*Exit, forced off by Soldiers.*
Clif. How now! is he dead already? Or, is it fear,
That makes him close his eyes?—I'll open them.
' *Rut.* So looks the pent-up lion o'er the wretch
That trembles under his devouring paws:
And so he walks, insulting o'er his prey;
' And so he comes to rend his limbs asunder.—
' Ah, gentle Clifford, kill me with thy sword,
And not with such a cruel threat'ning look.
Sweet Clifford, hear me speak before I die;—
I am too mean a subject for thy wrath,
Be thou reveng'd on men, and let me live.
Clif. In vain thou speak'st, poor boy; my father's blood
Hath stopp'd the passage where thy words should enter.
Rut. Then let my father's blood open it again;
He is a man, and, Clifford, cope with him.
Clif. Had I thy brethren here, their lives, and thine
Were not revenge sufficient for me;
No, if I digg'd up thy forefathers' graves,
And hung their rotten coffins up in chains,
It could not slake mine ire, nor ease my heart.
The sight of any of the house of York
Is as a fury to torment my soul;
' And till I root out their accursed line,
' And leave not one alive, I live in hell.
Therefore—— [*Lifting his hand.*

[4] *Whose father* —] i. e. the father of which brat, namely the Duke of York.

[redacted] before I take my death:—
[redacted] pity me!
[redacted] affords.
[redacted] Why wilt thou slay
[redacted]
[redacted] ere I was born.
[redacted] me;
[redacted] God is just,—
[redacted]
[redacted]
[redacted] no cause.
[redacted]
[redacted] die.

CLIFFORD *stabs him.*

[redacted] *into thee!*

[*Dies.*

[redacted] to my blade,
[redacted] all thy blood,
[redacted] wipe off both.

[*Exit.*

SCENE IV.

[redacted]

Alarum. Enter YORK.

York. The army of the queen hath got the field:
My uncles both are slain in rescuing me;
And all my followers to the eager foe
Turn back, and fly, like ships before the wind,
Or lambs pursu'd by hungry-starved wolves.
My sons—God knows, what hath bechanced them:
But this I know,—they have demean'd themselves

Like men born to renown, by life, or death.
'Three times did Richard make a lane to me;
And thrice cried,—*Courage, father! fight it out!*
'And full as oft came Edward to my side,
With purple faulchion, painted to the hilt
'In blood of those that had encounter'd him:
'And when the hardiest warriors did retire,
'Richard cried,—*Charge! and give no foot of ground!*
'And cried,—*A crown, or else a glorious tomb!*
'*A sceptre, or an earthly sepulchre!*
With this, we charg'd again: but, out, alas!
'We bodg'd again;[5] as I have seen a swan
'With bootless labour swim against the tide,
And spend her strength with over-matching waves.
[*A short Alarum within.*
'Ah, hark! the fatal followers do pursue;
'And I am faint, and cannot fly their fury:
'And, were I strong, I would not shun their fury:
'The sands are number'd, that make up my life;
'Here must I stay, and here my life must end.

Enter Queen MARGARET, CLIFFORD, NORTHUMBERLAND, *and Soldiers.*

'Come, bloody Clifford,—rough Northumberland,—
'I dare your quenchless fury to more rage;
'I am your butt, and I abide your shot.
North. Yield to our mercy, proud Plantagenet.
Clif. Ay, to such mercy, as his ruthless arm,
With downright payment show'd unto my father.
Now Phaeton hath tumbled from his car,
And made an evening at the noontide prick.[6]
York. My ashes, as the phœnix, may bring forth
'A bird that will revenge upon you all:

[5] *We* bodg'd *again;*] i. e. *we boggled, made bad or bungling work of our attempt to rally.*
[6] —— *noontide prick.*] Or, noontide point on the dial.

'And, in that hope, I throw mine eyes to heaven,
Scorning whate'er you can afflict me with.
'Why come you not! what! multitudes, and fear?
Clif. So cowards fight, when they can fly no further;
'So doves do peck the falcon's piercing talons;
So desperate thieves, all hopeless of their lives,
Breathe out invectives 'gainst the officers.
York. O, Clifford, but bethink thee once again,
'And in thy thought o'er-run my former time:
* And, if thou canst for blushing, view this face;
And bite thy tongue, that slanders him with cowardice,
'Whose frown hath made thee faint and fly ere this.
Clif. I will not bandy with thee word for word;
But buckle with thee blows, twice two for one.
[*Draws.*
Q. Mar. Hold, valiant Clifford! for a thousand causes,
I would prolong awhile the traitor's life:—
Wrath makes him deaf: speak thou, Northumberland.
North. Hold, Clifford; do not honour him so much,
To prick thy finger, though to wound his heart:
What valour were it, when a cur doth grin,
For one to thrust his hand between his teeth,
When he might spurn him with his foot away?
It is war's prize[7] to take all vantages;
'And ten to one is no impeach of valour.
[*They lay hands on* YORK, *who struggles.*
Clif. Ay, ay, so strives the woodcock with the gin.
North. So doth the coney struggle in the net.
[YORK *is taken prisoner.*
York. So triumph thieves upon their conquer'd booty;

[7] *It is war's* prize —] It is the estimation of people at war; the settled opinion.

So true men yield, with robbers so o'er-match'd.
North. What would your grace have done unto him now?
Q. Mar. Brave warriors, Clifford, and Northumberland,
Come make him stand upon this molehill here;
'That raught[8] at mountains with outstretched arms,
Yet parted but the shadow with his hand.—
* What! was it you, that would be England's king?
Was't you that revell'd in our parliament,
And made a preachment of your high descent?
Where are your mess of sons to back you now?
The wanton Edward, and the lusty George?
'And where's that valiant crook-back prodigy,
Dicky your boy, that, with his grumbling voice,
Was wont to cheer his dad in mutinies?
Or, with the rest, where is your darling Rutland?
Look, York; I stain'd this napkin[9] with the blood
That valiant Clifford, with his rapier's point,
Made issue from the bosom of the boy:
And, if thine eyes can water for his death,
I give thee this to dry thy cheeks withal.
'Alas, poor York! but that I hate thee deadly,
I should lament thy miserable state.
I pr'ythee, grieve, to make me merry, York;
Stamp, rave, and fret, that I may sing and dance.
What, hath thy fiery heart so parch'd thine entrails,
That not a tear can fall for Rutland's death?
* Why art thou patient, man? thou should'st be mad;
* And I, to make thee mad, do mock thee thus.
Thou would'st be fee'd, I see, to make me sport;
York cannot speak, unless he wear a crown.—
A crown for York;—and, lords, bow low to him.—

[8] *That raught* —] i. e. That *reach'd*. The antient preterite and participle passive of *reach*.
[9] —— *this* napkin —] A *napkin* is a handkerchief.

Hold you his hands, whilst I do set it on.—
[*Putting a paper Crown on his Head.*
Ay, marry, sir, now looks he like a king!
Ay, this is he that took king Henry's chair;
And this is he was his adopted heir.—
But how is it that great Plantagenet
Is crown'd so soon, and broke his solemn oath?
As I bethink me, you should not be king,
Till our king Henry had shook hands with death.
And will you pale[1] your head in Henry's glory
And rob his temples of the diadem,
Now in his life, against your holy oath?
O, 'tis a fault too too unpardonable!—
Off with the crown; and, with the crown, his head;
And, whilst we breathe, take time to do him dead.[2]

Clif. That is my office, for my father's sake.

Q. Mar. Nay, stay; let's hear the orisons he makes.

York. She-wolf of France, but worse than wolves of France,
Whose tongue more poisons than the adder's tooth!
How ill-beseeming is it in thy sex,
To triumph like an Amazonian trull,
Upon their woes, whom fortune captivates?
But that thy face is, visor-like, unchanging,
Made impudent with use of evil deeds,
I would assay, proud queen, to make thee blush:
To tell thee whence thou cam'st, of whom deriv'd,
Were shame enough to shame thee, wert thou not shameless.
Thy father bears the type[3] of king of Naples,
Of both the Sicils, and Jerusalem;
Yet not so wealthy as an English yeoman.

[1] *And will you* pale] i. e. impale, encircle with a crown.
[2] —— *to do him dead.*] To kill him.
[3] —— *the* type —] i. e. the distinguishing mark; an obsolete use of the word.

Hath that poor monarch taught thee to insult?
It needs not, nor it boots thee not, proud queen;
Unless the adage must be verified,—
That beggars, mounted, run their horse to death.
'Tis beauty, that doth oft make women proud;
But, God he knows, thy share thereof is small:
'Tis virtue, that doth make them most admir'd;
The contrary doth make thee wonder'd at:
'Tis government, that makes them seem divine;[4]
The want thereof makes thee abominable:
Thou art as opposite to every good,
As the Antipodes are unto us,
Or as the south to the septentrion.[5]
O, tiger's heart, wrapp'd in a woman's hide!
How could'st thou drain the life-blood of the child,
To bid the father wipe his eyes withal,
And yet be seen to bear a woman's face?
Women are soft, mild, pitiful, and flexible;
'Thou stern, obdurate, flinty, rough, remorseless.
'Bid'st thou me rage? why, now thou hast thy wish:
'Would'st have me weep? why, now thou hast thy will:
'For raging wind blows up incessant showers,
And, when the rage allays, the rain begins.
These tears are my sweet Rutland's obsequies;
'And every drop cries vengeance for his death,—
'Gainst thee, fell Clifford,—and thee false French-woman.

North. Beshrew me, but his passions move me so,
That hardly can I check my eyes from tears.

York. That face of his the hungry cannibals
Would not have touch'd, would not have stain'd with blood:

[4] *'Tis* government, *that makes them seem divine;*] *Government*, in the language of that time, signified evenness of temper, and decency of manners. JOHNSON.

[5] —— *septentrion.*] i. e. the North. *Septentrio*, Lat.

But you are more inhuman, more inexorable,—
O, ten times more,—than tigers of Hyrcania.
See, ruthless queen, a hapless father's tears:
This cloth thou dipp'dst in blood of my sweet boy,
And I with tears do wash the blood away.
Keep thou the napkin, and go boast of this:
[*He gives back the Handkerchief.*
And, if thou tell'st the heavy story right,
Upon my soul, the hearers will shed tears;
Yea, even my foes will shed fast-falling tears,
And say,—Alas, it was a piteous deed!—
There, take the crown, and, with the crown, my curse;
And, in thy need, such comfort come to thee,
As now I reap at thy too cruel hand!—
Hard-hearted Clifford, take me from the world;
My soul to heaven, my blood upon your heads!

North. Had he been slaughter-man to all my kin,
I should not for my life but weep with him,
To see how inly sorrow gripes his soul.

Q. Mar. What, weeping-ripe, my lord Northumberland?
Think but upon the wrong he did us all,
And that will quickly dry thy melting tears.

Clif. Here's for my oath, here's for my father's death. [*Stabbing him.*

Q. Mar. And here's to right our gentle-hearted king. [*Stabbing him.*

York. Open thy gate of mercy, gracious God!
My soul flies through these wounds to seek out thee. [*Dies.*

Q. Mar. Off with his head, and set it on York gates;
So York may overlook the town of York. [*Exeunt.*

ACT II.

SCENE I. A Plain near Mortimer's *Cross in* Herefordshire.

Drums. Enter EDWARD, *and* RICHARD, *with their Forces, marching.*

* *Edw.* I wonder, how our princely father 'scap'd;
* Or whether he be 'scap'd away, or no,
* From Clifford's and Northumberland's pursuit;
* Had he been ta'en, we should have heard the news;
Had he been slain, we should have heard the news;
* Or, had he 'scap'd, methinks, we should have heard
* The happy tidings of his good escape.—
' How fares my brother? why is he so sad?
Rich. I cannot joy, until I be resolv'd
Where our right valiant father is become.
' I saw him in the battle range about;
' And watch'd him, how he singled Clifford forth.
' Methought, he bore him[6] in the thickest troop,
As doth a lion in a herd of neat:
* Or as a bear, encompass'd round with dogs;
* Who having pinch'd a few, and made them cry,
* The rest stand all aloof, and bark at him.
* So far'd our father with his enemies;
' So fled his enemies my warlike father;
' Methinks, 'tis prize enough to be his son.
See, how the morning opes her golden gates,
And takes her farewell of the glorious sun!'

[6] *Methought, he* bore him—] i. e. he demeaned himself.

[7] *And takes her farewell of the glorious sun!*] Aurora takes for a time her farewell of the sun, when she dismisses him to his diurnal course.

* How well resembles it the prime of youth,
* Trimm'd like a younker, prancing to his love!
Edw. Dazzle mine eyes, or do I see three suns?
Rich. Three glorious suns, each one a perfect sun;
Not separated with the racking clouds,[8]
But sever'd in a pale clear-shining sky.
See, see! they join, embrace, and seem to kiss,
As if they vow'd some league inviolable:
Now are they but one lamp, one light, one sun.
In this the heaven figures some event.
* *Edw.* 'Tis wondrous strange, the like yet never heard of.
I think, it cites us, brother, to the field;
That we, the sons of brave Plantagenet,
' Each one already blazing by our meeds,[9]
Should, notwithstanding, join our lights together,
' And over-shine the earth, as this the world.
' Whate'er it bodes, henceforward will I bear
Upon my target three fair shining suns.
* *Rich.* Nay, bear three daughters;—by your leave I speak it,
* You love the breeder better than the male.

Enter a Messenger.

' But what art thou, whose heavy looks foretel
' Some dreadful story hanging on thy tongue?
Mess. Ah, one that was a woful looker on,
When as the noble duke of York was slain,
* Your princely father, and my loving lord.
' *Edw.* O, speak no more![1] for I have heard too much.

[8] —— *the* racking *clouds,*] i. e. the clouds in rapid, tumultuary motion.

[9] —— *blazing by our* meeds,] *Meed* here means *merit*.

[1] *O, speak no more!*] The generous tenderness of Edward, and savage fortitude of Richard, are well distinguished by their different reception of their father's death. JOHNSON.

'*Rich.* Say how he died, for I will hear it all.
'*Mess.* Environed he was with many foes;
* And stood against them as the hope of Troy[2]
* Against the Greeks, that would have enter'd Troy.
* But Hercules himself must yield to odds;
* And many strokes, though with a little axe,
* Hew down and fell the hardest-timber'd oak.
'By many hands your father was subdu'd;
'But only slaughter'd by the ireful arm
'Of unrelenting Clifford, and the queen:
'Who crown'd the gracious duke in high despite;
'Laugh'd in his face; and, when with grief he wept,
'The ruthless queen gave him, to dry his cheeks,
'A napkin steeped in the harmless blood
'Of sweet young Rutland, by rough Clifford slain:
'And, after many scorns, many foul taunts,
'They took his head, and on the gates of York
'They set the same; and there it doth remain,
'The saddest spectacle that e'er I view'd.
Edw. Sweet duke of York, our prop to lean upon;
'Now thou art gone, we have no staff, no stay!—
* O Clifford, boist'rous Clifford, thou hast slain
* The flower of Europe for his chivalry;
* And treacherously hast thou vanquish'd him,
* For, hand to hand, he would have vanquish'd thee!—
Now my soul's palace is become a prison:
Ah, would she break from hence! that this my body
'Might in the ground be closed up in rest:
'For never henceforth shall I joy again,
'Never, O never, shall I see more joy.
'*Rich.* I cannot weep; for all my body's moisture
Scarce serves to quench my furnace-burning heart:
* Nor can my tongue unload my heart's great burden;

[2] —— *the hope of Troy*—] Hector.

* For self-same wind, that I should speak withal,
* Is kindling coals, that fire all my breast,
* And burn me up with flames, that tears would quench.
* To weep, is to make less the depth of grief:
* Tears, then, for babes; blows, and revenge, for me!—
' Richard, I bear thy name, I'll venge thy death,
' Or die renowned by attempting it.

Edw. His name that valiant duke hath left with thee;
' His dukedom and his chair with me is left.

Rich. Nay, if thou be that princely eagle's bird,
Show thy descent by gazing 'gainst the sun:
For chair and dukedom, throne and kingdom say;
Either that is thine, or else thou wert not his.

March. Enter WARWICK *and* MONTAGUE, *with Forces.*

War. How now, fair lords? What fare? what news abroad?

' *Rich.* Great lord of Warwick, if we should recount
Our baleful news, and, at each word's deliverance,
Stab poniards in our flesh till all were told,
The words would add more anguish than the wounds.
O valiant lord, the duke of York is slain.

Edw. O Warwick! Warwick! that Plantagenet,
Which held thee dearly, as his soul's redemption,
Is by the stern lord Clifford done to death.

War. Ten days ago I drown'd these news in tears:
And now, to add more measure to your woes,
I come to tell you things since then befall'n.
After the bloody fray at Wakefield fought,
Where your brave father breath'd his latest gasp,
Tidings, as swiftly as the posts could run,
Were brought me of your loss, and his depart.

I then in London, keeper of the king,
Muster'd my soldiers, gather'd flocks of friends,
And very well appointed, as I thought,
March'd towards Saint Alban's to intercept the queen,
Bearing the king in my behalf along:
For by my scouts I was advértised,
That she was coming with a full intent
To dash our late decree in parliament,
'Touching king Henry's oath, and your succession.
Short tale to make,—we at Saint Alban's met,
Our battles join'd, and both sides fiercely fought:
But, whether 'twas the coldness of the king,
Who look'd full gently on his warlike queen,
That robb'd my soldiers of their hated spleen;
Or whether 'twas report of her success;
Or more than common fear of Clifford's rigour,
'Who thunders to his captives—blood and death,
I cannot judge: but, to conclude with truth,
Their weapons like to lightning came and went;
Our soldiers'—like the night-owl's lazy flight,
'Or like a lazy thrasher with a flail,—
Fell gently down, as if they struck their friends.
I cheer'd them up with justice of our cause,
With promise of high pay, and great rewards:
But all in vain; they had no heart to fight,
And we, in them, no hope to win the day,
So that we fled; the king, unto the queen;
Lord George your brother, Norfolk, and myself,
In haste, post-haste, are come to join with you;
For in the marches here, we heard, you were,
Making another head to fight again.
'*Edw.* Where is the duke of Norfolk, gentle Warwick?
And when came George from Burgundy to England?
'*War.* Some six miles off the duke is with the soldiers:

And for your brother, he was lately sent
From your kind aunt, duchess of Burgundy,
' With aid of soldiers to this needful war.
Rich. 'Twas odds, belike, when valiant Warwick fled:
Oft have I heard his praises in pursuit,
But ne'er, till now, his scandal of retire.
War. Nor now my scandal, Richard, dost thou hear:
For thou shalt know, this strong right hand of mine
Can pluck the diadem from faint Henry's head,
And wring the awful scepter from his fist;
Were he as famous and as bold in war,
As he is fam'd for mildness, peace, and prayer.
Rich. I know it well, lord Warwick! blame me not;
'Tis love, I bear thy glories, makes me speak.
But, in this troublous time, what's to be done?
Shall we go throw away our coats of steel,
And wrap our bodies in black mourning gowns,
Numb'ring our Ave-Maries with our beads?
Or shall we on the helmets of our foes
Tell our devotion with revengeful arms?
If for the last, say,—Ay, and to it, lords.
War. Why, therefore Warwick came to seek you out;
And therefore comes my brother Montague.
Attend me, lords. The proud insulting queen,
With Clifford, and the haught Northumberland,[3]
And of their feather, many more proud birds,
Have wrought the easy-melting king like wax.
He swore consent to your succession,
His oath enrolled in the parliament;
And now to London all the crew are gone,
To frustrate both his oath, and what beside

[3] —— haught *Northumberland,*] i. e. high spirited, or haughty.

May make against the house of Lancaster.
' Their power, I think, is thirty thousand strong:
Now, if the help of Norfolk, and myself,
With all the friends that thou, brave earl of March,
Amongst the loving Welshmen canst procure,
' Will but amount to five and twenty thousand,
Why, *Via!* to London will we march amain;
And once again bestride our foaming steeds,
' And once again cry—Charge upon our foes!
But never once again turn back, and fly.
Rich. Ay, now, methinks, I hear great Warwick speak:
Ne'er may he live to see a sunshine day,
' That cries—Retire, if Warwick bid him stay.
Edw. Lord Warwick, on thy shoulder will I lean;
' And when thou fall'st, (as God forbid the hour!)
Must Edward fall, which peril heaven forefend!
War. No longer earl of March, but duke of York;
' The next degree is, England's royal throne:
For king of England shalt thou be proclaim'd
In every borough as we pass along;
And he that throws not up his cap for joy,
' Shall for the fault make forfeit of his head.
King Edward,—valiant Richard,—Montague,—
Stay we no longer dreaming of renown,
' But sound the trumpets, and about our task.
* *Rich.* Then, Clifford, were thy heart as hard as steel,
* (As thou hast shown it flinty by thy deeds,)
* I come to pierce it,—or to give thee mine.
* *Edw.* Then strike up, drums;—God, and Saint George, for us!

Enter a Messenger.

War. How now? what news?
Mess. The duke of Norfolk sends you word by me,
The queen is coming with a puissant host;

And craves your company for speedy counsel.
' *War.* Why then it sorts,[4] brave warriors: Let's away. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE II.

Before York.

Enter King HENRY, *Queen* MARGARET, *the Prince of* Wales, CLIFFORD, *and* NORTHUMBERLAND, *with Forces.*

Q. Mar. Welcome, my lord, to this brave town of York.
Yonder's the head of that arch-enemy,
That sought to be encompass'd with your crown:
' Doth not the object cheer your heart, my lord?
' *K. Hen.* Ay, as the rocks cheer them that fear their wreck;—
To see this sight, it irks my very soul.—
Withhold revenge, dear God! 'tis not my fault,
Not wittingly have I infring'd my vow.
Clif. My gracious liege, this too much lenity
And harmful pity, must be laid aside.
To whom do lions cast their gentle looks?
Not to the beast that would usurp their den.
Whose hand is that the forest bear doth lick?
Not his, that spoils her young before her face.
Who 'scapes the lurking serpent's mortal sting?
Not he, that sets his foot upon her back.
The smallest worm will turn, being trodden on;
' And doves will peck, in safeguard of their brood.
Ambitious York did level at thy crown,
Thou smiling, while he knit his angry brows:
He, but a duke, would have his son a king,
And raise his issue, like a loving sire;

[4] *Why then it sorts,*] Why then things are as they should be.

Thou, being a king, bless'd with a goodly son,
Didst yield consent to disinherit him,
'Which argued thee a most unloving father.
Unreasonable creatures feed their young:
And though man's face be fearful to their eyes,
Yet, in protection of their tender ones,
Who hath not seen them (even with those wings
'Which sometime they have us'd with fearful flight,)
Make war with him that climb'd unto their nest,
Offering their own lives in their young's defence?
For shame, my liege, make them your precedent!
Were it not pity that this goodly boy
Should lose his birthright by his father's fault;
And long hereafter say unto his child,—
What my great-grandfather and grandsire got,
My careless father fondly[5] *gave away?*
Ah, what a shame were this! Look on the boy;
And let his manly face, which promiseth
Successful fortune, steel thy melting heart,
To hold thine own, and leave thine own with him.

K. Hen. Full well hath Clifford play'd the orator,
Inferring arguments of mighty force.
'But, Clifford, tell me, didst thou never hear,—
That things ill got had ever bad success?[6]
And happy always was it for that son,
Whose father[7] for his hoarding went to hell?
I'll leave my son my virtuous deeds behind;
And 'would, my father had left me no more!
For all the rest is held at such a rate,
'As brings a thousand-fold more care to keep,

[5] ——*fondly*—] i. e. foolishly.

[6] —— *didst thou never hear*, —
That things ill got had ever bad success? &c.] The proverb quoted by his majesty on this occasion, seems to militate directly against his own argument, and shows that things ill got might have good success. M. Mason.

[7] *Whose father*, &c.] Alluding to a common proverb:
"Happy the child whose father went to the devil."

'Than in possession any jot of pleasure.
Ah, cousin York! 'would thy best friends did know,
'How it doth grieve me that thy head is here!
'*Q. Mar.* My lord, cheer up your spirits; our foes are nigh,
'And this soft courage makes your followers faint.
'You promis'd knighthood to our forward son;
'Unsheath your sword, and dub him presently.—
Edward, kneel down.
K. Hen. Edward Plantagenet, arise a knight;
And learn this lesson,—Draw thy sword in right.
Prince. My gracious father, by your kingly leave,
I'll draw it as apparent to the crown,
And in that quarrel use it to the death.
Clif. Why, that is spoken like a toward prince.

Enter a Messenger.

Mess. Royal commanders, be in readiness:
'For, with a band of thirty thousand men,
Comes Warwick, backing of the duke of York;
And, in the towns as they do march along,
Proclaims him king, and many fly to him:
'Darraign[8] your battle, for they are at hand.
Clif. I would, your highness would depart the field;
The queen hath best success when you are absent.
Q. Mar. Ay, good my lord, and leave us to our fortune.
K. Hen. Why, that's my fortune too; therefore I'll stay.
North. Be it with resolution then to fight.
Prince. My royal father, cheer these noble lords,
And hearten those that fight in your defence:
Unsheath your sword, good father; cry, *Saint George!*

[8] *Darraign*—] That is, *Range* your host, put your host in order.

March. *Enter* EDWARD, GEORGE, RICHARD, WARWICK, NORFOLK, MONTAGUE, *and Soldiers.*

' *Edw.* Now, perjur'd Henry! wilt thou kneel for grace,
' And set thy diadem upon my head;
* Or bide the mortal fortune of the field?
Q. Mar. Go, rate thy minions, proud insulting boy!
' Becomes it thee to be thus bold in terms,
' Before thy sovereign, and thy lawful king?
Edw. I am his king, and he should bow his knee;
I was adopted heir by his consent:
Since when, his oath is broke; for, as I hear,
You—that are king, though he do wear the crown,—
Have caus'd him, by new act of parliament,
' To blot out me, and put his own son in.
' *Clif.* And reason too;
Who should succeed the father, but the son?
' *Rich.* Are you there, butcher?—O, I cannot speak!
' *Clif.* Ay, crook-back; here I stand, to answer thee,
' Or any he the proudest of thy sort.
Rich. 'Twas you that kill'd young Rutland, was it not?
Clif. Ay, and old York, and yet not satisfied.
Rich. For God's sake, lords, give signal to the fight.
War. What say'st thou, Henry, wilt thou yield the crown?
' *Q. Mar.* Why, how now, long-tongu'd Warwick? dare you speak?
When you and I met at Saint Alban's last,
Your legs did better service than your hands.
War. Then 'twas my turn to fly, and now 'tis thine.

Clif. You said so much before, and yet you fled.
War. 'Twas not your valour, Clifford, drove me thence.
' *North.* No, nor your manhood, that durst make you stay.
Rich. Northumberland, I hold thee reverently;—
Break off the parle; for scarce I can refrain
The execution of my big-swoln heart
Upon that Clifford, that cruel child-killer.
Clif. I slew thy father: Call'st thou him a child?
Rich. Ay, like a dastard, and a treacherous coward,
As thou didst kill our tender brother Rutland;
But, ere sun-set, I'll make thee curse the deed.
K. Hen. Have done with words, my lords, and hear me speak.
Q. Mar. Defy them then, or else hold close thy lips.
K. Hen. I pr'ythee, give no limits to my tongue;
I am a king, and privileg'd to speak.
Clif. My liege, the wound, that bred this meeting here,
Cannot be cur'd by words; therefore be still.
Rich. Then, executioner, unsheath thy sword:
By him that made us all, I am resolv'd,[9]
' That Clifford's manhood lies upon his tongue.
' *Edw.* Say, Henry, shall I have my right, or no?
A thousand men have broke their fasts to-day,
That ne'er shall dine, unless thou yield the crown.
War. If thou deny, their blood upon thy head;
For York in justice puts his armour on.
' *Prince.* If that be right, which Warwick says is right,
There is no wrong, but every thing is right.
Rich. Whoever got thee, there thy mother stands;
For, well I wot, thou hast thy mother's tongue.

[9] —— *I am resolv'd,*] It is my firm persuasion; I am no longer in doubt.

Q. Mar. But thou art neither like thy sire, nor dam;
But like a foul misshapen stigmatick,
Mark'd by the destinies to be avoided,
'As venom toads, or lizards' dreadful stings.
Rich. Iron of Naples, hid with English gilt,
Whose father bears the title of a king,
(As if a channel should be call'd the sea,)[1]
'Sham'st thou not, knowing whence thou art extraught,
'To let thy tongue detect[2] thy base-born heart?
Edw. A wisp of straw[3] were worth a thousand crowns,
To make this shameless callet[4] know herself.—
* Helen of Greece was fairer far than thou,
* Although thy husband may be Menelaus;[5]
* And ne'er was Agamemnon's brother wrong'd
* By that false woman, as this king by thee.
'His father revell'd in the heart of France,
And tam'd the king, and made the Dauphin stoop;
And, had he match'd according to his state,
He might have kept that glory to this day:
But, when he took a beggar to his bed,
And grac'd thy poor sire with his bridal day;
'Even then that sunshine brew'd a shower for him,
'That wash'd his father's fortunes forth of France,
And heap'd sedition on his crown at home.

[1] *(As if a* channel *should be call'd the sea,)*] A *channel*, in our author's time, signified what we now call a *kennel*.

[2] *To let thy tongue detect*—] To show thy meanness of birth by the indecency of language with which thou railest at my deformity. JOHNSON.

[3] *A wisp of straw*—] An instrument of correction that might disgrace, but not hurt her. A wispe was also the punishment for a scold.

[4] *To make this shameless* callet—] *Callet*, a lewd woman, a drab, perhaps so called from the French *calote*, which was a sort of head-dress worn by country girls.

[5] *Menelaus;*] i. e. a cuckold.

'For what hath broach'd this tumult, but thy pride?
Hadst thou been meek, our title still had slept;
And we, in pity of the gentle king,
Had slipp'd our claim until another age.

'*Geo.* But, when we saw our sunshine made thy spring,
'And that thy summer bred us no increase,[5]
We set the axe to thy usurping root:
And though the edge hath something hit ourselves,
'Yet, know thou, since we have begun to strike,
'We'll never leave, till we have hewn thee down,
Or bath'd thy growing with our heated bloods.

Edw. And, in this resolution, I defy thee;
Not willing any longer conference,
Since thou deny'st the gentle king to speak.—
Sound trumpets!—let our bloody colours wave!—
And either victory, or else a grave.

Q. Mar. Stay, Edward.

Edw. No, wrangling woman; we'll no longer stay:
These words will cost ten thousand lives to-day.
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE III.

A Field of Battle[6] *between* Towton *and* Saxton *in* Yorkshire.

Alarums: Excursions. Enter WARWICK.

'*War.* Forspent with toil, as runners with a race,
I lay me down a little while to breathe:

[5] —— *we saw our sunshine made thy spring,*
And that thy summer bred us no increase,] When we saw that by favouring thee we made thee grow in fortune, but that we received no advantage from thy fortune flourishing by our favour, we then resolved to destroy thee, and determined to try some other means, though our first efforts have failed.

[6] *A Field of Battle,* &c.] We should read *near* Towton. Shakspeare has here, perhaps, intentionally thrown three different actions into one.

For strokes receiv'd, and many blows repaid,
Have robb'd my strong-knit sinews of their strength,
' And, spite of spite, needs must I rest awhile.

Enter EDWARD, *running*.

Edw. Smile, gentle heaven! or strike, ungentle death!
' For this world frowns, and Edward's sun is clouded.
War. How now, my lord? what hap? what hope of good?

Enter GEORGE.

* *Geo.* Our hap is loss, our hope but sad despair;
' Our ranks are broke, and ruin follows us:
' What counsel give you, whither shall we fly?
' *Edw.* Bootless is flight, they follow us with wings;
' And weak we are, and cannot shun pursuit.

Enter RICHARD.

' *Rich.* Ah, Warwick, why hast thou withdrawn thyself?
' Thy brother's blood the thirsty earth hath drunk,
' Broach'd with the steely point of Clifford's lance:
' And, in the very pangs of death, he cried,—
' Like to a dismal clangor heard from far,—
' *Warwick, revenge! brother, revenge my death!*
' So underneath the belly of their steeds,
' That stain'd their fetlocks in his smoking blood,
' The noble gentleman gave up the ghost.
' *War.* Then let the earth be drunken with our blood:
I'll kill my horse because I will not fly.
* Why stand we like soft-hearted women here,
* Wailing our losses, whiles the foe doth rage;
* And look upon,[7] as if the tragedy

[7] *And* look upon,] And are mere spectators.

* Were play'd in jest by counterfeiting actors?
' Here on my knee I vow to God above,
' I'll never pause again, never stand still,
' Till either death hath clos'd these eyes of mine,
' Or fortune given me measure of revenge.
Edw. O Warwick, I do bend my knee with thine;
' And, in this vow, do chain my soul to thine.—
* And, ere my knee rise from the earth's cold face,
* I throw my hands, mine eyes, my heart to thee,
Thou setter up and plucker down of kings!
' Beseeching thee,[8]—if with thy will it stands,
' That to my foes this body must be prey,—
' Yet that thy brazen gates of heaven may ope,
' And give sweet passage to my sinful soul!—
' Now, lords, take leave until we meet again,
Where-e'er it be, in heaven, or on earth.
' *Rich.* Brother, give me thy hand;—and, gentle Warwick,
' Let me embrace thee in my weary arms:—
' I, that did never weep, now melt with woe,
' That winter should cut off our spring-time so.
' *War.* Away, away! Once more, sweet lords, farewell.
' *Geo.* Yet let us all together to our troops,
' And give them leave to fly that will not stay;
And call them pillars, that will stand to us;
' And, if we thrive, promise them such rewards
' As victors wear at the Olympian games:
* This may plant courage in their quailing[9] breasts;
* For yet is hope of life, and victory.—
* Fore-slow no longer,[1] make we hence amain.
[*Exeunt.*

[8] *Beseeching* thee,] That is, beseeching the divine power.
[9] —— *quailing* —] i. e. sinking into dejection.
[1] Fore-slow *no longer*,] To *fore-slow* is to be dilatory, to loiter.

SCENE IV.

The same. Another Part of the Field.

Excursions. Enter RICHARD *and* CLIFFORD.

' *Rich.* Now, Clifford, I have singled thee alone:
' Suppose, this arm is for the duke of York,
' And this for Rutland; both bound to revenge,
' Wert thou environ'd with a brazen wall.
Clif. Now, Richard, I am with thee here alone:
This is the hand that stabb'd thy father York;
And this the hand that slew thy brother Rutland;
And here's the heart, that triumphs in their death,
And cheers these hands, that slew thy sire and brother,
To execute the like upon thyself;
And so, have at thee.

[*They fight.* WARWICK *enters*; CLIFFORD *flies.*

' *Rich.* Nay, Warwick, single out some other chase;
' For I myself will hunt this wolf to death.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE V.

Another Part of the Field.

Alarum. Enter King HENRY.

* *K. Hen.* This battle fares like to the morning's war,
* When dying clouds contend with growing light;
* What time the shepherd, blowing of his nails,
* Can neither call it perfect day, nor night.
' Now sways it this way, like a mighty sea,
' Forc'd by the tide to combat with the wind;
' Now sways it that way, like the self-same sea

‘ Forc'd to retire by fury of the wind:
‘ Sometime, the flood prevails; and then, the wind;
‘ Now, one the better; then, another best;
‘ Both tugging to be victors, breast to breast,
‘ Yet neither conqueror, nor conquered:
‘ So is the equal poise of this fell war.
* Here on this molehill will I sit me down.
* To whom God will, there be the victory!
‘ For Margaret my queen, and Clifford too,
‘ Have chid me from the battle; swearing both,
‘ They prosper best of all when I am thence.
‘ 'Would I were dead! if God's good will were so:
‘ For what is in this world, but grief and woe?
* O God! methinks it were a happy life,[2]
‘ To be no better than a homely swain;
* To sit upon a hill, as I do now,
* To carve out dials quaintly, point by point,
* Thereby to see the minutes how they run:
* How many make the hour full complete,
* How many hours bring about the day,
* How many days will finish up the year,
* How many years a mortal man may live.
* When this is known, then to divide the times:
* So many hours must I tend my flock;
* So many hours must I take my rest;
* So many hours must I cóntemplate;
* So many hours must I sport myself;
* So many days my ewes have been with young;
* So many weeks ere the poor fools will yean;
* So many years ere I shall sheer the fleece:
* So minutes, hours, days, weeks, months, and years,
* Pass'd over to the end they were created,

[2] —— *methinks, it were a happy life,*] This speech is mournful and soft, exquisitely suited to the character of the King, and makes a pleasing interchange, by affording, amidst the tumult and horror of the battle, an unexpected glimpse of rural innocence and pastoral tranquillity. JOHNSON.

* Would bring white hairs unto a quiet grave.
* Ah, what a life were this! how sweet! how lovely!
* Gives not the hawthorn bush a sweeter shade
* To shepherds, looking on their silly sheep,
* Than doth a rich embroider'd canopy
* To kings, that fear their subjects' treachery?
* O, yes it doth; a thousand fold it doth.
* And to conclude,—the shepherd's homely curds,
* His cold thin drink out of his leather bottle,
* His wonted sleep under a fresh tree's shade,
* All which secure and sweetly he enjoys,
* Is far beyond a prince's delicates,
* His viands sparkling in a golden cup,
* His body couched in a curious bed,
* When care, mistrust, and treason wait on him.

Alarum. Enter a Son *that has killed his Father,*[1] *dragging in the dead body.*

Son. Ill blows the wind, that profits no-body.—
' This man, whom hand to hand I slew in fight,
' May be possessed with some store of crowns:
* And I, that haply take them from him now,
* May yet ere night yield both my life and them
* To some man else, as this dead man doth me.—
' Who's this?—O God! it is my father's face,
' Whom in this conflict I unwares have kill'd.
' O heavy times, begetting such events!
' From London by the king was I press'd forth;
' My father, being the earl of Warwick's man,
' Came on the part of York, press'd by his master;
' And I, who at his hands receiv'd my life,
' Have by my hands of life bereaved him.—

[1] *Enter a* Son, &c.] These two horrible incidents are selected to show the innumerable calamities of civil war. JOHNSON.
In the battle of Constantine and Maxentius, by Raphael, the second of these incidents is introduced on a similar occasion.

'Pardon me, God, I knew not what I did!—
And pardon, father, for I knew not thee!—
* My tears shall wipe away these bloody marks;
* And no more words, till they have flow'd their fill.
'*K. Hen.* O piteous spectacle! O bloody times!
Whilst lions war, and battle for their dens,
'Poor harmless lambs abide their enmity,—
* Weep, wretched man, I'll aid thee tear for tear;
* And let our hearts, and eyes, like civil war,
* Be blind with tears, and break o'ercharg'd with grief.[4]

Enter a Father, *who has killed his Son, with the Body in his Arms.*

'*Fath.* Thou that so stoutly hast resisted me,
'Give me thy gold, if thou hast any gold;
'For I have bought it with an hundred blows.—
'But let me see:—is this our foeman's face?
'Ah, no, no, no, it is mine only son!—
* Ah, boy, if any life be left in thee,
* Throw up thine eye; see, see, what showers arise,
* Blown with the windy tempest of my heart,
* Upon thy wounds, that kill mine eye and heart!—
'O, pity, God, this miserable age!—
'What stratagems,[5] how fell, how butcherly,
'Erroneous, mutinous, and unnatural,
'This deadly quarrel daily doth beget!—
'O boy, thy father gave thee life too soon,

[4] *And let our hearts, and eyes, like civil war,*
Be blind with tears, and break o'ercharg'd with grief.] The meaning is here inaccurately expressed. The King intends to say that the state of their *hearts and eyes* shall be like that of the kingdom in a *civil war*, all shall be destroyed by power formed within themselves. JOHNSON.

[5] *What* stratagems,] *Stratagem* is used by Shakspeare not merely to express the events and surprizes of war.—The word means in this place some *dreadful event*.

‘ And hath bereft thee of thy life too late![6]
K. Hen. Woe above woe! grief more than common grief!
‘ O, that my death would stay these ruthful deeds!—
* O pity, pity, gentle heaven, pity!—
The red rose and the white are on his face,
The fatal colours of our striving houses:
* The one, his purple blood right well resembles;
* The other, his pale cheeks, methinks, present:
Wither one rose, and let the other flourish!
‘ If you contend, a thousand lives must wither.
Son. How will my mother, for a father's death,
Take on with me,[7] and ne'er be satisfied?
Fath. How will my wife, for slaughter of my son,
‘ Shed seas of tears, and ne'er be satisfied?
‘ *K. Hen.* How will the country, for these woeful chances,
‘ Misthink[8] the king, and not be satisfied?
‘ *Son.* Was ever son, so ru'd a father's death?
‘ *Fath.* Was ever father, so bemoan'd a son?
‘ *K. Hen.* Was ever king, so griev'd for subjects' woe?
‘ Much is your sorrow; mine, ten times so much.
‘ *Son.* I'll bear thee hence, where I may weep my fill. [*Exit, with the Body.*
* *Fath.* These arms of mine shall be thy winding-sheet;
* My heart, sweet boy, shall be thy sepulchre;

[6] *O boy, thy father gave thee life too soon,* &c.] Of the various meanings given to these two lines, the following seems the most probable. Had the son been younger, he would have been precluded from the levy that brought him into the field; and had the father recognised him before the mortal blow, it would not have been too late to have saved him from death. HENLEY.

[7] Take on *with me,*] To *take on* is a phrase still in use among the vulgar, and signifies—*to persist in clamorous lamentation.*

[8] *Misthink,*] i. e. to think ill, unfavourably.

* For from my heart thine image ne'er shall go.
* My sighing breast shall be thy funeral bell;
* And so obsequious will thy father be,[9]
* Sad for the loss of thee, having no more,
* As Priam was for all his valiant sons.
I'll bear thee hence; and let them fight that will,
For I have murder'd where I should not kill.
[*Exit, with the Body.*

' *K. Hen.* Sad-hearted men, much overgone with care,
' Here sits a king more woful than you are.

Alarums: Excursions. Enter Queen MARGARET, *Prince of* Wales, *and* EXETER.

' *Prince.* Fly, father, fly! for all your friends are fled,
' And Warwick rages like a chafed bull:
' Away! for death doth hold us in pursuit.
' *Q. Mar.* Mount you, my lord, towards Berwick post amain:
' Edward and Richard, like a brace of greyhounds
' Having the fearful flying hare in sight,
' With fiery eyes, sparkling for very wrath,
' And bloody steel grasp'd in their ireful hands,
' Are at our backs; and therefore hence amain.
' *Exe.* Away! for vengeance comes along with them:
' Nay, stay not to expostulate, make speed;
Or else come after, I'll away before.
' *K. Hen.* Nay, take me with thee, good sweet Exeter;
' Not that I fear to stay, but love to go
' Whither the queen intends. Forward; away!
[*Exeunt.*

[9] *And so* obsequious *will thy father be,*] *Obsequious* is here careful of obsequies, or of funeral rites.

SCENE VI.

The same.

A loud Alarum. Enter CLIFFORD, *wounded.*

'*Clif.* Here burns my candle out, ay, here it dies,
Which, while it lasted, gave king Henry light.
O, Lancaster! I fear thy overthrow,
More than my body's parting with my soul.
My love, and fear, glew'd many friends to thee;
'And, now I fall, thy tough commixtures melt.
Impairing Henry, strength'ning mis-proud York,
The common people swarm like summer flies:
And whither fly the gnats, but to the sun?
And who shines now but Henry's enemies?
O Phœbus! hadst thou never given consent
That Phaeton should check thy fiery steeds,
Thy burning car never had scorch'd the earth:
And, Henry, had'st thou sway'd as kings should do,
Or as thy father, and his father, did,
Giving no ground unto the house of York,
* They never then had sprung like summer flies;
'I, and ten thousand in this luckless realm,
Had left no mourning widows for our death,
And thou this day hadst kept thy chair in peace.
For what doth cherish weeds but gentle air?
'And what makes robbers bold, but too much lenity?
Bootless are plaints, and cureless are my wounds;
'No way to fly, nor strength to hold out flight:
The foe is merciless, and will not pity;
For, at their hands, I have deserv'd no pity.
'The air hath got into my deadly wounds,
And much effuse of blood doth make me faint:—
Come, York, and Richard, Warwick, and the rest;
'I stabb'd your fathers' bosoms, split my breast.
[*He faints.*

Alarum and Retreat. Enter EDWARD, GEORGE, RICHARD, MONTAGUE, WARWICK, *and Soldiers.*

' *Edw.* Now breathe we, lords; good fortune bids us pause,
' And smooth the frowns of war with peaceful looks.—
* Some troops pursue the bloody-minded queen;—
' That led calm Henry, though he were a king,
' As doth a sail, fill'd with a fretting gust,
' Command an argosy to stem the waves.
' But think you, lords, that Clifford fled with them?
War. No, 'tis impossible he should escape:
For, though before his face I speak the words,
Your brother Richard mark'd him for the grave:
' And, wheresoe'er he is, he's surely dead.
[CLIFFORD *groans, and dies.*
Edw. Whose soul is that which takes her heavy leave?
Rich. A deadly groan, like life and death's departing.[1]
Edw. See who it is: and, now the battle's ended,
If friend, or foe, let him be gently us'd.
' *Rich.* Revoke that doom of mercy, for 'tis Clifford;
' Who not contented that he lopp'd the branch
' In hewing Rutland when his leaves put forth,
' But set his murdering knife unto the root
' From whence that tender spray did sweetly spring,
' I mean, our princely father, duke of York.
War. From off the gates of York fetch down the head,
Your Father's head, which Clifford placed there:
' Instead whereof, let this supply the room;

[1] —— *like life and death's* departing.] *Departing* for *separation.*

Measure for measure must be answered.

Edw. Bring forth that fatal screech-owl to our house,
‘ That nothing sung but death to us and ours:
‘ Now death shall stop his dismal threatening sound,
‘ And his ill-boding tongue no more shall speak.

[*Attendants bring the Body forward.*

War. I think his understanding is bereft:—
Speak, Clifford, dost thou know who speaks to thee?—
Dark cloudy death o'ershades his beams of life,
And he nor sees, nor hears us what we say.

Rich. O, 'would he did! and so, perhaps, he doth;
‘ 'Tis but his policy to counterfeit,
‘ Because he would avoid such bitter taunts
‘ Which in the time of death he gave our father.

Geo. If so thou think'st, vex him with eager words.[2]

Rich. Clifford, ask mercy, and obtain no grace.

Edw. Clifford, repent in bootless penitence.

War. Clifford, devise excuses for thy faults.

Geo. While we devise fell tortures for thy faults.

‘ *Rich.* Thou didst love York, and I am son to York.

Edw. Thou pitied'st Rutland, I will pity thee.

Geo. Where's captain Margaret, to fence you now?

War. They mock thee, Clifford! swear as thou wast wont.

‘ *Rich.* What, not an oath? nay, then the world goes hard,
‘ When Clifford cannot spare his friends an oath:—
I know by that, he's dead; And, by my soul,
‘ If this right hand would buy two hours' life,
That I in all despite might rail at him,

[2] —— eager *words.*] Sour words; words of asperity.

'This hand should chop it off; and with the issuing blood
Stifle the villain, whose unstaunched thirst
York and young Rutland could not satisfy.
War. Ay, but he's dead: Off with the traitor's head,
And rear it in the place your father's stands.—
And now to London with triumphant march,
There to be crowned England's royal king.
'From whence shall Warwick cut the sea to France,
And ask the lady Bona for thy queen:
So shalt thou sinew both these lands together;
'And, having France thy friend, thou shalt not dread
The scatter'd foe, that hopes to rise again;
For though they cannot greatly sting to hurt,
Yet look to have them buz, to offend thine ears.
First, will I see the coronation;
'And then to Britany I'll cross the sea,
To effect this marriage, so it please my lord.
Edw. Even as thou wilt, sweet Warwick, let it be:
* For on thy shoulder do I build my seat;
* And never will I undertake the thing,
* Wherein thy counsel and consent is wanting.—
'Richard, I will create thee duke of Gloster;—
'And George, of Clarence;—Warwick, as ourself,
'Shall do, and undo, as him pleaseth best.
Rich. Let me be duke of Clarence; George, of Gloster;
For Gloster's dukedom is too ominous.[3]
War. Tut, that's a foolish observation;
Richard, be duke of Gloster: Now to London,
To see these honours in possession. [*Exeunt.*

[3] —— *too ominous.*] Alluding, perhaps, to the deaths of Thomas of Woodstock, and Humphrey, Dukes of Gloster.

ACT III.

SCENE I. A Chace in the North of England.

Enter Two Keepers, *with Cross-bows in their Hands.*

' 1 *Keep.* Under this thick-grown brake[4] we'll
shroud ourselves;
' For through this laund[5] anon the deer will come;
' And in this covert will we make our stand,
' Culling the principal of all the deer.
* 2 *Keep.* I'll stay above the hill, so both may
shoot.
* 1 *Keep.* That cannot be; the noise of thy
cross-bow
* Will scare the herd, and so my shoot is lost.
* Here stand we both, and aim we at the best:
* And, for the time shall not seem tedious,
* I'll tell thee what befell me on a day,
* In this self-place where now we mean to stand.
' 2 *Keep.* Here come's a man, let's stay till he be
past.

Enter King HENRY, *disguised, with a Prayer-book.*

K. Hen. From Scotland am I stol'n, even of pure
love,
' To greet mine own land with my wishful sight.
' No, Harry, Harry, 'tis no land of thine;
* Thy place is fill'd, thy scepter wrung from thee,
* Thy balm wash'd off, wherewith thou wast
anointed:

[4] —— *brake*—] A *brake* anciently signified a *thicket*.
[5] —— *this* laund—] *Laund* means the same as *lawn*; a plain extended between woods.

No bending knee will call thee Cæsar now,
' No humble suitors press to speak for right,
* No, not a man comes for redress of thee;
For how can I help them, and not myself?
' 1 *Keep.* Ay, here's a deer whose skin's a keeper's fee:
' This is the *quondam* king; let's seize upon him.
* *K. Hen.* Let me embrace these sour adversities;
* For wise men say, it is the wisest course.
* 2 *Keep.* Why linger we? let us lay hands upon him.
* 1 *Keep.* Forbear a while; we'll hear a little more.
K. Hen. My queen, and son, are gone to France for aid;
And, as I hear, the great commanding Warwick
' Is thither gone, to crave the French king's sister
' To wife for Edward: If this news be true,
' Poor queen, and son, your labour is but lost;
' For Warwick is a subtle orator,
' And Lewis a prince soon won with moving words.
' By this account, then, Margaret may win him;
' For she's a woman to be pitied much:
* Her sighs will make a battery in his breast;
* Her tears will pierce into a marble heart;
* The tiger will be mild, while she doth mourn;
* And Nero will be tainted with remorse,
* To hear, and see, her plaints, her brinish tears.
* Ay, but she's come to beg; Warwick, to give:
She, on his left side, craving aid for Henry;
He, on his right, asking a wife for Edward.
She weeps, and says—her Henry is depos'd;
He smiles, and says—his Edward is install'd;
* That she, poor wretch, for grief can speak no more:
* Whiles Warwick tells his title, smooths the wrong,
* Inferreth arguments of mighty strength;
* And, in conclusion, wins the king from her,

* With promise of his sister, and what else,
* To strengthen and support king Edward's place.
* O Margaret,[6] thus 'twill be; and thou, poor soul,
* Art then forsaken, as thou went'st forlorn.

2 *Keep.* Say, what art thou, that talk'st of kings and queens?

' *K. Hen.* More than I seem, and less than I was born to:
' A man at least, for less I should not be;
And men may talk of kings, and why not I?

' 2 *Keep.* Ay, but thou talk'st as if thou wert a king.

' *K. Hen.* Why, so I am, in mind; and that's enough.

2 *Keep.* But, if thou be a king, where is thy crown?

K. Hen. My crown is in my heart, not on my head;
* Not deck'd with diamonds, and Indian stones,
* Nor to be seen: ' my crown is call'd, content;
' A crown it is, that seldom kings enjoy.

' 2 *Keep.* Well, if you be a king crown'd with content,
Your crown content, and you, must be contented
' To go along with us: for, as we think,
' You are the king, king Edward hath depos'd;
' And we his subjects, sworn in all allegiance,
' Will apprehend you as his enemy.

* *K. Hen.* But did you never swear, and break an oath?

* 2 *Keep.* No, never such an oath, nor will not now.

* *K. Hen.* Where did you dwell, when I was king of England?

[6] *O Margaret,* &c.] The piety of Henry scarce interests us more for his misfortunes, than this his constant solicitude for the welfare of his deceitful Queen. STEEVENS.

* 2 *Keep.* Here in this country, where we now remain.

* *K. Hen.* I was anointed king at nine months old;
* My father and my grandfather, were kings;
* And you were sworn true subjects unto me:
* And, tell me then, have you not broke your oaths?

* 1 *Keep.* No;
For we were subjects, but while you were king.

* *K. Hen.* Why, am I dead? do I not breathe a man?
* Ah, simple men, you know not what you swear.
* Look, as I blow this feather from my face,
* And as the air blows it to me again,
* Obeying with my wind when I do blow,
* And yielding to another when it blows,
* Commanded always by the greater gust;
* Such is the lightness of you common men.
* But do not break your oaths; for, of that sin
* My mild entreaty shall not make you guilty.
* Go where you will, the king shall be commanded;
* And be you kings; command, and I'll obey.

* 1 *Keep.* We are true subjects to the king, king Edward.

* *K. Hen.* So would you be again to Henry,
* If he were seated as king Edward is.

1 *Keep.* We charge you, in God's name, and in the king's,
To go with us unto the officers.

'*K. Hen.* In God's name, lead; your king's name be obey'd:
* And what God will, then let your king perform;
* And what he will, I humbly yield unto.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE II.

London. *A Room in the Palace.*

Enter King EDWARD, GLOSTER, CLARENCE, *and Lady* GREY.

'*K. Edw.* Brother of Gloster, at saint Albans' field
'This lady's husband, sir John Grey, was slain,
His lands then seiz'd on by the conqueror:
Her suit is now, to repossess those lands;
'Which we in justice cannot well deny,
Because in quarrel of the house of York
'The worthy gentleman did lose his life.
Glo. Your highness shall do well, to grant her suit;
* It were dishonour, to deny it her.
K. Edw. It were no less; but yet I'll make a pause.
'*Glo.* Yea! is it so?
I see, the lady hath a thing to grant,
Before the king will grant her humble suit.
Clar. He knows the game; How true he keeps the wind! [*Aside.*
Glo. Silence! [*Aside.*
'*K. Edw.* Widow, we will consider[7] of your suit;
'And come some other time, to know our mind.
'*L. Grey.* Right gracious lord, I cannot brook delay:
'May it please your highness to resolve me now;
'And what your pleasure is, shall satisfy me.
'Glo. [*Aside.*] Ay, widow? then I'll warrant you all your lands,
'An if what pleases him, shall pleasure you.

[7] *Widow, we will consider* —] This is a very lively and spritely dialogue; the reciprocation is quicker than is common in Shakspeare. JOHNSON.

‘ Fight closer, or, good faith, you'll catch a blow.
* *Clar.* I fear her not, unless she chance to fall.
[*Aside.*
* *Glo.* God forbid that! for he'll take vantages.
[*Aside.*
‘ *K. Edw.* How many children hast thou, widow? tell me.
Clar. I think, he means to beg a child of her.
[*Aside.*
Glo. Nay, whip me then; he'll rather give her two. [*Aside.*
L. Grey. Three, my most gracious lord.
Glo. You shall have four, if you'll be rul'd by him. [*Aside.*
‘ *K. Edw.* 'Twere pity, they should lose their father's land.
L. Grey. Be pitiful, dread lord, and grant it then.
K. Edw. Lords, give us leave; I'll try this widow's wit.
Glo. Ay good leave have you;[8] for you will have leave,
‘ Till youth take leave, and leave you to the crutch.
[GLOSTER *and* CLARENCE *retire to the other side.*
* *K. Edw.* Now tell me, madam, do you love your children?
* *L. Grey.* Ay, full as dearly as I love myself.
* *K. Edw.* And would you not do much, to do them good?
* *L. Grey.* To do them good, I would sustain some harm.
* *K. Edw.* Then get your husband's lands, to do them good.
* *L. Grey.* Therefore I came unto your majesty
K. Edw. I'll tell you how these lands are to be got.

[8] —— good leave *have you;*] *Good leave,* are words implying *readiness of assent.*

* *L. Grey.* So shall you bind me to your highness' service.

* *K. Edw.* What service wilt thou do me, if I give them?

* *L. Grey.* What you command, that rests in me to do.

* *K. Edw.* But you will take exceptions to my boon.

* *L. Grey.* No, gracious lord, except I cannot do it.

* *K. Edw.* Ay, but thou canst do what I mean to ask.

* *L. Grey.* Why, then I will do what your grace commands.

* *Glo.* He plies her hard; and much rain wears the marble. [*Aside.*

* *Clar.* As red as fire! nay, then her wax must melt. [*Aside.*

L. Grey. Why stops my lord? shall I not hear my task?

K. Edw. An easy task; 'tis but to love a king.

L. Grey. That's soon perform'd, because I am a subject.

K. Edw. Why then, thy husband's lands I freely give thee.

L. Grey. I take my leave with many thousand thanks.

Glo. The match is made; she seals it with a curt'sy.

' *K. Edw.* But stay thee, 'tis the fruits of love I mean.

* *L. Grey.* The fruits of love I mean, my loving liege.

* *K. Edw.* Ay, but, I fear me, in another sense. What love, think'st thou, I sue so much to get?

' *L. Grey.* My love till death, my humble thanks, my prayers;

‘ That love, which virtue begs, and virtue grants.
K. Edw. No, by my troth, I did not mean such love.
* *L. Grey.* Why, then you mean not as I thought you did.
* *K. Edw.* But now you partly may perceive my mind.
* *L. Grey.* My mind will never grant what I perceive
* Your highness aims at, if I aim aright.
K. Edw. To tell thee plain, I am to lie with thee.
* *L. Grey.* To tell you plain, I had rather lie in prison.
K. Edw. Why, then thou shalt not have thy husband's lands.
L. Grey. Why, then mine honesty shall be my dower;
For by that loss I will not purchase them.
‘ *K. Edw.* Therein thou wrong'st thy children mightily.
L. Grey. Herein your highness wrongs both them and me.
But, mighty lord, this merry inclination
‘ Accords not with the sadness[9] of my suit;
Please you dismiss me, either with ay, or no.
K. Edw. Ay; if thou wilt say ay, to my request:
No; if thou dost say no, to my demand.
L. Grey. Then, no, my lord. My suit is at an end.
‘ *Glo.* The widow likes him not, she knits her brows. [*Aside.*
Clar. He is the bluntest wooer in Christendom. [*Aside.*
‘ K. Edw. [*Aside.*] Her looks do argue her replete with modesty;
* Her words do show her wit incomparable;

[9] —— *the* sadness —] i. e. the seriousness.

* All her perfections challenge sovereignty:
One way, or other, she is for a king;
And she shall be my love, or else my queen.—
Say, that king Edward take thee for his queen?
L. Grey. 'Tis better said than done, my gracious lord:
I am a subject fit to jest withal,
But far unfit to be a sovereign.
K. Edw. Sweet widow, by my state I swear to thee,
I speak no more than what my soul intends;
And that is, to enjoy thee for my love.
L. Grey. And that is more than I will yield unto:
' I know, I am too mean to be your queen;
And yet too good to be your concubine.
K. Edw. You cavil, widow; I did mean, my queen.
L. Grey. 'Twill grieve your grace, my sons should call you—father.
K. Edw. No more, than when thy daughters call thee mother.
Thou art a widow, and thou hast some children;
And, by God's mother, I, being but a bachelor,
Have other some: why, 'tis a happy thing
To be the father unto many sons.
' Answer no more, for thou shalt be my queen.
Glo. The ghostly father now hath done his shrift. [*Aside.*
Clar. When he was made a shriver, 'twas for shift. [*Aside.*
K. Edw. Brothers, you muse what chat we two have had.
* *Glo.* The widow likes it not, for she looks sad.
K. Edw. You'd think it strange if I should marry her.
Clar. To whom, my lord?
K. Edw. Why, Clarence, to myself.
Glo. That would be ten days' wonder, at the least.
Clar. That's a day longer than a wonder lasts.

' *Glo.* By so much is the wonder in extremes.
K. Edw. Well, jest on, brothers: I can tell you both,
Her suit is granted for her husband's lands.

Enter a Nobleman.

Nob. My gracious lord, Henry your foe is taken,
' And brought your prisoner to your palace gate.
K. Edw. See, that he be convey'd unto the Tower:—
' And go we, brothers, to the man that took him,
' To question of his apprehension.—
' Widow, go you along;—Lords, use her honourable.
[*Exeunt King* EDWARD, *Lady* GREY, CLARENCE, *and Lord.*
Glo. Ay, Edward will use women honourably.
'Would he were wasted, marrow, bones, and all,
' That from his loins no hopeful branch may spring,
' To cross me from the golden time I look for!
' And yet, between my soul's desire, and me,
* (The lustful Edward's title buried,)
' Is Clarence, Henry, and his son young Edward,
' And all the unlook'd-for issue of their bodies,
' To take their rooms, ere I can place myself:
A cold premeditation for my purpose!
* Why, then I do but dream on sovereignty;
* Like one that stands upon a promontory,
* And spies a far-off shore where he would tread,
* Wishing his foot were equal with his eye;
* And chides the sea that sunders him from thence,
* Saying—he'll lade it dry to have his way:
* So do I wish the crown, being so far off;
* And so I chide the means that keep me from it;
* And so I say—I'll cut the causes off,
* Flattering me with impossibilities.—
* My eye's too quick, my heart o'erweens too much,

* Unless my hand and strength could equal them.
* Well, say there is no kingdom then for Richard;
* What other pleasure can the world afford?
' I'll make my heaven in a lady's lap,
' And deck my body in gay ornaments,
And witch sweet ladies with my words and looks.
' O miserable thought! and more unlikely,
' Than to accomplish twenty golden crowns!
Why, love forswore me in my mother's womb:
' And, for I should not deal in her soft laws
' She did corrupt frail nature with some bribe
' To shrink mine arm up like a wither'd shrub;
' To make an envious mountain on my back,
Where sits deformity to mock my body;
' To shape my legs of an unequal size;
* To disproportion me in every part,
* Like to a chaos, or an unlick'd bear-whelp,[1]
* That carries no impression like the dam.
And am I then a man to be belov'd?
' O, monstrous fault, to harbour such a thought!
* Then, since this earth affords no joy to me,
* But to command, to check, to o'erbear such
* As are of better person than myself,[2]
* I'll make my heaven—to dream upon the crown;

[1] —— *unlick'd bear-whelp,*] It was an opinion which, in spite of its absurdity, prevailed long, that the bear brings forth only shapeless lumps of animated flesh, which she licks into the form of bears. It is now well known that the whelps of the bear are produced in the same state with those of other creatures.

[2] —— *to o'erbear such*
As are of better person than myself,] Richard speaks here the language of nature. Whoever is stigmatized with deformity has a constant source of envy in his mind, and would counter-balance by some other superiority those advantages which he feels himself to want. Bacon remarks that the deformed are commonly daring; and it is almost proverbially observed that they are ill-natured. The truth is, that the deformed, like all other men, are displeased with inferiority, and endeavour to gain ground by good or bad means, as they are virtuous or corrupt. JOHNSON.

* And, whiles I live, to account this world but hell,
* Until my mis-shap'd trunk that bears this head,
* Be round impaled with a glorious crown.
* And yet I know not how to get the crown,
* For many lives stand between me and home:
* And I,—like one lost in a thorny wood,
* That rents the thorns, and is rent with the thorns;
* Seeking a way, and straying from the way;
* Not knowing how to find the open air,
* But toiling desperately to find it out,—
* Torment myself to catch the English crown:
* And from that torment I will free myself,
* Or hew my way out with a bloody axe.
Why, I can smile, and murder while I smile;
' And cry, content, to that which grieves my heart;
* And wet my cheeks with artificial tears,
* And frame my face to all occasions.
* I'll drown more sailors than the mermaid shall;
* I'll slay more gazers than the basilisk;
* I'll play the orator as well as Nestor,
* Deceive more slily than Ulysses could,
* And, like a Sinon, take another Troy:
I can add colours to the cameleon;
' Change shapes, with Proteus, for advantages,
' And set the murd'rous Machiavel to school.
Can I do this, and cannot get a crown?
' Tut! were it further off, I'll pluck it down.

[*Exit.*

SCENE III.

France. *A Room in the Palace.*

Flourish. Enter LEWIS *the* French *King, and Lady* BONA, *attended; the King takes his State. Then enter Queen* MARGARET, *Prince* EDWARD, *her Son, and the earl of* OXFORD.

' *K. Lew.* Fair queen of England, worthy Margaret, [*Rising.*
' Sit down with us; it ill befits thy state,
' And birth, that thou should'st stand, while Lewis doth sit.
* *Q. Mar.* No, mighty king of France; now Margaret
* Must strike her sail, and learn awhile to serve,
* Where kings command. I was, I must confess,
* Great Albion's queen in former golden days:
* But now mischance hath trod my title down,
* And with dishonour laid me on the ground;
* Where I must take like seat unto my fortune,
* And to my humble seat conform myself.
* *K. Lew.* Why, say, fair queen, whence springs this deep despair?
* *Q. Mar.* From such a cause as fills mine eyes with tears,
* And stops my tongue, while heart is drown'd in cares.
* *K. Lew.* Whate'er it be, be thou still like thyself,
* And sit thee by our side: yield not thy neck
[*Seats her by him.*
* To fortune's yoke, but let thy dauntless mind
* Still ride in triumph over all mischance.
* Be plain, queen Margaret, and tell thy grief;
* It shall be eas'd, if France can yield relief.
* *Q. Mar.* Those gracious words revive my drooping thoughts,

* And give my tongue-tied sorrows leave to speak.
* Now, therefore, be it known to noble Lewis,—
* That Henry, sole possessor of my love,
* Is, of a king, become a banish'd man,
* And forc'd to live in Scotland a forlorn;
* While proud ambitious Edward, duke of York,
* Usurps the regal title, and the seat
* Of England's true-anointed lawful king.
* This is the cause, that I, poor Margaret,—
* With this my son, prince Edward, Henry's heir,—
* Am come to crave thy just and lawful aid;
' And, if thou fail us, all our hope is done:
* Scotland hath will to help, but cannot help;
* Our people and our peers are both misled,
* Our treasure seiz'd, our soldiers put to flight,
* And, as thou see'st, ourselves in heavy plight.
* *K. Lew.* Renowned queen, with patience calm the storm,
* While we bethink a means to break it off.
* *Q. Mar.* The more we stay, the stronger grows our foe.
* *K. Lew.* The more I stay, the more I'll succour thee.
* *Q. Mar.* O, but impatience waiteth on true sorrow:
* And see, where comes the breeder of my sorrow.

Enter WARWICK *attended.*

' *K. Lew.* What's he, approacheth boldly to our presence?
Q. Mar. Our earl of Warwick, Edward's greatest friend.
K. Lew. Welcome, brave Warwick! What brings thee to France?

[*Descending from his State. Queen* MARGARET *rises.*

* *Q. Mar.* Ay, now begins a second storm to rise;
* For this is he, that moves both wind and tide.
' *Wor.* From worthy Edward, king of Albion,
My lord and sovereign, and thy vowed friend,
I come,—in kindness, and unfeigned love,—
First, to do greetings to thy royal person;
And, then, to crave a league of amity;
And, lastly, to confirm that amity
With nuptial knot, if thou vouchsafe to grant
That virtuous lady Bona, thy fair sister,
To England's king in lawful marriage.
' *Q. Mar.* If that go forward, Henry's hope is done.
War. And, gracious madam, [*To* BONA.] in our king's behalf,
' I am commanded, with your leave and favour,
Humbly to kiss your hand, and with my tongue
To tell the passion of my sovereign's heart;
Where fame, late entering at his heedful ears,
Hath plac'd thy beauty's image, and thy virtue.
Q. Mar. King Lewis,—and lady Bona,—hear me speak,
' Before you answer Warwick. His demand
* Springs not from Edward's well-meant honest love,
* But from deceit, bred by necessity;
* For how can tyrants safely govern home,
* Unless abroad they purchase great alliance?
* To prove him tyrant, this reason may suffice,—
* That Henry liveth still: but were he dead,
* Yet here prince Edward stands, king Henry's son.
* Look therefore, Lewis, that by this league and marriage
* Thou draw not on thy danger and dishonour:
* For though usurpers sway the rule a while,
* Yet heavens are just, and time suppresseth wrongs.
War. Injurious Margaret!
Prince. And why not queen?
War. Because thy father Henry did usurp;

And thou no more art prince, than she is queen.

Oxf. Then Warwick disannuls great John of Gaunt,
Which did subdue the greatest part of Spain;
And, after John of Gaunt, Henry the fourth,
‘ Whose wisdom was a mirror to the wisest;
And, after that wise prince, Henry the Fifth,
Who by his prowess conquered all France:
From these our Henry lineally descends.

War. Oxford, how haps it, in this smooth discourse,
You told not, how Henry the sixth had lost
All that which Henry the fifth had gotten?
Methinks, these peers of France should smile at that.
But for the rest,—You tell a pedigree
Of threescore and two years; a silly time
To make prescription for a kingdom's worth.

‘ *Oxf.* Why, Warwick, canst thou speak against thy liege,
‘ Whom thou obey'dst thirty and six years,
And not bewray thy treason with a blush?

War. Can Oxford, that did ever fence the right,
Now buckler falsehood with a pedigree?
For shame, leave Henry, and call Edward king.

‘ *Oxf.* Call him my king, by whose injurious doom
‘ My elder brother, the lord Aubrey Vere,
Was done to death? and more than so, my father,
Even in the downfall of his mellow'd years,
‘ When nature brought him to the door of death?
No, Warwick, no; while life upholds this arm,
This arm upholds the house of Lancaster.

War. And I the house of York.

K. Lew. Queen Margaret, prince Edward, and Oxford,
‘ Vouchsafe, at our request, to stand aside,
‘ While I use further conference with Warwick.

* *Q. Mar.* Heaven grant, that Warwick's words bewitch him not!

[*Retiring with the* Prince *and* Oxford.

' *K. Lew.* Now, Warwick, tell me, even upon thy conscience,
' Is Edward your true king? for I were loath,
' To link with him that were not lawful chosen.
War. Thereon I pawn my credit and mine honour.
K. Lew. But is he gracious in the people's eye?
War. The more, that Henry was unfortunate.[3]
K. Lew. Then further,—all dissembling set aside,
' Tell me for truth the measure of his love
' Unto our sister Bona.
War. Such it seems,
As may beseem a monarch like himself.
Myself have often heard him say, and swear,—
That this his love was an eternal plant;
Whereof the root was fix'd in virtue's ground,
The leaves and fruit maintain'd with beauty's sun;
Exempt from envy, but not from disdain,[4]
Unless the lady Bona quit his pain.
K. Lew. Now, sister, let us hear your firm resolve.
Bona. Your grant, or your denial, shall be mine:—
Yet I confess, [*to* WAR.] that often ere this day,
When I have heard your king's desert recounted,
Mine ear hath tempted judgment to desire.
* *K. Lew.* Then, Warwick, thus,—Our sister shall be Edward's;

[3] —— *that Henry was unfortunate.*] He means, that Henry was unsuccessful in war, having lost his dominions in France, &c.

[4] *Exempt from envy, but not from disdain,*] Envy is always supposed to have some fascinating or blasting power; and to be out of the reach of envy is therefore a privilege belonging only to great excellence. I know not well why *envy* is mentioned here, or whose *envy* can be meant; but the meaning is, that his love is superior to *envy*, and can feel no blast from the lady's *disdain*. Or that, if Bona refuse to *quit* or *requite* his pain, his love may turn to *disdain*, though the consciousness of his own merit will exempt him from the pangs of *envy*. JOHNSON.

I believe *envy* is in this place, as in many others, put for *malice* or *hatred*. His situation places him above these, though it cannot secure him from female disdain. STEEVENS.

* And now forthwith shall articles be drawn
* Touching the jointure that your king must make,
* Which with her dowry shall be counterpois'd:—
Draw near, queen Margaret, and be a witness,
That Bona shall be wife to the English king.

Prince. To Edward, but not to the English king.

* *Q. Mar.* Deceitful Warwick! it was thy device
* By this alliance to make void my suit;
* Before thy coming, Lewis was Henry's friend.

* *K. Lew.* And still is friend to him and Margaret:
* But if your title to the crown be weak,—
* As may appear by Edward's good success,—
* Then 'tis but reason that I be releas'd
* From giving aid, which late I promised.
* Yet shall you have all kindness at my hand,
* That your estate requires, and mine can yield.

War. Henry now lives in Scotland, at his ease;
Where having nothing, nothing he can lose.
And as for you yourself, our *quondam* queen,—
You have a father able[5] to maintain you;
And better 'twere, you troubled him than France.

* *Q. Mar.* Peace, impudent and shameless Warwick, peace;
* Proud setter-up and puller-down of kings!
* I will not hence, till with my talk and tears,
* Both full of truth, I make king Lewis behold
* Thy sly conveyance,[6] and my lord's false love;
* For both of you are birds of self-same feather.

[*A Horn sounded within.*

K. Lew. Warwick, this is some post to us, or thee.

Enter a Messenger.

Mess. My lord ambassador, these letters are for you;

[5] *You have a father able —*] This seems ironical. The poverty of Margaret's father is a very frequent topick of reproach.

[6] *Thy sly conveyance,*] Conveyance is *juggling*, and thence is taken for artifice and fraud.

Sent from your brother, marquis Montague.
These from our king unto your majesty.—
And, madam, these for you; from whom, I know not.
[*To* MARGARET. *They all read their letters.*
Oxf. I like it well, that our fair queen and mistress
Smiles at her news, while Warwick frowns at his.
Prince. Nay, mark, how Lewis stamps as he were nettled:
* I hope, all's for the best.
' *K. Lew.* Warwick, what are thy news? and yours, fair queen?
' *Q. Mar.* Mine, such as fill my heart with unhop'd joys.
War. Mine, full of sorrow and heart's discontent.
K. Lew. What! has your king married the lady Grey?
' And now, to sooth your forgery and his,[7]
' Sends me a paper to persuade me patience?
' Is this the alliance that he seeks with France?
' Dare he presume to scorn us in this manner?
* *Q. Mar.* I told your majesty as much before:
This proveth Edward's love, and Warwick's honesty.
War. King Lewis, I here protest,—in sight of heaven,
And by the hope I have of heavenly bliss,—
That I am clear from this misdeed of Edward's;
No more my king, for he dishonours me;
But most himself, if he could see his shame.—
Did I forget, that by the house of York
My father came untimely to his death?
Did I let pass the abuse done to my niece?
Did I impale him with the regal crown?
Did I put Henry from his native right;

[7] —— *to* sooth *your forgery and his,*] To soften it, to make it more endurable: or perhaps, to sooth us, and to prevent our being exasperated by your forgery and his. MALONE.

‘ And am I guerdon'd[8] at the last with shame?
* Shame on himself! for my desert is honour.
* And, to repair my honour lost for him,
* I here renounce him, and return to Henry:
‘ My noble queen, let former grudges pass,
And henceforth I am thy true servitor;
I will revenge his wrong to lady Bona,
And replant Henry in his former state.
Q. Mar. Warwick, these words have turn'd my hate to love;
‘ And I forgive and quite forget old faults,
‘ And joy that thou becom'st king Henry's friend.
War. So much his friend, ay, his unfeigned friend,
That, if king Lewis vouchsafe to furnish us
With some few bands of chosen soldiers,
I'll undertake to land them on our coast,
And force the tyrant from his seat by war.
'Tis not his new-made bride shall succour him:
* And as for Clarence,—as my letters tell me,
* He's very likely now to fall from him;
* For matching more for wanton lust than honour,
* Or than for strength and safety of our country.
* *Bona.* Dear brother, how shall Bona be reveng'd,
* But by thy help to this distressed queen?
* *Q. Mar.* Renowned prince, how shall poor Henry live,
* Unless thou rescue him from foul despair?
* *Bona.* My quarrel, and this English's queen's, are one.
* *War.* And mine, fair lady Bona, joins with yours.
* *K. Lew.* And mine, with hers, and thine, and Margaret's.
Therefore, at last, I firmly am resolv'd,
You shall have aid.

[8] —— *guerdon'd* —] i. e. rewarded.

* *Q. Mar.* Let me give humble thanks for all at once.
K. Lew. Then England's messenger, return in post;
And tell false Edward, thy supposed king,—
That Lewis of France is sending over maskers,
To revel it with him and his new bride:
* Thou seest what's past, go fear thy king[9] withal.
Bona. Tell him, In hope he'll prove a widower shortly,
I'll wear the willow garland for his sake.
Q. Mar. Tell him, My mourning weeds are laid aside,
And I am ready to put armour on.[1]
War. Tell him from me, That he hath done me wrong;
And therefore I'll uncrown him, ere't be long.
There's thy reward;[2] be gone. [*Exit* Mess.
K. Lew. But, Warwick, thou,
And Oxford, with five thousand men,
Shall cross the seas, and bid false Edward battle:
* And, as occasion serves, this noble queen
* And prince shall follow with a fresh supply.
' Yet, ere thou go, but answer me one doubt;—
' What pledge have we of thy firm loyalty?
War. This shall assure my constant loyalty:—
That if our queen and this young prince agree,
I'll join mine eldest daughter, and my joy,
To him forthwith in holy wedlock bands.
' *Q. Mar.* Yes, I agree, and thank you for your motion:—

[9] —— *go* fear *thy king*—] That is, *fright* thy king.

[1] —— *to put armour on.*] It was once no unusual thing for queens themselves to appear in armour at the head of their forces. The suit which Elizabeth wore, when she rode through the lines at Tilbury to encourage the troops, on the approach of the armada, may be still seen in the Tower.

[2] —— *thy reward;*] Here we are to suppose that, according to ancient custom, Warwick makes a present to the Herald or Messenger, whom the original copies call—a *Post.*

‘ Son Edward, she is fair and virtuous,
‘ Therefore delay not, give thy hand to Warwick;
‘ And, with thy hand, thy faith irrevocable,
‘ That only Warwick's daughter shall be thine.
* *Prince.* Yes, I accept her, for she well deserves it;
* And here, to pledge my vow, I give my hand.
[*He gives his hand to* WARWICK.
‘ *K. Lew.* Why stay we now? These soldiers shall
be levied,
‘ And thou, lord Bourbon, our high admiral,
‘ Shall waft them over with our royal fleet.—
‘ I long, till Edward fall by war's mischance,
‘ For mocking marriage with a dame of France.
[*Exeunt all but* WARWICK.
War. I came from Edward as embassador,
But I return his sworn and mortal foe:
Matter of marriage was the charge he gave me,
But dreadful war shall answer his demand.
Had he none else to make a stale,[3] but me?
Then none but I shall turn his jest to sorrow.
I was the chief that rais'd him to the crown,
And I'll be chief to bring him down again:
Not that I pity Henry's misery,
But seek revenge on Edward's mockery. [*Exit.*

ACT IV.

SCENE I. London. *A Room in the Palace.*

Enter GLOSTER, CLARENCE, SOMERSET, MONTAGUE, *and Others.*

‘ *Glo.* Now tell me, brother Clarence, what think you
‘ Of this new marriage with the lady Grey?

[3] —— *to make a* stale,—] i. e. *stalking-horse, pretence.*

* Hath not our brother made a worthy choice?
* *Clar.* Alas, you know, 'tis far from hence to France;
* How could he stay till Warwick made return?
* *Som.* My lords, forbear this talk; here comes the king.

Flourish. Enter King EDWARD, *attended*; *Lady* GREY, *as Queen*; PEMBROKE, STAFFORD, HASTINGS, *and Others.*

* *Glo.* And his well-chosen bride.
* *Clar.* I mind to tell him plainly what I think.
' *K. Edw.* Now, brother of Clarence, how like you our choice,
' That you stand pensive, as half malcontent?
' *Clar.* As well as Lewis of France, or the earl of Warwick;
' Which are so weak of courage, and in judgment,
' That they'll take no offence at our abuse.
' *K. Edw.* Suppose, they take offence without a cause,
' They are but Lewis and Warwick; I am Edward,
' Your king and Warwick's, and must have my will.
' *Glo.* And you shall have your will, because our king:
' Yet hasty marriage seldom proveth well.
K. Edw. Yea, brother Richard, are you offended too?
' *Glo.* Not I:
' No; God forbid, that I should wish them sever'd
' Whom God hath join'd together: ay, and 'twere pity,
To sunder them that yoke so well together.
' *K. Edw.* Setting your scorns, and your mislike, aside,
' Tell me some reason, why the lady Grey
' Should not become my wife, and England's queen:—

' And you too, Somerset, and Montague,
' Speak freely what you think.
' *Clar.* Then this is my opinion,—that king Lewis
' Becomes your enemy, for mocking him
' About the marriage of the lady Bona.
' *Glo.* And Warwick, doing what you gave in charge,
' Is now dishonoured by this new marriage.
' *K. Edw.* What, if both Lewis and Warwick be appeas'd,
' By such invention as I can devise?
Mont. Yet to have join'd with France in such alliance,
Would more have strengthen'd this our commonwealth
' 'Gainst foreign storms, than any home-bred marriage.
' *Hast.* Why, knows not Montague, that of itself
' England is safe, if true within itself?[4]
* *Mont.* Yes; but the safer, when it is back'd with France.
* *Hast.* 'Tis better using France, than trusting France:
* Let us be back'd with God, and with the seas,[5]
* Which he hath given for fence impregnable,
* And with their helps only defend ourselves;
* In them, and in ourselves, our safety lies.
Clar. For this one speech, lord Hastings well deserves
' To have the heir of the lord Hungerford.

[4] *Why, knows not Montague, that of itself*
England is safe, if true within itself?] Neither the lapse of two centuries, nor any circumstance which has occurred during that eventful period, has in any degree shook the credit of this observation, or impaired the confidence of the publick in the truth of it. " England is and will be still safe, if true within itself."

[5] —— *with the seas,*] This has been the advice of every man who in any age understood and favoured the interest of England.

'*K. Edw.* Ay, what of that? it was my will, and grant;
* And, for this once, my will shall stand for law.
'*Glo.* And yet, methinks, your grace hath not done well,
'To give the heir and daughter of lord Scales
'Unto the brother of your loving bride;
'She better would have fitted me, or Clarence:
'But in your bride you bury brotherhood.
'*Clar.* Or else you would not have bestow'd the heir[6]
'Of the lord Bonville on your new wife's son,
'And leave your brothers to go speed elsewhere.
K. Edw. Alas, poor Clarence! is it for a wife,
'That thou art malcontent? I will provide thee.
'*Clar.* In choosing for yourself, you show'd your judgment;
'Which being shallow, you shall give me leave
'To play the broker in mine own behalf;
'And, to that end, I shortly mind to leave you.
'*K. Edw.* Leave me, or tarry, Edward will be king,
'And not be tied unto his brother's will.
'*Q. Eliz.* My lords, before it pleas'd his majesty
'To raise my state to title of a queen,
'Do me but right, and you must all confess
'That I was not ignoble of descent,[7]

[6] —— *you would not have bestow'd the heir* —] It must be remembered, that till the Restoration, the heiresses of great estates were in the wardship of the King, who in their minority gave them up to plunder, and afterwards matched them to his favourites. I know not when liberty gained more than by the abolition of the court of wards. JOHNSON.

[7] —— *I was not ignoble of descent,*] Her father was Sir Richard Widville, Knight, afterwards Earl of Rivers; her mother, Jaqueline, Duchess Dowager of Bedford, who was daughter to Peter of Luxemburgh, Earl of Saint Paul, and widow of John Duke of Bedford, brother to King Henry V.

* And meaner than myself have had like fortune.
* But as this title honours me and mine,
* So your dislikes, to whom I would be pleasing,
* Do cloud my joys with danger and with sorrow.
' *K. Edw.* My love, forbear to fawn upon their frowns:
' What danger, or what sorrow can befall thee,
' So long as Edward is thy constant friend,
' And their true sovereign, whom they must obey?
' Nay, whom they shall obey, and love thee too,
' Unless they seek for hatred at my hands:
' Which if they do, yet will I keep thee safe,
' And they shall feel the vengeance of my wrath.
* *Glo.* I hear, yet say not much, but think the more. [*Aside.*

Enter a Messenger.

' *K. Edw.* Now, messenger, what letters, or what news,
From France?
' *Mess.* My sovereign liege, no letters; and few words,
' But such as I, without your special pardon,
Dare not relate.
' *K. Edw.* Go to, we pardon thee: therefore, in brief,
' Tell me their words as near as thou canst guess them.
' What answer makes king Lewis unto our letters?
Mess. At my depart, these were his very words;
Go tell false Edward, thy supposed king,—
That Lewis of France is sending over maskers,
To revel it with him and his new bride.
K. Edw. Is Lewis so brave? belike, he thinks me Henry.
' But what said lady Bona to my marriage?

Mess. These were her words, utter'd with mild disdain;
Tell him, in hope he'll prove a widower shortly,
I'll wear the willow garland for his sake.
K. Edw. I blame not her, she could say little less;
' She had the wrong. But what said Henry's queen?
' For I have heard, that she was there in place.[8]
Mess. *Tell him,* quoth she, *my mourning weeds are done,*[9]
And I am ready to put armour on.
' *K. Edw.* Belike, she minds to play the Amazon.
But what said Warwick to these injuries?
' *Mess.* He, more incens'd against your majesty
' Than all the rest, discharg'd me with these words;
Tell him from me, that he hath done me wrong,
And therefore I'll uncrown him, ere't be long.
K. Edw. Ha! durst the traitor breathe out so proud words?
' Well, I will arm me, being thus forewarn'd:
' They shall have wars, and pay for their presumption.
' But say, is Warwick friends with Margaret?
Mess. Ay, gracious sovereign; they are so link'd in friendship,
' That young prince Edward marries Warwick's daughter.
Clar. Belike, the elder; Clarence will have the younger.
* Now, brother king, farewell, and sit you fast,
* For I will hence to Warwick's other daughter;
* That, though I want a kingdom, yet in marriage
* I may not prove inferior to yourself.—

[8] —— *she was there* in place.] This expression, signifying, she was there *present*, occurs frequently in old English writers. *En place*, a Gallicism.

[9] —— *are* done,] i. e. are consumed, thrown off. The word is often used in this sense by the writers of our author's age.

You, that love me and Warwick, follow me.
[*Exit* CLARENCE, *and* SOMERSET *follows.*
* *Glo.* Not I:
* My thoughts aim at a further matter; I
* Stay not for love of Edward, but the crown.
[*Aside.*
K. Edw. Clarence and Somerset both gone to Warwick!
* Yet am I arm'd against the worst can happen;
* And haste is needful in this desperate case.—
' Pembroke, and Stafford, you in our behalf
' Go levy men, and make prepare for war;
' They are already, or quickly will be landed:
' Myself in person will straight follow you.
[*Exeunt* PEMBROKE *and* STAFFORD.
' But, ere I go, Hastings,—and Montague,—
' Resolve my doubt. You twain, of all the rest,
' Are near to Warwick, by blood, and by alliance:
' Tell me, if you love Warwick more than me?
' If it be so, then both depart to him;
' I rather wish you foes, than hollow friends;
' But if you mind to hold your true obedience,
' Give me assurance with some friendly vow,
' That I may never have you in suspect.
Mont. So God help Montague, as he proves true!
Hast. And Hastings, as he favours Edward's cause!
' *K. Edw.* Now, brother Richard, will you stand by us?
Glo. Ay, in despite of all that shall withstand you.
' *K. Hen.* Why so; then am I sure of victory.
' Now therefore let us hence; and lose no hour.
' Till we meet Warwick with his foreign power.
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE II.

A Plain in Warwickshire.

Enter WARWICK *and* OXFORD, *with* French *and other Forces.*

War. Trust me, my lord, all hitherto goes well;
The common people by numbers swarm to us.

Enter CLARENCE *and* SOMERSET.

But, see, where Somerset and Clarence come;—
Speak suddenly, my lords, are we all friends?
Clar. Fear not that, my lord.
War. Then, gentle Clarence, welcome unto Warwick;
And welcome, Somerset:—I hold it cowardice,
To rest mistrustful where a noble heart
Hath pawn'd an open hand in sign of love;
Else might I think, that Clarence, Edward's brother,
Were but a feigned friend to our proceedings:
But welcome, Clarence; my daughter shall be thine.
And now what rests, but, in night's coverture,
Thy brother being carelessly encamp'd,
His soldiers lurking in the towns about,
And but attended by a simple guard,
We may surprize and take him at our pleasure?
Our scouts have found the adventure very easy:
* That as Ulysses, and stout Diomede,
* With sleight and manhood stole to Rhesus' tents,
* And brought from thence the Thracian fatal steeds;[1]
* So we, well cover'd with the night's black mantle,

[1] —— the Thracian *fatal* steeds;] We are told by some of the writers on the Trojan story, that the capture of these horses was one of the necessary preliminaries to the fate of Troy.

* At unawares may beat down Edward's guard,
* And seize himself; I say not—slaughter him,
* For I intend but only to surprize him.—
' You, that will follow me to this attempt,
' Applaud the name of Henry, with your leader.
[*They all cry*, Henry!
Why, then, let's on our way in silent sort:
For Warwick and his friends, God and Saint George! [*Exeunt.*

SCENE III.

Edward's *Camp, near* Warwick.

Enter certain Watchmen, *to guard the King's Tent.*

* 1 *Watch.* Come on, my masters, each man take his stand;
* The king, by this, is set him down to sleep.
* 2 *Watch.* What, will he not to-bed?
* 1 *Watch.* Why, no: for he hath made a solemn vow
* Never to lie and take his natural rest,
* Till Warwick, or himself, be quite suppress'd.
* 2 *Watch.* To-morrow then, belike, shall be the day,
* If Warwick be so near as men report.
* 3 *Watch.* But say, I pray, what nobleman is that,
* That with the king here resteth in his tent?
* 1 *Watch.* 'Tis the lord Hastings, the king's chiefest friend.
* 3 *Watch.* O, is it so? But why commands the king,
* That his chief followers lodge in towns about him,
* While he himself keepeth in the cold field?

* 2 *Watch.* 'Tis the more honour, because more dangerous.
* 3 *Watch.* Ay; but give me worship and quietness,
* I like it better than a dangerous honour.
* If Warwick knew in what estate he stands,
* 'Tis to be doubted, he would waken him.
* 1 *Watch.* Unless our halberds did shut up his passage.
* 2 *Watch.* Ay; wherefore else guard we his royal tent,
* But to defend his person from night-foes?

Enter WARWICK, CLARENCE, OXFORD, SOMERSET, *and Forces.*

' *War.* This is his tent; and see, where stand his guard.
' Courage, my masters: honour now, or never!
' But follow me, and Edward shall be ours.
1 *Watch.* Who goes there?
2 *Watch.* Stay, or thou diest.
[WARWICK, *and the rest, cry all*—Warwick! Warwick! *and set upon the Guard; who fly, crying*—*Arm! Arm!* WARWICK, *and the rest, following them.*

The Drum beating, and Trumpets sounding, Re-enter WARWICK, *and the rest, bringing the* King *out in a Gown, sitting in a Chair:* GLOSTER *and* HASTINGS *fly.*

' *Som.* What are they that fly there?
' *War.* Richard, and Hastings: let them go, here's the duke.
K. Edw. The duke! why, Warwick, when we parted last,
Thou call'dst me king?
War. Ay, but the case is alter'd:

‘ When you disgrac'd me in my embassade,
‘ Then I degraded you from being king,
And come now to create you duke of York.
Alas! how should you govern any kingdom,
That know not how to use ambassadors;
Nor how to be contented with one wife;
Nor how to use your brothers brotherly;
* Nor how to study for the people's welfare;
Nor how to shrowd yourself from enemies?
* *K. Edw.* Yea, brother of Clarence, art thou here too?
* Nay, then I see, that Edward needs must down.—
‘ Yet, Warwick, in despite of all mischance,
‘ Of thee thyself, and all thy complices,
‘ Edward will always bear himself as king:
* Though fortune's malice overthrow my state,
* My mind exceeds the compass of her wheel.
War. Then, for his mind, be Edward England's king:[2] [*Takes off his Crown*
But Henry now shall wear the English crown,
* And be true king indeed; thou but the shadow.—
‘ My lord of Somerset, at my request,
‘ See that forthwith duke Edward be convey'd
‘ Unto my brother, archbishop of York.
‘ When I have fought with Pembroke and his fellows,
‘ I'll follow you, and tell what answer
‘ Lewis, and the lady Bona, send to him:—
Now, for a while, farewell, good duke of York.
* *K. Edw.* What fates impose, that men must needs abide;
* It boots not to resist both wind and tide.
[*Exit King* EDWARD, *led out*; SOMERSET *with him.*
* *Oxf.* What now remains, my lords, for us to do,
* But march to London with our soldiers?

[2] *Then, for his mind, be Edward England's king:*] That is, in his mind; as far as his own mind goes.

War. Ay, that's the first thing that we have to do;
' To free king Henry from imprisonment,
And see him seated in the regal throne. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE IV.

London. *A Room in the Palace.*

Enter Queen ELIZABETH *and* RIVERS.

' *Riv.* Madam, what makes you in this sudden change?
' *Q. Eliz.* Why, brother Rivers, are you yet to learn,
' What late misfortune is befall'n king Edward?
Riv. What, loss of some pitch'd battle against Warwick?
' *Q. Eliz.* No, but the loss of his own royal person.
' *Riv.* Then is my sovereign slain?
' *Q. Eliz.* Ay, almost slain, for he is taken prisoner;
' Either betray'd by falsehood of his guard,
' Or by his foe surpriz'd at unawares:
' And, as I further have to understand,
' Is new committed to the bishop of York,
' Fell Warwick's brother, and by that our foe.
' *Riv.* These news, I must confess, are full of grief:
' Yet, gracious madam, bear it as you may;
' Warwick may lose, that now hath won the day.
* *Q. Eliz.* Till then, fair hope must hinder life's decay.
* And I the rather wean me from despair,
* For love of Edward's offspring in my womb:
* This is it that makes me bridle passion,
* And bear with mildness my misfortune's cross;
* Ay, ay, for this I draw in many a tear,
* And stop the rising of blood-sucking sighs,

* Lest with my sighs or tears I blast or drown
' King Edward's fruit, true heir to the English crown.
* *Riv.* But, madam, where is Warwick then become?
' *Q. Eliz.* I am informed, that he comes towards London,
* To set the crown once more on Henry's head:
* Guess thou the rest; king Edward's friends must down.
' But, to prevent the tyrant's violence,
' (For trust not him that hath once broken faith,)
' I'll hence forthwith unto the sanctuary,
' To save at least the heir of Edward's right;
' There shall I rest secure from force, and fraud.
' Come therefore, let us fly, while we may fly;
' If Warwick take us, we are sure to die. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE V.

A Park near Middleham *Castle in* Yorkshire.

Enter GLOSTER, HASTINGS, *Sir* WILLIAM STANLEY, *and Others.*

' *Glo.* Now, my lord Hastings, and sir William Stanley,
' Leave off to wonder why I drew you hither,
' Into this chiefest thicket of the park.
' Thus stands the case: You know, our king, my brother,
' Is prisoner to the bishop here, at whose hands
' He hath good usage and great liberty;
' And often, but attended with weak guard,
' Comes hunting this way to disport himself.
' I have advértis'd him by secret means,
' That if about this hour, he make this way,
' Under the colour of his usual game,

'He shall here find his friends, with horse and men,
'To set him free from his captivity.

Enter King EDWARD, *and a* Huntsman.

'*Hunt.* This way, my lord; for this way lies the game.

'*K. Edw.* Nay, this way, man; see, where the huntsmen stand.—

'Now, brother of Gloster, lord Hastings, and the rest,
'Stand you thus close, to steal the bishop's deer?

'*Glo.* Brother, the time and case requireth haste;
'Your horse stands ready at the park corner.

'*K. Edw.* But whither shall we then?

'*Hast.* To Lynn, my lord; and ship from thence to Flanders.

'*Glo.* Well guess'd, believe me; for that was my meaning.

'*K. Edw.* Stanley, I will requite thy forwardness.

* *Glo.* But wherefore stay we? 'tis no time to talk.

'*K. Edw.* Huntsman, what say'st thou? wilt thou go along?

'*Hunt.* Better do so, than tarry and be hang'd.

* *Glo.* Come then, away; let's have no more ado.

'*K. Edw.* Bishop, farewell: shield thee from Warwick's frown;
And pray that I may repossess the crown. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE VI.

A Room in the Tower.

Enter King HENRY, CLARENCE, WARWICK, SOMERSET, *young* RICHMOND, OXFORD, MONTAGUE, Lieutenant *of the Tower, and* Attendants.

* *K. Hen.* Master lieutenant, now that God and friends

* Have shaken Edward from the regal seat;
* And turn'd my captive state to liberty,
* My fear to hope, my sorrows unto joys;
* At our enlargement what are thy due fees?
* *Lieu.* Subjects may challenge nothing of their sovereigns;
* But, if an humble prayer may prevail,
* I then crave pardon of your majesty.
* *K. Hen.* For what, lieutenant? for well using me?
* Nay, be thou sure, I'll well requite thy kindness,
* For that it made my imprisonment a pleasure:
* Ay, such a pleasure as incaged birds
* Conceive, when, after many moody thoughts,
* At last, by notes of household harmony,
* They quite forget their loss of liberty.—
* But, Warwick, after God, thou set'st me free,
* And chiefly therefore I thank God, and thee;
* He was the author, thou the instrument.
* Therefore, that I may conquer fortune's spite,
* By living low, where fortune cannot hurt me;
* And that the people of this blessed land
* May not be punish'd with my thwarting stars;
' Warwick, although my head still wear the crown,
' I here resign my government to thee,
' For thou art fortunate in all thy deeds.
* *War.* Your grace hath still been fam'd for virtuous;
* And now may seem as wise as virtuous,
* By spying, and avoiding, fortune's malice,
* For few men rightly temper with the stars:[3]
* Yet in this one thing let me blame your grace,
* For choosing me, when Clarence is in place.[4]

[3] ——*few men rightly* temper *with the stars:*] I suppose the meaning is, that few men conform their *temper* to their destiny; which King Henry did, when finding himself unfortunate he gave the management of publick affairs to more prosperous hands.
JOHNSON.

* *Clar.* No, Warwick, thou art worthy of the sway,
* To whom the heavens, in thy nativity,
* Adjudg'd an olive branch, and laurel crown,
* As likely to be blest in peace, and war;
* And therefore I yield thee my free consent.
* *War.* And I choose Clarence only for protector.
* *K. Hen.* Warwick, and Clarence, give me both your hands;
* Now join your hands, and, with your hands, your hearts,
* That no dissention hinder government:
' I make you both protectors of this land;
' While I myself will lead a private life,
' And in devotion spend my latter days,
To sin's rebuke, and my Creator's praise.
War. What answers Clarence to his sovereign's will?
* *Clar.* That he consents, if Warwick yield consent;
* For on thy fortune I repose myself.
* *War.* Why then, though loath, yet must I be content:
* We'll yoke together, like a double shadow
* To Henry's body, and supply his place;
* I mean, in bearing weight of government,
* While he enjoys the honour, and his ease.
* And, Clarence, now then it is more than needful,
* Forthwith that Edward be pronounc'd a traitor,
* And all his lands and goods be confiscate.
Clar. What else? and that succession be determin'd.
* *War.* Ay, therein Clarence shall not want his part.
* *K. Hen.* But, with the first of all your chief affairs,

' —— *in place.*] i. e. here present.

* Let me entreat, (for I command no more,)
* That Margaret your queen, and my son Edward,
* Be sent for, to return from France with speed:
* For, till I see them here, by doubtful fear
* My joy of liberty is half eclips'd.
Clar. It shall be done, my sovereign, with all speed.
' *K. Hen.* My lord of Somerset, what youth is that,
' Of whom you seem to have so tender care?
' *Som.* My liege, it is young Henry, earl of Richmond.
' *K. Hen.* Come hither, England's hope: If secret powers [*Lays his Hand on his Head.*
' Suggest but truth to my divining thoughts,
' This pretty lad[5] will prove our country's bliss.
' His looks are full of peaceful majesty;
' His head by nature fram'd to wear a crown,
' His hand to wield a scepter; and himself
' Likely, in time, to bless a regal throne.
Make much of him, my lords; for this is he,
' Must help you more than you are hurt by me.

Enter a Messenger.

* *War.* What news, my friend?
* *Mess.* That Edward is escaped from your brother,
* And fled, as he hears since, to Burgundy.
* *War.* Unsavoury news: But how made he escape?
* *Mess.* He was convey'd by Richard duke of Gloster,
* And the lord Hastings, who attended him[6]
* In secret ambush on the forest side,
* And from the bishop's huntsmen rescued him;

[5] *This pretty lad* —] He was afterwards Henry VII. a man who put an end to the civil war of the two houses, but no otherwise remarkable for virtue. Shakspeare knew his trade. Henry VII. was grandfather to Queen Elizabeth, and the king from whom James inherited. JOHNSON.

[6] —— *attended him* —] i. e. waited for him.

* For hunting was his daily exercise.
  * *War.* My brother was too careless of his charge.—
* But let us hence, my sovereign, to provide
* A salve for any sore that may betide.
  [*Exeunt King* HENRY, WAR. CLAR. Lieut. *and Attendants.*
  * *Som.* My lord, I like not of this flight of Edward's:
* For, doubtless, Burgundy will yield him help;
* And we shall have more wars, before't be long.
* As Henry's late presaging prophecy
* Did glad my heart, with hope of this young Richmond;
* So doth my heart misgive me, in these conflicts
* What may befall him, to his harm, and ours:
* Therefore, lord Oxford, to prevent the worst,
* Forthwith we'll send him hence to Britany,
* Till storms be past of civil enmity.
  * *Oxf.* Ay; for, if Edward repossess the crown,
* 'Tis like, that Richmond with the rest shall down.
  * *Som.* It shall be so; he shall to Britany.
* Come therefore, let's about it speedily. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE VII.

Before York.

Enter King EDWARD, GLOSTER, HASTINGS, *and Forces.*

' *K. Edw.* Now, brother Richard, lord Hastings, and the rest;
' Yet thus far fortune maketh us amends,
' And says—that once more I shall interchange
' My waned state for Henry's regal crown.
' Well have we pass'd, and now repass'd the seas,

' And brought desired help from Burgundy:
' What then remains, we being thus arriv'd
' From Ravenspurg haven before the gates of York,
' But that we enter, as into our dukedom?
' *Glo.* The gates made fast!—Brother, I like not this;
* For many men, that stumble at the threshold,
* Are well foretold—that danger lurks within.
* *K. Edw.* Tush, man! abodements must not now affright us:
* By fair or foul means we must enter in,
* For hither will our friends repair to us.
* *Hast.* My liege, I'll knock once more, to summon them.

Enter, on the Walls, the Mayor *of* York, *and his Brethren.*

' *May.* My lords, we were forewarned of your coming,
' And shut the gates for safety of ourselves;
' For now we owe allegiance unto Henry.
' *K. Edw.* But, master mayor, if Henry be your king,
' Yet Edward, at the least, is duke of York.
' *May.* True, my good lord; I know you for no less.
' *K. Edw.* Why, and I challenge nothing but my dukedom;
* As being well content with that alone.
' *Glo.* But, when the fox hath once got in his nose,
' He'll soon find means to make the body follow.
[*Aside.*
' *Hast.* Why, master mayor, why stand you in a doubt?
Open the gates, we are king Henry's friends.
' *May.* Ay, say you so? the gates shall then be open'd.
[*Exeunt from above.*

' *Glo.* A wise stout captain, and persuaded soon!
* *Hast.* The good old man would fain that all were well,[7]
* So 'twere not 'long of him: but, being enter'd,
* I doubt not, I, but we shall soon persuade
* Both him, and all his brothers, unto reason.

Re-enter the Mayor *and Two* Aldermen, *below.*

' *K. Edw.* So, master mayor: these gates must not be shut,
' But in the night, or in the time of war.
' What! fear not, man, but yield me up the keys;
[*Takes his keys.*
' For Edward will defend the town, and thee,
' And all those friends that deign to follow me.

Drum. Enter MONTGOMERY, *and Forces, marching.*

Glo. Brother, this is sir John Montgomery,
Our trusty friend, unless I be deceiv'd.
' *K. Edw.* Welcome, sir John! But why come you in arms?
Mont. To help king Edward in his time of storm,
As every loyal subject ought to do.
' *K. Edw.* Thanks, good Montgomery: But we now forget
' Our title to the crown; and only claim
' Our dukedom, till God please to send the rest.
' *Mont.* Then fare you well, for I will hence again;
I came to serve a king, and not a duke,—
' Drummer, strike up, and let us march away.
[*A March begun.*
' *K. Edw.* Nay, stay, sir John, a while; and we'll debate,

[7] *The good old man would fain that all were well,*] The mayor is willing we should enter, so he may not be blamed.

' By what safe means the crown may be recover'd.
' *Mont.* What talk you of debating? in few words,
' If you'll not here proclaim yourself our king,
' I'll leave you to your fortune; and be gone,
To keep them back that come to succour you:
Why should we fight, if you pretend no title?
' *Glo.* Why, brother, wherefore stand you on nice points?
* *K. Edw.* When we grow stronger, then we'll make our claim:
* Till then, 'tis wisdom to conceal our meaning.
* *Hast.* Away with scrupulous wit! now arms must rule.
* *Glo.* And fearless minds climb soonest unto crowns.
* Brother, we will proclaim you out of hand;
* The bruit[8] thereof will bring you many friends.
* *K. Edw.* Then be it as you will; for 'tis my right,
* And Henry but usurps the diadem.
Mont. Ay, now my sovereign speaketh like himself;
And now will I be Edward's champion.
Hast. Sound, trumpet; Edward shall be here proclaim'd:—
* Come, fellow-soldier, make thou proclamation.
[*Gives him a Paper. Flourish.*
Sold. [*Reads.*] *Edward the fourth, by the grace of God, king of England and France, and lord of Ireland,* &c.
Mont. And whosoe'er gainsays king Edward's right,
By this I challenge him to single fight.
[*Throws down his Gauntlet.*
All. Long live Edward the fourth!
' *K. Edw.* Thanks, brave Montgomery;—and thanks unto you all.
' If fortune serve me, I'll requite this kindness.

[8] *The* bruit —] i. e. noise, report.

' Now, for this night, let's harbour here in York:
' And, when the morning sun shall raise his car
' Above the border of this horizon,
' We'll forward towards Warwick, and his mates;
' For, well I wot, that Henry is no soldier.—
* Ah, froward Clarence!—how evil it beseems thee,
* To flatter Henry, and forsake thy brother!
* Yet, as we may, we'll meet both thee and War
wick.—
* Come on, brave soldiers; doubt not of the day;
* And, that once gotten, doubt not of large pay.
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE VIII.

London. *A Room in the Palace.*

Enter King HENRY, WARWICK, CLARENCE, MONTAGUE, EXETER, *and* OXFORD.

War. What counsel, lords? Edward from Belgia,
With hasty Germans, and blunt Hollanders,
Hath pass'd in safety through the narrow seas,
And with his troops doth march amain to London;
' And many giddy people flock to him.
* *Oxf.* Let's levy men, and beat him back again.
Clar. A little fire is quickly trodden out;
Which, being suffer'd, rivers cannot quench.
War. In Warwickshire I have true-hearted friends,
Not mutinous in peace, yet bold in war;
Those will I muster up:—and thou, son Clarence,
' Shalt stir, in Suffolk, Norfolk, and in Kent,
' The knights and gentlemen to come with thee:—
' Thou, brother Montague, in Buckingham,
' Northampton, and in Leicestershire, shalt find
' Men well inclin'd to hear what thou command'st:—
And thou, brave Oxford, wondrous well belov'd,
In Oxfordshire shall muster up thy friends.—

My sovereign, with the loving citizens,—
* Like to his island, girt in with the ocean,
* Or modest Dian, circled with her nymphs,—
Shall rest in London, till we come to him.—
Fair lords, take leave, and stand not to reply.—
Farewell, my sovereign.

K. Hen. Farewell, my Hector, and my Troy's true hope.

* *Clar.* In sign of truth, I kiss your highness' hand.

* *K. Hen.* Well-minded Clarence, be thou fortunate!

* *Mont.* Comfort, my lord;—and so I take my leave.

* *Oxf.* And thus [*Kissing* HENRY's *hand.*] I seal my truth, and bid adieu.

* *K. Hen.* Sweet Oxford, and my loving Montague,
* And all at once, once more a happy farewell.

War. Farewell, sweet lords; let's meet at Coventry.

[*Exeunt* WAR. CLAR. OXF. *and* MONT.

* *K. Hen.* Here at the palace will I rest a while.
* Cousin of Exeter, what thinks your lordship?
* Methinks, the power, that Edward hath in field,
* Should not be able to encounter mine.

* *Exe.* The doubt is, that he will seduce the rest.

* *K. Hen.* That's not my fear, my meed[9] hath got me fame.
* I have not stopp'd mine ears to their demands,
* Nor posted off their suits with slow delays;
* My pity hath been balm to heal their wounds,
* My mildness hath allay'd their swelling griefs,
* My mercy dry'd their water-flowing tears:
* I have not been desirous of their wealth,
* Nor much oppress'd them with great subsidies,

[9] —— *my* meed —] *Meed* signifies here merit.

* Nor forward of revenge, though they much err'd;
* Then why should they love Edward more than me?
* No, Exeter, these graces challenge grace:
* And, when the lion fawns upon the lamb,
* The lamb will never cease to follow him.

[*Shout within.* *A* Lancaster! *A* Lancaster!

Exe. Hark, hark, my lord! what shouts are these?

Enter King EDWARD, GLOSTER, *and Soldiers.*

' *Edw.* Seize on the shame-fac'd Henry, bear him hence,
' And once again proclaim us king of England.—
* You are the fount, that makes small brooks to flow,
* Now stops thy spring; my sea shall suck them dry,
* And swell so much the higher by their ebb.—
' Hence with him to the Tower; let him not speak.

[*Exeunt some with King* HENRY.

' And, lords, towards Coventry bend we our course,
' Where peremptory Warwick now remains:
' The sun shines hot, and, if we use delay,
' Cold-biting winter mars our hop'd-for hay.[1]

* *Glo.* Away betimes, before his forces join,
* And take the great-grown traitor unawares:
* Brave warriors, march amain towards Coventry.

[*Exeunt.*

[1] *The sun shines hot,* &c.] The allusion is to a well-known proverb—"Make *hay* while the sun shines."

ACT V.

SCENE I. Coventry

Enter, upon the Walls, WARWICK, *the Mayor of* Coventry, *Two* Messengers, *and Others.*

War. Where is the post, that came from valiant Oxford?
How far hence is thy lord, mine honest fellow?
' 1 *Mess.* By this at Dunsmore, marching hitherward.
War. How far off is our brother Montague?—
Where is the post that came from Montague?
' 2 *Mess.* By this at Daintry, with a puissant troop.

Enter Sir JOHN SOMERVILLE.

' *War.* Say, Somerville, what says my loving son?
' And, by the guess, how nigh is Clarence now?
' *Som.* At Southam I did leave him with his forces,
' And do expect him here some two hours hence.
[*Drum heard.*
' *War.* Then Clarence is at hand, I hear his drum.
* *Som.* It is not his, my lord; here Southam lies;
* The drum your honour hears, marcheth from Warwick.
* *War.* Who should that be? belike, unlook'd-for friends.
* *Som.* They are at hand, and you shall quickly know.

Drums. Enter King EDWARD, GLOSTER, *and Forces, marching.*

* *K. Edw.* Go, trumpet, to the walls, and sound a parle.

' *Glo.* See, how the surly Warwick mans the wall.
War. O, unbid spite! is sportful Edward come?
Where slept our scouts, or how are they seduc'd,
That we could hear no news of his repair?
* *K. Edw.* Now, Warwick, wilt thou ope the city gates,
' Speak gentle words, and humbly bend thy knee?—
' Call Edward—king, and at his hands beg mercy,
' And he shall pardon thee these outrages.
' *War.* Nay, rather, wilt thou draw thy forces hence,
Confess who set thee up and pluck'd thee down?—
Call Warwick—patron, and be penitent,
And thou shalt still remain the duke of York.
Glo. I thought, at least, he would have said—the king;
Or did he make the jest against his will?
* *War.* Is not a dukedom, sir, a goodly gift?
* *Glo.* Ay, by my faith, for a poor earl to give;
* I'll do thee service[2] for so good a gift.
' *War.* 'Twas I, that gave the kingdom to thy brother.
K. Edw. Why, then 'tis mine, if but by Warwick's gift.
' *War.* Thou art no Atlas for so great a weight:
And, weakling, Warwick takes his gift again;
And Henry is my king, Warwick his subject.
* *K. Edw.* But Warwick's king is Edward's prisoner:
' And, gallant Warwick, do but answer this,—
What is the body, when the head is off?
' *Glo.* Alas, that Warwick had no more forecast,
But, whiles he thought to steal the single ten,

[2] *I'll do thee* service—] i. e. enroll myself among thy dependants. Cowell informs us, that *servitium* is "that *service* which the tenant, by reason of his fee, oweth unto his lord."

' The king was slily finger'd from the deck![3]
You left poor Henry at the bishop's palace,
And, ten to one, you'll meet him in the Tower.
K. Edw. 'Tis even so; yet you are Warwick still.
* *Glo.* Come, Warwick, take the time, kneel down, kneel down:
* Nay, when? strike now, or else the iron cools.
* *War.* I had rather chop this hand off at a blow,
* And with the other fling it at thy face,
* Than bear so low a sail, to strike to thee.
* *K. Edw.* Sail how thou canst, have wind and tide thy friend;
* This hand, fast wound about thy coal-black hair,
* Shall, whiles the head is warm, and new cut off,
* Write in the dust this sentence with thy blood,—
' *Wind-changing* Warwick *now can change no more.*

Enter OXFORD, *with Drum and Colours.*

* *War.* O cheerful colours! see, where Oxford comes!
Oxf. Oxford, Oxford, for Lancaster!
[OXFORD *and his Forces enter the City.*
' *Glo.* The gates are open, let us enter too.
' *K. Edw.* So other foes may set upon our backs,
* Stand we in good array; for they, no doubt,
* Will issue out again, and bid us battle:
' If not, the city, being but of small defence,
' We'll quickly rouse the traitors in the same.
War. O, welcome, Oxford! for we want thy help.

Enter MONTAGUE, *with Drum and Colours.*

Mont. Montague, Montague, for Lancaster!
[*He and his Forces enter the City.*
' *Glo.* Thou and thy brother both shall buy this treason

[3] *The king was* slily *finger'd from the* deck!] A pack of cards was anciently termed *a deck of cards*, or *a pair of cards*, and is still in use in some parts.

‘ Even with the dearest blood your bodies bear.
* *K. Edw.* The harder match'd, the greater victory;
* My mind presageth happy gain, and conquest.

Enter SOMERSET, *with Drum and Colours.*

Som. Somerset, Somerset, for Lancaster!
[*He and his Forces enter the City.*
Glo. Two of thy name, both dukes of Somerset,
Have sold their lives unto the house of York;[4]
And thou shalt be the third, if this sword hold.

Enter CLARENCE, *with Drum and Colours.*

War. And lo, where George of Clarence sweeps along,
Of force enough to bid his brother battle;
* With whom an upright zeal to right prevails,
* More than the nature of a brother's love:—
* Come, Clarence, come; thou wilt, if Warwick calls.
Clar. Father of Warwick, know you what this means?
[*Taking the red Rose out of his Cap.*
‘ Look here, I throw my infamy at thee:
I will not ruinate my father's house,
Who gave his blood to lime the stones[5] together,
‘ And set up Lancaster. Why, trow'st thou, Warwick,

[4] Two of thy name, both *dukes of Somerset,*
Have sold their lives unto the house of York;] The first of these noblemen was Edmund, slain at the battle of Saint Alban's, 1455. The second was Henry his son, beheaded after the battle of Hexham, 1463. The present duke Edmund, brother to Henry, was taken prisoner at Tewksbury, 1471, and there beheaded, his brother John losing his life in the same fight.

[5] —— *to lime the stones*—] That is, to *cement* the stones. Lime makes mortar.

'That Clarence is so harsh, so blunt,[6] unnatural,
'To bend the fatal instruments of war
'Against his brother, and his lawful king?
* Perhaps, thou wilt object my holy oath:
* To keep that oath, were more impiety
* Than Jephtha's, when he sacrific'd his daughter.
* I am so sorry for my trespass made,
* That, to deserve well at my brother's hands,
* I here proclaim myself thy mortal foe;
* With resolution, wheresoe'er I meet thee,
* (As I will meet thee, if thou stir abroad,)
* To plague thee for thy foul misleading me.
And so, proud-hearted Warwick, I defy thee,
And to my brother turn my blushing cheeks.—
'Pardon me, Edward, I will make amends;
'And, Richard, do not frown upon my faults,
'For I will henceforth be no more unconstant.
'*K. Edw.* Now welcome more, and ten times more belov'd,
Than if thou never hadst deserv'd our hate.
'*Glo.* Welcome, good Clarence; this is brother-like.
War. O passing traitor,[7] perjur'd, and unjust!
K. Edw. What, Warwick, wilt thou leave the town, and fight?
Or shall we beat the stones about thine ears?
'*War.* Alas, I am not coop'd here for defence:
I will away towards Barnet presently,
And bid thee battle, Edward, if thou dar'st.
K. Edw. Yes, Warwick, Edward dares, and leads the way:—
Lords, to the field; Saint George, and victory.
[*March. Exeunt.*

[6] —— *so blunt,*] Stupid, insensible of paternal fondness.
[7] —— passing *traitor,*] Eminent, egregious; traitorous beyond the common track of treason.

SCENE II.

A Field of Battle near Barnet.

Alarums, and Excursions. Enter King EDWARD, *bringing in* WARWICK *wounded.*

* *K. Edw.* So, lie thou there: die thou, and die our fear;
* For Warwick was a bug, that fear'd us all.[8]—
* Now, Montague, sit fast; I seek for thee,
* That Warwick's bones may keep thine company.
[*Exit.*

War. Ah, who is nigh! come to me, friend, or foe,
And tell me, who is victor, York, or Warwick?
Why ask I that? my mangled body shows,
* My blood, my want of strength, my sick heart shows,
That I must yield my body to the earth,
And, by my fall, the conquest to my foe.
Thus yields the cedar to the axe's edge,
Whose arms gave shelter to the princely eagle,
Under whose shade the ramping lion slept;
Whose top-branch overpeer'd Jove's spreading tree,
* And kept low shrubs from winter's powerful wind.
* These eyes, that now are dimm'd with death's black veil,
* Have been as piercing as the mid-day sun,
* To search the secret treasons of the world:
The wrinkles in my brows, now fill'd with blood,
Were liken'd oft to kingly sepulchres;
For who liv'd king, but I could dig his grave?
And who durst smile, when Warwick bent his brow?
Lo, now my glory smear'd in dust and blood!

[8] —— *a* bug, *that fear'd us all.*] *Bug* is a bugbear, a terrifick being.

My parks,[9] my walks, my manors that I had,
Even now forsake me; and, of all my lands,
Is nothing left me, but my body's length!
Why, what is pomp, rule, reign, but earth and dust?
And, live we how we can, yet die we must.

Enter OXFORD *and* SOMERSET.

* *Som.* Ah, Warwick, Warwick! wert thou as we are,
* We might recover all our loss again!
' The queen from France hath brought a puissant power;
' Even now we heard the news: Ah, could'st thou fly!
' *War.* Why, then I would not fly.—Ah, Montague,
* If thou be there, sweet brother, take my hand,
* And with thy lips keep in my soul a while!
* Thou lov'st me not; for, brother, if thou didst,
* Thy tears would wash this cold congealed blood,
* That glews my lips, and will not let me speak.
* Come quickly, Montague, or I am dead.
' *Som.* Ah, Warwick, Montague hath breath'd his last;
' And to the latest gasp, cried out for Warwick,
' And said—Commend me to my valiant brother.
' And more he would have said; and more he spoke,
' Which sounded like a cannon in a vault,[1]
' That might not be distinguish'd; but, at last,
' I well might hear deliver'd with a groan,—

[9] *My parks*, &c.] This mention of his *parks* and *manors* diminishes the pathetic effect of the foregoing lines.

[1] *Which sounded like a* cannon *in a vault*,] Mr. Steevens thinks *clamour*, which is in the old play, the proper word, and adds, "The indistinct gabble of undertakers, while they adjust a coffin in a family *vault*, will abundantly illustrate the preceding simile. Such a peculiar hubbub of inarticulate sounds might have attracted our author's notice: it has too often forced itself on mine."

'O, farewell, Warwick!
War. Sweet rest to his soul!—
Fly, lords, and save yourselves; for Warwick bids
You all farewell, to meet again in heaven. [*Dies.*
Oxf. Away, away, to meet the queen's great power!
[*Exeunt, bearing off* WARWICK's *Body.*

SCENE III.

Another Part of the Field.

Flourish. Enter King EDWARD *in triumph; with* CLARENCE, GLOSTER, *and the rest.*

'*K. Edw.* Thus far our fortune keeps an upward course,
'And we are grac'd with wreaths of victory.
'But, in the midst of this bright-shining day,
'I spy a black, suspicious, threat'ning cloud,
'That will encounter with our glorious sun,
'Ere he attain his easeful western bed:
'I mean, my lords,—those powers, that the queen
'Hath rais'd in Gallia, have arriv'd our coast,
'And, as we hear, march on to fight with us.
* *Clar.* A little gale will soon disperse that cloud,
* And blow it to the source from whence it came:
* Thy very beams will dry those vapours up;
* For every cloud engenders not a storm.
* *Glo.* The queen is valu'd thirty thousand strong,
'And Somerset, with Oxford, fled to her;
'If she have time to breathe, be well assur'd,
Her faction will be full as strong as ours.
K. Edw. We are advértis'd by our loving friends,
That they do hold their course toward Tewksbury;
'We having now the best at Barnet field,

' Will thither straight, For willingness rids way;
' And, as we march, our strength will be augmented
In every county as we go along.—
Strike up the drum; cry—Courage! and away.
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE IV.

Plains near Tewksbury.

March. *Enter Queen* MARGARET, *Prince* EDWARD, SOMERSET, OXFORD, *and Soldiers.*

* *Q. Mar.* Great lords, wise men ne'er sit and wail their loss,
* But cheerly seek how to redress their harms.
' What though the mast be now blown over-board,
' The cable broke, the holding anchor lost,
' And half our sailors swallow'd in the flood?
' Yet lives our pilot still: Is't meet, that he
' Should leave the helm, and, like a fearful lad,
* With tearful eyes add water to the sea,
* And give more strength to that which hath too much;
* Whiles, in his moan, the ship splits on the rock,
* Which industry and courage might have sav'd?
* Ah, what a shame! ah, what a fault were this!
' Say, Warwick was our anchor; What of that?
' And Montague our top-mast; What of him?
' Our slaughter'd friends the tackles; What of these?
' Why, is not Oxford here another anchor?
' And Somerset another goodly mast?
' The friends of France our shrouds and tacklings?
' And, though unskilful, why not Ned and I
' For once allow'd the skilful pilot's charge?
' We will not from the helm, to sit and weep;
* But keep our course, though the rough wind say—no,

* From shelves and rocks that threaten us with wreck.
* As good to chide the waves, as speak them fair.
* And what is Edward, but a ruthless sea?
* What Clarence, but a quicksand of deceit?
* And Richard, but a ragged fatal rock?
* All these the enemies to our poor bark.
* Say, you can swim; alas, 'tis but a while:
* Tread on the sand; why, there you quickly
* Bestride the rock; the tide will wash you off,
* Or else you famish, that's a threefold death.
* This speak I, lords, to let you understand,
* In case some one of you would fly from us,
* That there's no hop'd-for mercy with the brothers,
* More than with ruthless waves, with sands, and rocks.
* Why, courage, then! what cannot be avoided,
* 'Twere childish weakness to lament, or fear.
* *Prince.* Methinks, a woman of this valiant spirit
* Should, if a coward heard her speak these words,
* Infuse his breast with magnanimity,
* And make him, naked, foil a man at arms.
' I speak not this, as doubting any here:
' For, did I but suspect a fearful man,
' He should have leave to go away betimes;
' Lest, in our need, he might infect another,
' And make him of like spirit to himself.
' If any such be here, as God forbid!
' Let him depart, before we need his help.
' *Oxf.* Women and children of so high a courage!
And warriors faint! why, 'twere perpetual shame.—
' O, brave young prince! thy famous grandfather
Doth live again in thee; Long may'st thou live,
To bear his image, and renew his glories!
' *Som.* And he, that will not fight for such a hope,
' Go home to bed, and, like the owl by day,
' If he arise, be mock'd and wonder'd at.

* *Q. Mar.* Thanks, gentle Somerset;—sweet Oxford, thanks.

* *Prince.* And take his thanks, that yet hath nothing else.

Enter a Messenger.

' *Mess.* Prepare you, lords, for Edward is at hand,
' Ready to fight; therefore be resolute.

' *Oxf.* I thought no less: it is his policy,
' To haste thus fast, to find us unprovided.

Som. But he's deceiv'd, we are in readiness.

Q. Mar. This cheers my heart, to see your forwardness.

Oxf. Here pitch our battle, hence we will not budge.

March. Enter, at a distance, King EDWARD, CLARENCE, GLOSTER, *and Forces.*

' *K. Edw.* Brave followers, yonder stands the thorny wood,
' Which, by the heavens' assistance, and your strength,
' Must by the roots be hewn up yet ere night.
* I need not add more fuel to your fire,
* For, well I wot, ye blaze to burn them out:
* Give signal to the fight, and to it, lords.

Q. Mar. Lords, knights, and gentlemen, what I should say,
' My tears gainsay;[2] for every word I speak,
' Ye see, I drink the water of mine eyes.
' Therefore, no more but this:—Henry, your sovereign,
' Is prisoner to the foe; his state usurp'd,
' His realm a slaughterhouse, his subjects slain,
' His statutes cancell'd, and his treasure spent;

[2] *My tears* gainsay;] To *gainsay* is to unsay, to deny, to contradict.

‘ And yonder is the wolf, that makes this spoil.
‘ You fight in justice: then, in God's name, lords,
‘ Be valiant, and give signal to the fight.
[*Exeunt both Armies.*

SCENE V.

Another Part of the same.

Alarums: Excursions: and afterwards a Retreat. Then Enter King EDWARD, CLARENCE, GLOSTER, *and Forces: with Queen* MARGARET, OXFORD, *and* SOMERSET, *Prisoners.*

‘ *K. Edw.* Now, here a period of tumultuous broils.
Away with Oxford to Hammes' castle[3] straight:
For Somerset, off with his guilty head.
‘ Go, bear them hence; I will not hear them speak.
Oxf. For my part, I'll not trouble thee with words.
‘ *Som.* Nor I, but stoop with patience to my fortune.
[*Exeunt* OXFORD *and* SOMERSET, *guarded.*
* *Q. Mar.* So part we sadly in this troublous world,
* To meet with joy in sweet Jerusalem.
* *K. Edw.* Is proclamation made,—that, who finds Edward,
* Shall have a high reward, and he his life?
* *Glo.* It is: and, lo, where youthful Edward comes.

Enter Soldiers, with Prince EDWARD.

* *K. Edw.* Bring forth the gallant, let us hear him speak:
* What! can so young a thorn begin to prick?
‘ Edward, what satisfaction canst thou make,

[3] —— *to Hammes' castle*—] A castle in Picardy, where Oxford was confined for many years.

' For bearing arms, for stirring up my subjects,
* And all the trouble thou hast turn'd me to?
Prince. Speak like a subject, proud ambitious York!
Suppose, that I am now my father's mouth;
Resign thy chair, and, where I stand, kneel thou,
Whilst I propose the self-same words to thee,
Which, traitor, thou wouldst have me answer to.
Q. Mar. Ah, that thy father had been so resolv'd!
' *Glo.* That you might still have worn the petticoat,
And ne'er have stol'n the breech from Lancaster.
Prince. Let Æsop[4] fable in a winter's night;
His currish riddles sort not with this place.
Glo. By heaven, brat, I'll plague you for that word.
Q. Mar. Ay, thou wast born to be a plague to men.
Glo. For God's sake, take away this captive scold.
Prince. Nay, take away this scolding crook-back rather.
' *K. Edw.* Peace, wilful boy, or I will charm your tongue.
Clar. Untutor'd lad, thou art too malapert.
Prince. I know my duty, you are all undutiful:
Lascivious Edward,—and thou perjur'd George,—
And thou misshapen Dick,—I tell ye all,
I am your better, traitors as ye are;—
* And thou usurp'st my father's right and mine.
K. Edw. Take that, the likeness of this railer here.[5] [*Stabs him.*
* *Glo.* Sprawl'st thou? take that, to end thy agony. [GLO. *stabs him.*
* *Clar.* And there's for twitting me with perjury. [CLAR. *stabs him.*

[4] *Let Æsop,* &c.] The Prince calls Richard, for his crookedness, *Æsop*; and the poet, following nature, makes Richard highly incensed at the reproach.

[5] —— the *likeness of this railer here,* &c.] That thou resemblest thy railing mother.

Q. Mar. O, kill me too!

Glo. Marry, and shall. [*Offers to kill her.*

' *K. Edw.* Hold, Richard, hold, for we have done too much.

Glo. Why should she live, to fill the world with words?[6]

' *K. Edw.* What! doth she swoon? use means for her recovery.

Glo. Clarence, excuse me to the king my brother;
' I'll hence to London on a serious matter:
' Ere ye come there, be sure to hear some news.

Clar. What, what?

' *Glo.* The Tower! the Tower! [*Exit.*

' *Q. Mar.* O, Ned, sweet Ned! speak to thy mother, boy!

Canst thou not speak!—O traitors! murderers!—
They, that stabb'd Cæsar, shed no blood at all,
Did not offend, nor were not worthy blame,
* If this foul deed were by, to equal it.
' He was a man; this, in respect, a child;
And men ne'er spend their fury on a child.
' What's worse than murderer, that I may name it?
* No, no; my heart will burst, an if I speak:—
* And I will speak, that so my heart may burst.—
' Butchers and villains, bloody cannibals!
* How sweet a plant have you untimely cropp'd!
' You have no children, butchers! if you had,
' The thought of them would have stirr'd up remorse:
' But, if you ever chance to have a child,
Look in his youth to have him so cut off,
' As, deathsmen! you have rid this sweet young prince!

K. Edw. Away with her; go, bear her hence perforce.

Q. Mar. Nay, never bear me hence, despatch me here;

[6] —— *with* words?] i. e. dispute, contention.

Here sheath thy sword, I'll pardon thee my death:
What! wilt thou not?—then, Clarence, do it thou.

Clar. By heaven, I will not do thee so much ease.

Q. Mar. Good Clarence, do; sweet Clarence, do thou do it.

Clar. Didst thou not hear me swear, I would not do it.

Q. Mar. Ay, but thou usest to forswear thyself;
'Twas sin before,[7] but now 'tis charity.
'What! wilt thou not? where is that devil's butcher,
Hard-favour'd Richard? Richard, where art thou?
Thou art not here: Murder is thy alms-deed;
Petitioners for blood thou ne'er put'st back.

'*K. Edw.* Away, I say; I charge ye, bear her hence.

Q. Mar. So come to you, and yours, as to this prince! [*Exit, led out forcibly.*

K. Edw. Where's Richard gone?

'*Clar.* To London, all in post; and, as I guess,
To make a bloody supper in the Tower.

K. Edw. He's sudden, if a thing comes in his head.
'Now march we hence: discharge the common sort
'With pay and thanks, and let's away to London,
'And see our gentle queen how well she fares;
'By this, I hope, she hath a son for me. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE VI.

London. *A Room in the Tower.*

King HENRY *is discovered sitting with a Book in his Hand, the* Lieutenant *attending. Enter* GLOSTER.

Glo. Good day, my lord! What, at your book so hard?

[7] *'Twas sin before,*] She alludes to the desertion of Clarence.

K. Hen. Ay, my good lord: My lord, I should say rather;
'Tis sin to flatter, good was little better:
Good Gloster, and good devil, were alike,
* And both preposterous; therefore, not good lord.
* *Glo.* Sirrah, leave us to ourselves: we must confer. [*Exit* Lieutenant.
* *K. Hen.* So flies the reckless shepherd from the wolf:
* So first the harmless sheep doth yield his fleece,
* And next his throat unto the butcher's knife.—
What scene of death hath Roscius now to act?
Glo. Suspicion always haunts the guilty mind;
The thief doth fear each bush an officer.
' *K. Hen.* The bird, that hath been limed in a bush,
' With trembling wings misdoubteth every bush:
And I, the hapless male[8] to one sweet bird,
Have now the fatal object in my eye,
Where my poor young was lim'd, was caught, and kill'd.
' *Glo.* Why, what a peevish fool was that of Crete,
' That taught his son the office of a fowl?
' And yet, for all his wings, the fool was drown'd.
' *K. Hen.* I, Dædalus; my poor boy, Icarus;
Thy father, Minos, that denied our course;
' The sun, that sear'd the wings of my sweet boy,
' Thy brother Edward; and thyself, the sea,
' Whose envious gulf did swallow up his life.
* Ah, kill me with thy weapon, not with words!
' My breast can better brook thy dagger's point,
Than can my ears that tragick history.—
* But wherefore dost thou come? is't for my life?
' *Glo.* Think'st thou, I am an executioner?
K. Hen. A persecutor, I am sure, thou art;

[8] —— *hapless* male —] The word *male* is here used in a very uncommon sense, not for the male of the female, but for the male parent: the sweet bird is evidently his son Prince Edward.

'If murdering innocents be executing,
'Why, then thou art an executioner.
Glo. Thy son I kill'd for his presumption.
K. Hen. Hadst thou been kill'd, when first thou didst presume,
Thou hadst not liv'd to kill a son of mine.
'And thus I prophecy,—that many a thousand,
'Which now mistrust no parcel of my fear;[9]
'And many an old man's sigh, and many a widow's,
'And many an orphan's water-standing eye,—
'Men for their sons, wives for their husbands' fate,
'And orphans for their parents' timeless death,—
'Shall rue the hour that ever thou wast born.
The owl shriek'd at thy birth, an evil sign;
'The night-crow cried, aboding luckless time;
Dogs howl'd, and hideous tempests shook down trees;
The raven rook'd her[1] on the chimney's top,
And chattering pies in dismal discords sung.
Thy mother felt more than a mother's pain,
And yet brought forth less than a mother's hope;
'To wit,—an indigest deformed lump,
Not like the fruit of such a goodly tree.
Teeth hadst thou in thy head, when thou wast born,
To signify, thou cam'st to bite the world:
And, if the rest be true which I have heard,
'Thou cam'st—
Glo. I'll hear no more;—Die, prophet, in thy speech: [*Stabs him.*
For this, amongst the rest, was I ordain'd.
K. Hen. Ay, and for much more slaughter after this.
O God! forgive my sins, and pardon thee! [*Dies.*

[9] *Which now mistrust no parcel of my fear;*] Who suspect no part of what my fears presage.

[1] *The raven* rook'd *her* —] To *rook*, or rather to *ruck*, is a north-country word, signifying to *squat down*, or *lodge* on any thing.

Glo. What, will the aspiring blood of Lancaster
Sink in the ground? I thought it would have mounted.
See, how my sword weeps for the poor king's death!
'O, may such purple tears be always shed
'From those that wish the downfal of our house!—
'If any spark of life be yet remaining,
Down, down to hell; and say—I sent thee thither,
[*Stabs him again.*
I, that have neither pity, love, nor fear.—
Indeed, 'tis true, that Henry told me of;
For I have often heard my mother say,
I came into the world with my legs forward:
Had I not reason, think ye, to make haste,
'And seek their ruin that usurp'd our right?
The midwife wonder'd; and the women cried,
O, Jesus bless us, he is born with teeth!
'And so I was; which plainly signified—
That I should snarl, and bite, and play the dog.
'Then, since the heavens have shap'd my body so,
Let hell make crook'd my mind to answer it.
I have no brother, I am like no brother:
'And this word—love, which greybeards call divine,
Be resident in men like one another,
And not in me; I am myself alone.—
Clarence, beware; thou keep'st me from the light;
But I will sort a pitchy day for thee:[2]
For I will buz abroad such prophecies,
'That Edward shall be fearful of his life;
And then, to purge his fear, I'll be thy death.
'King Henry, and the prince his son, are gone:
'Clarence, thy turn is next, and then the rest;
Counting myself but bad, till I be best.—
'I'll throw thy body in another room,
And triumph, Henry, in thy day of doom. [*Exit.*

[2] *But I will* sort *a pitchy day for thee:*] But I will choose out an hour whose gloom shall be as fatal to you. To *sort* is to *select*.

SCENE VII.

The same. A Room in the Palace.

King EDWARD *is discovered sitting on his Throne; Queen* ELIZABETH *with the infant Prince,* CLARENCE, GLOSTER, HASTINGS, *and Others, near him.*

K. Edw. Once more we sit in England's royal throne,
Re-purchas'd with the blood of enemies.
What valiant foe-men, like to autumn's corn,
Have we mow'd down, in tops of all their pride?
Three dukes of Somerset, threefold renown'd
For hardy and undoubted champions:
Two Cliffords, as the father and the son,
And two Northumberlands; two braver men
Ne'er spurr'd their coursers at the trumpet's sound:
'With them, the two brave bears, Warwick and Montague,
That in their chains fetter'd the kingly lion,
And made the forest tremble when they roar'd.
Thus have we swept suspicion from our seat,
And made our footstool of security.—
Come hither, Bess, and let me kiss my boy:—
Young Ned, for thee, thine uncles, and myself,
Have in our armours watch'd the winter's night;
'Went all a foot in summer's scalding heat,
That thou might'st repossess the crown in peace;
And of our labours thou shalt reap the gain.

Glo. I'll blast his harvest, if your head were laid;
For yet I am not look'd on in the world.
This shoulder was ordain'd so thick, to heave;
And heave it shall some weight, or break my back:—
Work thou the way,—and thou shalt execute.[3]
[*Aside.*

K. Edw. Clarence, and Gloster, love my lovely queen;
And kiss your princely nephew, brothers both.

Clar. The duty, that I owe unto your majesty,
I seal upon the lips of this sweet babe.

K. Edw. Thanks, noble Clarence; worthy brother, thanks.[4]

' *Glo.* And, that I love the tree from whence thou sprang'st,
' Witness the loving kiss I give the fruit:—
To say the truth, so Judas kiss'd his master;
' And cried—all hail! when as he meant—all harm. } *Aside.*

K. Edw. Now am I seated as my soul delights,
Having my country's peace, and brothers' loves.

Clar. What will your grace have done with Margaret?
Reignier, her father, to the king of France
Hath pawn'd the Sicils and Jerusalem,
And hither have they sent it for her ransome.

K. Edw. Away with her, and waft her hence to France.
And now what rests, but that we spend the time
With stately triumphs,[5] mirthful comick shows,
Such as befit the pleasures of the court?—
Sound, drums and trumpets!—farewell, sour annoy!
For here, I hope, begins our lasting joy. [*Exeunt.*[6]

[3] *Work thou the way*, &c.] He speaks this line, first *touching* his *head*, and then *looking* on his *hand*.

[4] *Thanks, noble Clarence; worthy brother, thanks.*] In my copy of the second folio, which had belonged to King Charles the First, his Majesty has erased—*Cla.* and written *King*, in its stead.—Shakspeare, therefore, in the catalogue of his restorers, may boast of a Royal name. STEEVENS.

[5] *With stately* triumphs,] *Triumphs* are publick shows.

[6] The three parts of *King Henry VI.* are suspected, by Mr. Theobald, of being supposititious, and are declared, by Dr. Warburton, to be certainly not Shakspeare's. Mr. Theobald's suspi-

cion arises from some obsolete words; but the phraseology is like the rest of our author's style, and single words, of which however I do not observe more than two, can conclude little.

Dr. Warburton gives no reason, but I suppose him to judge upon deeper principles and more comprehensive views, and to draw his opinion from the general effect and spirit of the composition, which he thinks inferior to the other historical plays.

From mere inferiority, nothing can be inferred; in the production of wit there will be inequality. Sometimes judgment will err, and sometimes the matter itself will defeat the artist. Of every author's works, one will be the best, and one will be the worst. The colours are not equally pleasing, nor the attitudes equally graceful, in all the pictures of Titian or Reynolds.

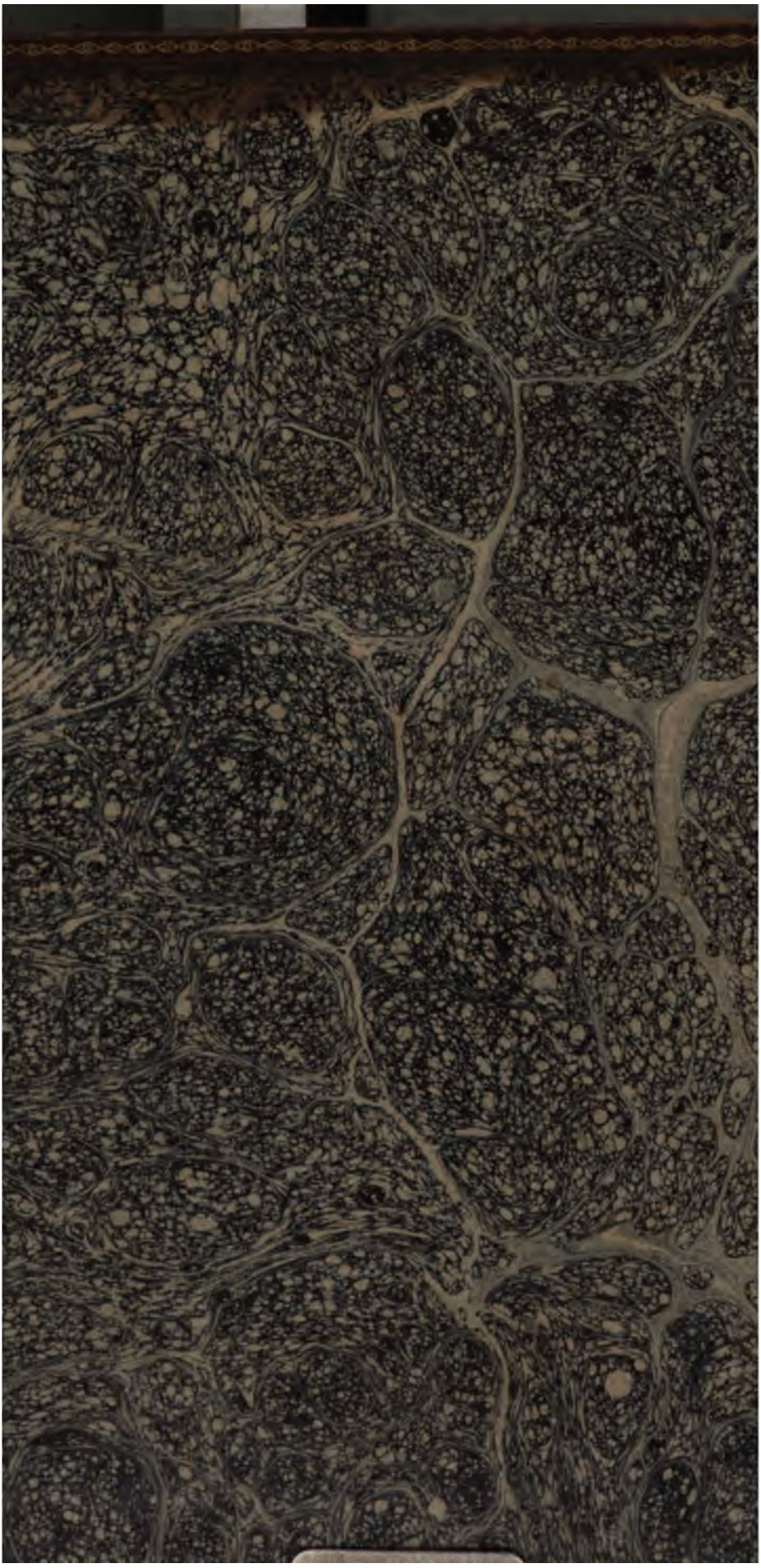
Dissimilitude of style and heterogeneousness of sentiment, may sufficiently show that a work does not really belong to the reputed author. But in these plays no such marks of spuriousness are found. The diction, the versification, and the figures, are Shakspeare's. These plays, considered, without regard to characters and incidents, merely as narratives in verse, are more happily conceived, and more accurately finished than those of *K. John*, *Richard II.* or the tragick scenes of *King Henry IV.* and *V.* If we take these plays from Shskspeare, to whom shall they be given? What author of that age had the same easiness of expression and fluency of numbers?

Having considered the evidence given by the plays themselves, and found it in their favour, let us now enquire what corroboration can be gained from other testimony. They are ascribed to Shakspeare by the first editors, whose attestation may be received in questions of fact, however unskilfully they superintended their edition. They seem to be declared genuine by the voice of Shakspeare himself, who refers to the second play in his epilogue to *King Henry V.* and apparently connects the first Act of *King Richard III.* with the last of *The Third Part of King Henry VI.* If it be objected that the plays were popular, and that therefore he alluded to them as well known; it may be answered, with equal probability, that the natural passions of a poet would have disposed him to separate his own works from those of an inferior hand. And, indeed, if an author's own testimony is to be overthrown by speculative criticism, no man can be any longer secure of literary reputation.

Of these three plays I think the second the best. The truth is, that they have not sufficient variety of action, for the incidents are too often of the same kind; yet many of the characters are well discriminated. King Henry, and his Queen, King Edward, the Duke of Gloucester, and the Earl of Warwick, are very strongly and distinctly painted.

The old copies of the two latter parts of *King Henry VI.* and of

King Henry V. are so apparently imperfect and mutilated, that there is no reason for supposing them the first draughts of Shakspeare. I am inclined to believe them copies taken by some auditor who wrote down, during the representation, what the time would permit, then perhaps filled up some of his omissions at a second or third hearing, and, when he had by this method formed something like a play, sent it to the printer. JOHNSON.

END OF VOLUME SIXTH.

C. and R. Baldwin, Printers,
New Bridge-street, London.